



# We are all friends now

## Vocabulary 1: Describing people

- 1 **O** With a partner, describe what is happening in each of the photographs. Then discuss the questions below.



- Do the photographs give you any clues about the personalities of the people in them?
- Which, if any, of the people appeal to you as friends? Why?

- 2 Match the people in each photograph with one or more of the adjectives below. Give at least one reason for each choice.

**Example:**

*The student in picture 5 looks very hard-working and conscientious, because he seems to be studying hard.*

hard-working	artistic	supportive	adventurous	talkative	chatty	
sporty	creative	wise	considerate	conscientious	helpful	dynamic

- 3 **O** 'People generally judge other people just by their appearance without knowing them'. Do you think this is true? Why/Why not? Do you do this yourself?



- 4 For 1–14 below, decide what the adjective is for each noun. There may be more than one possible answer.

Noun	Adjective	Noun	Adjective
1 respect	_____	8 sociability	_____
2 ambition	_____	9 calmness	_____
3 care	_____	10 punctuality	_____
4 sense of humour	_____	11 reliability	_____
5 talent	_____	12 loyalty	_____
6 generosity	_____	13 honesty	_____
7 cheerfulness	_____	14 patience	_____

- 5 Work in pairs. Each of the sentences 1–12 below describe people. Match each sentence to an adjective from exercise 4.

- 1 He tells jokes all the time and makes us all laugh.
- 2 She rarely loses her temper with anyone, which is why I like her so much.
- 3 She is never sad. She is always smiling and positive about everything.
- 4 He plays the piano exceptionally well. I hope to be as good as him one day.
- 5 She is a shrewd businesswoman with a strong desire to succeed in everything she does.
- 6 She loves being around people all the time, chatting and making new friends.
- 7 He is valued and appreciated by everyone who knows him.
- 8 She gives a lot of money away to charities and to people who need it.
- 9 He is a faithful friend, and always supports me when things go wrong.
- 10 When she was younger she devoted her time to looking after seriously ill people.
- 11 You can trust him with anything. He never lets anyone down.
- 12 He's never late for work, no matter what happens.



- 6 **O** Think of a friend who has one or more of the qualities above. With a partner, describe the friend by explaining the qualities they have.
- 7 **O** How do you think your friends see you? Write down three adjectives from exercise 4 or look at the Wordlist on page 211. Show the words to your partner and ask each other: *Why do you think you are ... ?*
- 8 **O** Is it possible to make loyal and sincere friends on social networking sites on the Internet? Why/Why not?

Is the Internet a safe place to make friends? Why/Why not?



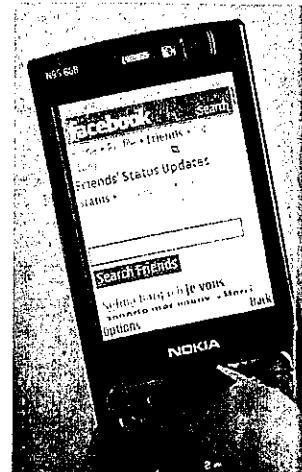
## We are all friends now

### Reading

### What to expect in the exam

- IELTS Reading has three reading passages and 40 questions.
- You should spend about 20 minutes on each passage.
- See the introduction to Ready for Reading on page 84 for information about the different types of passages and questions in IELTS Reading.

- 1 You are going to read a passage with three sets of questions. Read the title and the subheading of the passage. Decide what kind of 'sites' they are talking about – are they commercial, social, or financial websites?
- 2 **O** How important is it to make friends at a new college or university? Why? How do you think social networks at a university can help students in their studies?
- 3 **O** Skim (see Ready for Reading on page 84) questions 1–6 below. These give you a summary of the passage. With a partner, discuss what you think the passage is about by using words like *Facebook, social networking, face to face, research and social integration* to help you.



### READING PASSAGE

Read the title and skim the whole passage to get an overall idea of the content. Spend no more than two minutes skimming the passage at this stage.

Learn to analyze the headings quickly. Look at heading (i). Put a box around *result*. Does it mean 'outcome'? Would you expect to find results at the beginning, middle or end of the passage?

For heading (ii), put a box around the word *aims*. What tense do you expect to see in the paragraph? What words are similar to *aim: goal, plan, hope, want*?

For heading (iii), there is no noun like *aim* or *result*, but can you translate the word *what* into a noun? Is it *methods, ways, premises*?

Use the same methods with headings iv–ix. You will not need to use all of the headings.

When you have finished, always check the sequence of the headings you have chosen to make sure it makes sense.

### Questions 1–6

You should spend about 20 minutes on **Questions 1–13**, which are based on the reading passage below.

The reading passage has six sections, A–F.

Choose the correct heading for each section from the list of headings below.

#### List of Headings

- i The expected result of the project
- ii Further aims of the research project
- iii What the research project is based on
- iv The use of expertise from countries around the world
- v A need to concentrate on academic integration
- vi A lack of knowledge about the effect of social networking on student retention
- vii An emphasis until now on academic rather than social integration
- viii The reason for using Facebook to recruit students
- ix Increasing the chance of withdrawal

1 Section A

2 Section B

3 Section C

4 Section D

5 Section E

6 Section F

# Face-to-face or Facebook?

## Can online networking sites help new students settle into university?

Can online networking sites such as Facebook and MySpace, help new students settle into university social and academic life and minimize the chance of them withdrawing from their courses?

Researchers at the University of Leicester are now looking for first-year University of Leicester students who use Facebook to help their pioneering research into this issue. They should not be too difficult to recruit. The reason for this is that student use of the online networking site Facebook is running at a phenomenal level, with almost 10,000 present and past students and staff participating.

Currently, 95 per cent of 16–18 year olds intending to go to university are using social networking sites like Facebook and MySpace.

'Yet we know little about how this phenomenon impacts on the student experience and, in particular, if and how it helps them integrate into university life,' commented Jane Wellens, Education Developer in the University of Leicester's Staff Development Centre. She is working with Dr Clare Madge, of the Department of Geography, Tristram Hooley, of CRAC, the Career Development Organisation, and Julia Meek, an independent evaluation consultant.

'The expectations and online experience of the latest and next generations of students requires universities to think carefully about how, and whether, to use these new technologies and meeting spaces to enhance the social aspects of student integration into university life,' she further commented.

**C Academic and social integration into university life are key factors influencing individual students' experiences and the likelihood of their withdrawing from their student courses.** Until now most research in the field has concentrated on academic support rather than integration into the wider social world of the university.

Students are now so used to using social networking sites that one university in the US has actually been running sessions to encourage students to build up face-to-face networks. One aspect of the Leicester project is to explore whether there are differences in the longevity and nature of university friendships that students establish face-to-face compared with those they make online through social networking sites.

**D** The Leicester project builds on internationally acclaimed work the University has already started on teaching and learning online. 'We recently used Facebook as a means of encouraging students on an online module to get to know one another,' Jane Wellens said. 'This raised many issues such as where the boundary between public and private space is, and how comfortable students (and staff) of different ages feel regarding the use of such technology.'

The Leicester project also draws on internationally recognized expertise by this specific team of researchers in online research methodologies. As Clare Madge of the Department of Geography at the University of Leicester stated: 'This project will be using both an online questionnaire and virtual interviews, and will innovate in the use of Facebook itself as a site to conduct virtual interviews'.

**E** What Dr Wellens and her colleagues hope to establish from the new research project is how Leicester students are using Facebook as part of their social and learning experience and whether joining the University's Facebook network before they come to Leicester helps students to settle down more easily into university life.

They will also be looking to see if there is any way that university support services and academic departments can use the online social networking sites to help students integrate into university life, and how the sites might be reshaping our everyday lives in terms of the importance of place-based versus virtual networking.

**F** Research results are expected to influence university policies at Leicester and beyond. 'It may affect the way the University uses its Facebook network,' said Dr Wellens. 'One outcome might be that the University would use these sites to bring new students together before their arrival, or to bring together current and new students to provide peer support. It will also ascertain students' views about the ways in which the University and its staff should, or shouldn't, use Facebook for academic purposes.'

## We are all friends now

### Questions 7–10

Complete the sentences below.

Choose **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** from the passage for each answer.

- 7 Access to Facebook by students is happening at a .....
- 8 Few details exist on how much networking sites help students fit into .....
- 9 Most research has in the past focused on .....
- 10 One aim of the project is to determine if the length and nature of ..... made online or face-to-face vary.

### Questions 11–13

Do the following statements agree with the information in the reading passage?

Write:

- TRUE** if the statement agrees with the information  
**FALSE** if the statement contradicts the information  
**NOT GIVEN** if there is no information on this

- 11 The only research methodology used at Leicester will be virtual interviews.
- 12 The Leicester team will focus on research from the UK rather than the USA or Europe.
- 13 One possible development in the future is that existing students will help those who have just started university for the first time.

### Reacting to the text

Do you think using websites such as Facebook to help students integrate into university life is a good idea? Why/Why not?

In terms of socializing, do these sites reduce or increase social contact?

### Language focus 1: Present simple, present continuous and past simple

- 1 Scan (see Ready for Reading on page 84) the reading passage on page 9 as quickly as you can to find the following:

- 1 *This raised many issues such as where the boundary between ...*
- 2 *Student use of the online networking site Facebook is running at a phenomenal level ...*
- 3 *Yet we know little about how this phenomenon impacts on the student experience ...*
- 4 *The Leicester project builds on internationally acclaimed work ...*

- 2 In each of the sentences above, underline the main verbs and decide whether the present simple, present continuous or past simple tense is used.

- 3 Match the tenses in exercise 2 with an appropriate explanation a–d.

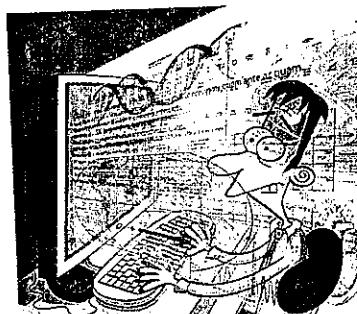
- a These events/actions occur routinely and repeatedly.
- b An action which is still going on and is not finished yet.
- c The event occurred in the past at a definite time.
- d This is always true, like a fact or a state.

 Read more about the present simple, present continuous and past simple in the Grammar reference on page 219.

- 4 Complete sentences 1–6 below by putting the verb in brackets into the present simple, present continuous or past simple.

- 1 A mentor (help) new students integrate into university life. That is their function.
- 2 Fewer older people (participate) in social websites than compared to now.
- 3 The research (impact) on the way the new students were helped on their arrival at the university.
- 4 When I was young, my parents (influence) my attitude to education enormously.
- 5 Researchers (now recruit) students for academic research.
- 6 Each time I go on the net, I (feel) that the amount of information is overwhelming.

- 5 Scan the reading passage on page 9 and find the main verb in each sentence in exercise 4. Are they in the same tenses as in exercise 4? If not, what tense are they in?



**What to expect in the exam**

- In IELTS Listening Section 1 you will hear a conversation between two people once only. The recording tells you what the conversation is about. In this case it's a young woman answering an advert looking for help at a charity event.
- You will be given time to look at the questions before you begin and in the middle of the recording.
- At the end of the section you will be given time to check your answers.
- You will hear an example.
- See the introduction to Ready for Listening on page 42 for information about the different types of questions in IELTS Listening.

- 1 Look at questions 1–8 and predict whether the answer is a noun, name, number or adjective.
- 2 Which numbers do you find difficult to understand? Write down 5 sets of numbers, for example, 6633, 6363, 3663, 677 331, 3553. Give them to a partner and ask him/her to dictate the numbers to you slowly and then quickly in any order. Write down the numbers you hear.
- 3 What letters do you find difficult to understand? Write them down then give them to a partner and ask him/her to dictate the letters to you in any order, for example, f-p-t-f-g-j-l-m-f-b-d. Write down the letters you hear.
- 4 Look at questions 9 and 10. If you wanted someone to help you organize an event, what qualities would you want the person to have? Use the following questions to help you exclude some possibilities and predict the answer.  
Is it desirable to:
  - take risks or to be timid?
  - be adaptable or obstinate?
  - be on time or sometimes to be late?
  - get on with people or dislike people?
  - be good at sport or to be lazy?

**1.1 SECTION 1 Questions 1–10****Questions 1–4**

Complete the notes below.

Write no more than **ONE WORD AND/OR A NUMBER** for each answer.**Notes on Volunteering**

<i>Example</i>	<i>Answer</i>
Event:	Charity .....
Venue:	1 ..... Hall
Days:	Friday to Sunday
Dates:	15th–17th 2 .....
Opening Time:	10 am
Closing time:	3 ..... pm
Type of helpers now required:	4 .....

Underline the words in the questions that tell you that the answer is coming. Try to predict the answers. The answer can be one word(s) or a number, read the questions to check which is required. Use transferring answers to another sheet. Be careful that you do not create mistakes during the transfer. Make sure the instructions are fully understood and note all limits.

## We are all friends now

### Questions 5–8

Complete the form below.

Write no more than **ONE WORD AND/OR A NUMBER** for each answer.

Name:	Andrea <b>5</b> .....
Address:	90 <b>6</b> ..... Mansions, 62 Park Avenue, London, SW1 4PQ
Telephone:	<b>7</b> .....
Telephone in the:	<b>8</b> .....

### Questions 9 and 10

Choose **TWO** letters, **A–E**.

Which **TWO** types of people are mentioned as desirable?

- A** adventurous
- B** inflexible
- C** punctual
- D** friendly
- E** sporty

- 5** Have you ever been in a situation where you had to explain your qualities or strengths? Describe the situation to a partner.

### Language focus 2: Likes and dislikes

- 1** In the conversation in the listening practice, Andrea explains what kind of person she is by saying what she likes.

*I like working with other people.*

Why does she use the -ing form of the verb after *like*?

- 2** Work in pairs. For 1–7 below, decide which sentences are correct.

- 1 Gabriella likes swimming a lot.
- 2 John likes to get there on time. He doesn't like lateness.
- 3 Would you like joining our study group?
- 4 Why did you hate playing football as a child?
- 5 Do you really dislike being in this country?
- 6 My grandparents loved looking after us as kids.
- 7 As Joseph is independent, he enjoys to do things alone.

Read more about likes and dislikes in the Grammar reference on page 219.

- 3** For sentences 1–9 below, put the verb in brackets into the correct form. More than one answer may be correct.

- 1 Most of my friends dislike (play) computer games.
- 2 I'd like (live) near the sea as the air is fresh.
- 3 Certain animals hate (be) around people.
- 4 He likes (keep) the garden tidy, even though it takes a lot of time.
- 5 He enjoys (take) long walks on his own along the seashore.
- 6 As she is punctual herself, she likes other people (be) on time.

- 7** Sarah loves (socialize) with other people rather than (stay) at home alone.

- 8** He can't stand (play) sport.

- 9** Wouldn't you prefer (see) this film at the cinema?

- 4** Rewrite sentences 1–8 below using the verb in brackets. Do not change the meaning.

- 1 The idea of living in the countryside appeals to me. (I'd like)
- 2 Nowadays people don't seem to take any pleasure in doing certain sports. (dislike)
- 3 Adrian cleans the kitchen every morning. (like)
- 4 She gets enormous enjoyment from shopping. (enjoy)
- 5 Pedro has a hatred of playing video games. (can't stand)
- 6 He expects honesty in people he knows. (like)
- 7 She wants to see the film on DVD at home, not in the cinema. (would prefer)
- 8 He really likes to mingle with other people at parties. (love)

- 5** Work in pairs. Ask your partner about two sports he/she likes doing and two sports he/she doesn't like doing. Use the questions below and ask for reasons and examples.

*Why do you like/enjoy/dislike ... ?*

*Why don't you like/enjoy ... ?*

- 6** Are the sports your partner talked about popular in your country? Is the popularity of these sports increasing or decreasing? Why?

**What to expect in the exam**

- There are three parts in IELTS Speaking. In Part 2 you are asked to talk about a person, event, place, object, film, documentary etc ...
- You will have to talk about the topic for one to two minutes.
- You will be given one minute to think about what you are going to say and make notes.

- 1 Look at the photographs below. Choose at least two adjectives to describe each of the adults. Use the adjectives in Vocabulary 1 on page 6.



- To do**
- are asked  
about a  
n, name  
erson. Try to  
ize the person  
n activity they  
ich you like.  
ne minute you  
to make brief  
Develop  
notes as you  
use the  
ing words  
explain: for  
ple..., when/  
because...  
o....
- 2 Decide which person appeals to you most. Look at the adjectives you chose for the person and make notes for the following:
- what kind of person they are generally
  - what he/she did when he/she was younger
  - why he/she appeals to you
  - what activities he/she is doing now
- 3 Use your notes to tell your partner about the person.
- 4 Look at the following Part 2 task card. Decide which tense you are going to use for each part of the topic.

Describe a person you would like to be similar to.

You should say:

who this person is

what they are like generally

what qualities this person has

and explain why you would like to be similar to this person.

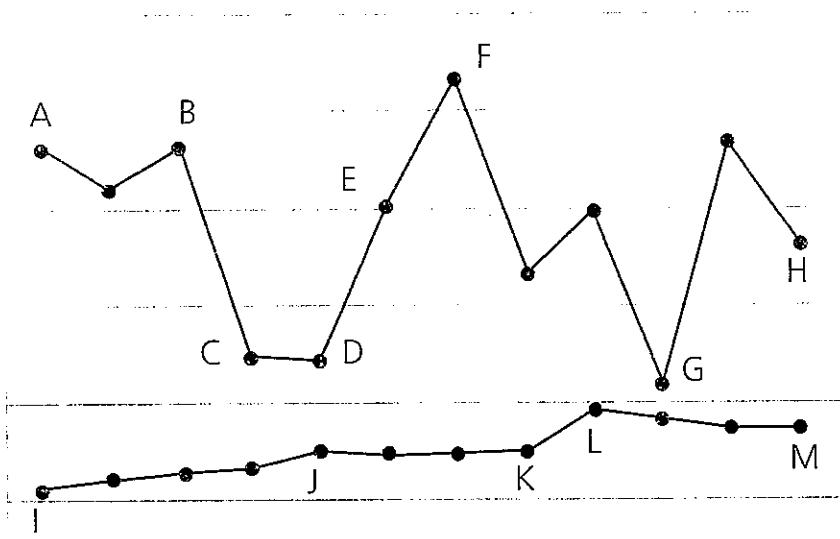
- 5 Spend one minute making brief notes.

- 6 Work in pairs. Take turns talking about the topic, using your notes to guide you. You should speak for up to two minutes; time each other using a stopwatch.

 We are all friends now

## Vocabulary 2: Verbs of movement

1 Work in pairs. Match the parts of the graph 1–10 with the verbs a–j.



- |        |                              |
|--------|------------------------------|
| 1 A–B  | a hit a low                  |
| 2 B–C  | b fell and then levelled off |
| 3 B–D  | c remained flat/stable       |
| 4 D–F  | d plummeted                  |
| 5 F    | e rose gradually             |
| 6 F–H  | f fell gradually             |
| 7 G    | g soared                     |
| 8 I–J  | h dipped                     |
| 9 J–K  | i fluctuated                 |
| 10 L–M | j hit a peak                 |

2 For sentences 1–10 below, use the verbs in exercise 1 to replace the underlined text.

- 1 The price of laptops dropped followed by a period of stability.
  - 2 Numbers reached a high in the year 2009.
  - 3 The amount of money spent fell slightly and then quickly recovered.
  - 4 Visitor numbers to the website plunged in the first quarter of the year.
  - 5 Book purchases increased slowly but surely over the year.
  - 6 The number of students applying to the university stabilized over the decade.
  - 7 Attendance at the conference decreased steadily last year.
  - 8 The growth rate was erratic during the previous year.
  - 9 Member numbers reached their lowest point in March.
  - 10 Car sales rocketed over the period.
- 3 To add variety to your writing you can use nouns instead of verbs to describe movement. Look at the nouns in the box below and decide which ones are not correct.

a drop	a plunge	a bottom out	an increase	stabilization
fluctuations	a decline	a rocket	a soar	a plummet
a dip	a fall	a level off	a climb	a peak

- 4 Rewrite the sentences from exercise 2 using nouns instead of verbs. Use the following structure: *There was a (+ adjective) + noun + in ...*. For three of the sentences this is not possible. Make any other necessary changes.

**Example:**

*There was a drop in the price of laptops followed by a period of stability.*

**Writing:**  
IELTS Task 1**What to expect in the exam**

In IELTS Writing Task 1 you will be asked to describe some data (graph, chart or table) or a diagram.

You are asked to write at least 150 words.

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

**How to go about it**

Study the data carefully, noting any special features.

Make sure you summarize rather than just list data.

Always write an overview of the data. This can come after the introduction, or at the end as a conclusion.

- 1 Work in pairs. Read the Task 1 question below and the three introductions a-c which follow. Decide which is the best introduction and why.

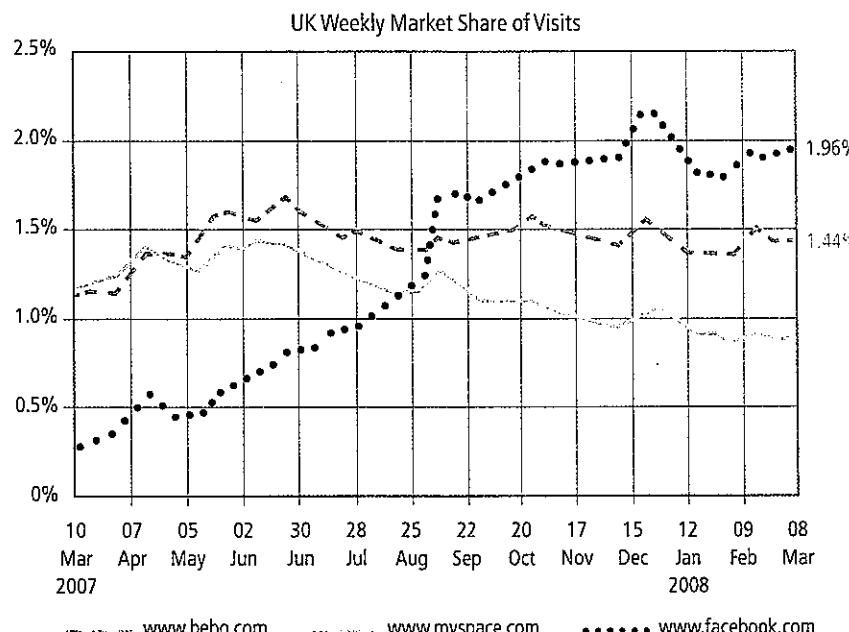
**WRITING TASK 1**

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

*The graph below provides a breakdown of the UK weekly market share of visits to three social networking websites between March 2007 and March 2008.*

*Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.*

Write at least 150 words.



- a The graph below shows in percentage terms the UK weekly market share of visits to three websites between March 2007 and March 2008.
- b The chart below shows the percentage of hits to three websites over the period of a year.
- c The chart illustrates the market share of hits to various social networking sites in the UK on a weekly basis over one year to March 2008.
- 2 Complete the gaps in the following model answer for the task with the correct form of a suitable verb. There may be more than one possible answer.

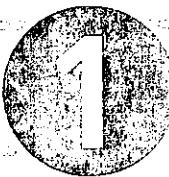
The graph 1 \_\_\_\_\_ the proportion of hits to three social networking sites on a weekly basis from 10th March 2007 to 8th March 2008.

Generally speaking, the trends in the market share of the three sites 2 \_\_\_\_\_.

The most viewed site 3 \_\_\_\_\_ clearly www.facebook.com, whose share of the market 4 \_\_\_\_\_ dramatically from approximately 0.25 per cent on 10th March 2007 to 1.96 per cent on 8th March 2008. This 5 \_\_\_\_\_ nearly an eightfold increase over the period. It 6 \_\_\_\_\_ noticeable that the market share of Facebook 7 \_\_\_\_\_ a high of around 2.2 per cent during December 2008, with peaks being hit by the other two sites during the same period.

The market share of hits to the bebo site, meanwhile, 8 \_\_\_\_\_ at a slower pace from about 1.2 to 1.44 per cent, a rise of approximately 40 per cent. In contrast to the other two websites, the market share of www.myspace.com 9 \_\_\_\_\_, decreasing from approximately the same level as www.bebo.com on 10th March 2007 to 0.89 per cent.

- 3 Now cover the model answer above and make notes about what you remember about it. Then use your notes to write your own answer to the question.



# Review

## Vocabulary

- 1 Match nouns 1–8 with an explanation a–h.

- |                |   |
|----------------|---|
| 1 honesty      | a is about being happy and optimistic                     |
| 2 punctuality  | b is about having a special gift or skill to do something |
| 3 generosity   | c is about one's dreams and desires                       |
| 4 cheerfulness | d is about being able to depend on someone                |
| 5 reliability  | e is about being on time                                  |
| 6 ambition     | f is about enjoying the company of others                 |
| 7 talent       | g is not just about money; it's about being kind as well  |
| 8 sociability  | h is about not telling lies                               |

- 2 Complete the gaps in the following extracts from IELTS Speaking Part 2 with a suitable adjective. Then decide what the candidates were asked to describe.

'The person that I would like to be similar to is my father. At first he appears very serious, but he has a very 1 \_\_\_\_\_ side to him. He loves to make people laugh. His stories are usually about people and they are very funny, but he never says anything bad about the people. He is a very 2 \_\_\_\_\_ person and always takes everyone's feelings into consideration.'

'My elder brother is the sort of person who is always 3 \_\_\_\_\_; he is never late for anything, no matter how unimportant it is. He says that being on time when you are meeting someone is about showing them respect. So as you can imagine he is highly 4 \_\_\_\_\_ amongst his friends.'

'What really appeals to me about my grandfather is that he is very 5 \_\_\_\_\_, as he has many gifts. He's very 6 \_\_\_\_\_ and he's always drawing. He can make anything with his hands and he can play the piano and violin as well. And when we were children he was very 7 \_\_\_\_\_ when he explained things to us; I never remember him losing his temper. I can honestly say that I have never met anyone as 8 \_\_\_\_\_. You can depend on him for anything.'

## Present simple, present continuous and past simple

- 1 Sentences 1–12 relate to four people: Sonja, Wei, Ahmed and Tony. Three sentences relate to each person. Read the sentences and decide which relate to each person.

- 1 As a child she dreamt of working as an air hostess, or a job dealing with people.
- 2 He built his own computer when he was in his teens.
- 3 When she was a child her grandfather taught her to paint.
- 4 Sonja can't stand chatting on computers; she enjoys socializing face to face.
- 5 Now she's working as a tour guide.
- 6 He is currently conducting research for a book on modern Chinese writers.
- 7 She is drawing a sketch, which she plans to turn into an oil painting soon.
- 8 Wei is very artistic and spends all her time in her studio painting and drawing.
- 9 He loves reading and any intellectual hobbies like music and philosophy.
- 10 He's very talented and is creating his own website at the moment.
- 11 Tony is a doctor of literature; he studied a huge amount of Chinese literature for his PhD.
- 12 Ahmed likes to spend his time and money on technology.

- 2 Decide whether each sentence **1–12** in exercise 1 tells you:

- a what activity the people are involved in at the moment
- b about their state of mind and habits
- c about their past

## Writing

- 1 Complete sentences **1–10** with a word from the box below. Make any necessary changes.

surge	breakdown	fluctuate	remain steady	trend
decline	plummet	downward	show	noticeable

- 1 The most \_\_\_\_\_ feature of the chart was the sharp fall in theatre attendances.
  - 2 The graph \_\_\_\_\_ the increase in the market share of Facebook compared to the other two sites.
  - 3 Shopper numbers \_\_\_\_\_ over most of the year, but the last three months were less erratic.
  - 4 There was a \_\_\_\_\_ in visitors to the site during the holiday period with numbers almost doubling.
  - 5 The amount of energy used \_\_\_\_\_ throughout the first nine months and then it began to increase.
  - 6 Sales \_\_\_\_\_ in September, hitting a low for the year.
  - 7 There was a gradual \_\_\_\_\_ in profits over last year.
  - 8 The trend for two of the sites was upward, with the other being clearly \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 9 There was very little difference in the \_\_\_\_\_ in sales for all five companies, with the exception of Sewell Ltd.
  - 10 The chart provides a \_\_\_\_\_ of the number of passenger miles travelled according to different modes of transport.
- 2 Use the words in **1–8** below to create sentences that provide a suitable overview for a Task 1 question. Make any necessary changes to the words.

**Example:**

book sales overall rise period

*Overall book sales rose during the period.*

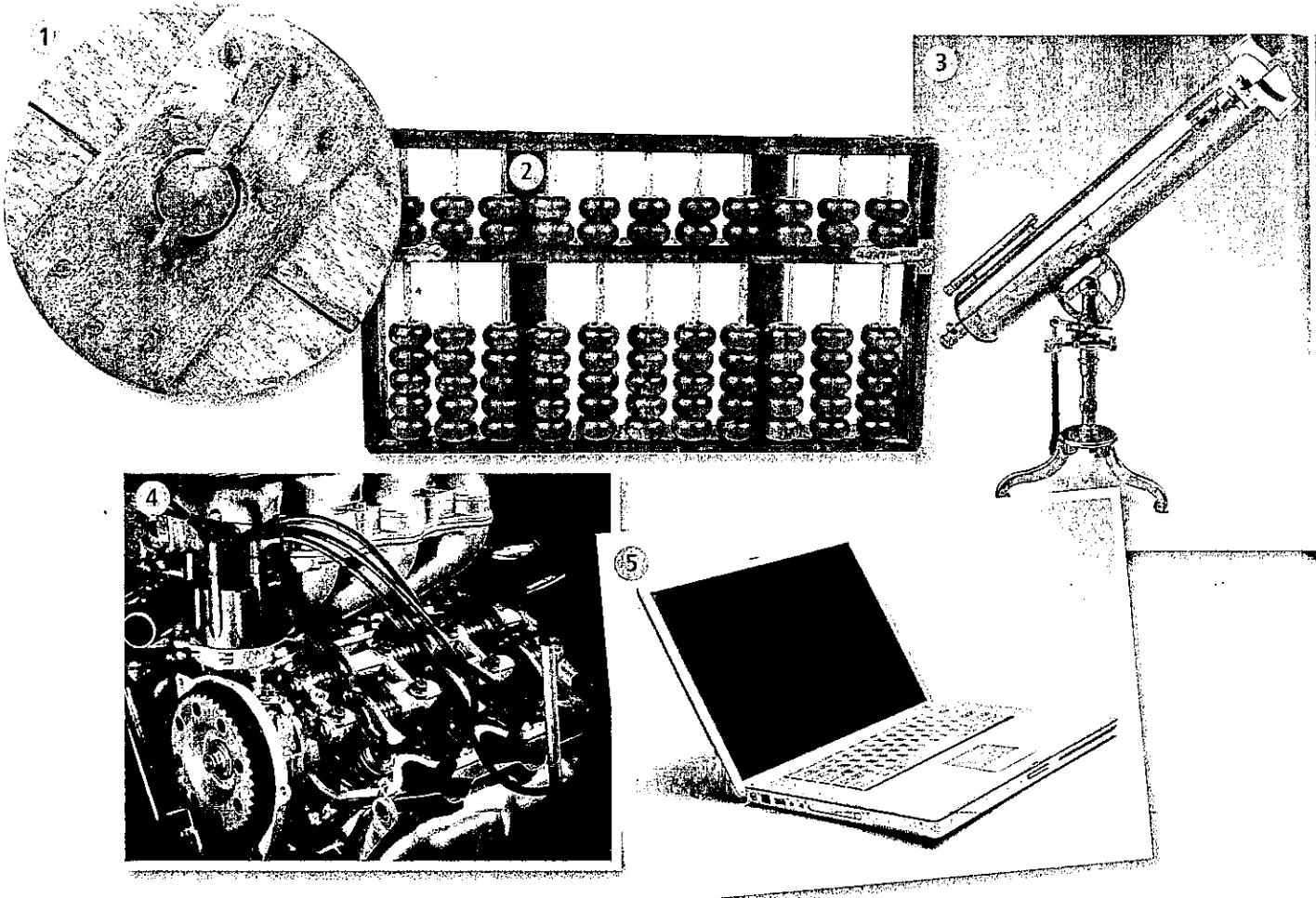
- 1 trend attendances clear upward
- 2 increase student numbers over the year
- 3 market share fall overall past decade
- 4 trend cost train journeys flat generally speaking
- 5 trend prices downward overall
- 6 miles covered shoppers declined
- 7 price of grain steady rise in the last six months
- 8 clear downward trend flights abroad



# Technology–now and then

## Vocabulary: Verbs of cause and effect

Work in pairs. Look at the photographs and discuss the questions below.



- Name each item. What do you know about each one? What do they all have in common?
- Choose three of the items and decide how they have shaped people's lives.
- Which do you think have a direct influence on people's lives today? Give reasons and examples.

In academic writing sentences with nouns are more common than sentences with verbs. For some verbs the noun form is the same as the verb, for example, *influence*. You can also make nouns from verbs by adding endings like: *-ment*, *-ion* and *-ing*. Decide what the noun form is for each of the verbs 1–16 below. Which verb does not follow any of these patterns?

- 1 improve improvement  
2 destroy \_\_\_\_\_  
3 shape \_\_\_\_\_  
4 result \_\_\_\_\_  
5 affect \_\_\_\_\_  
6 harm \_\_\_\_\_  
7 enhance \_\_\_\_\_  
8 promote \_\_\_\_\_

- 9 damage \_\_\_\_\_  
10 ruin \_\_\_\_\_  
11 produce \_\_\_\_\_  
12 foster \_\_\_\_\_  
13 advance \_\_\_\_\_  
14 deteriorate \_\_\_\_\_  
15 achieve \_\_\_\_\_  
16 attract \_\_\_\_\_

Work in pairs. The verbs and nouns in exercise 2 can be used to describe changes in something. Decide if you would use each verb and noun to describe a positive change, a negative change, or a neutral change (one that is neither positive nor negative).

Rewrite sentences 1–9 below so that they contain the verb in brackets. Make any other necessary changes.

**Example:**

The use of mobile phones is having a dramatic effect on the way we communicate. (affect)

*The use of mobile phones is dramatically affecting the way we communicate.*

- 1 The demand for fuel is bringing about the destruction of the way of life of the inhabitants of rainforests. (destroy)
- 2 People constantly debate whether television has a positive or negative influence on society. (influence)
- 3 The company restructuring will lead to a significant improvement in profits. (improve)
- 4 Climate change has led to the ruin of many crops. (ruin)
- 5 The fire did not do as much harm to the mountainside as people first thought. (harm)
- 6 The conflict resulted in a sharp deterioration in relations between the two countries. (deteriorate)
- 7 The affair caused enormous damage to his reputation. (damage)
- 8 Artificial intelligence is having a huge impact on the development of technology. (impact)
- 9 Many people like Einstein and Newton changed the shape of the world. (shape)



For sentences 1–6 below, complete the gaps using the nouns in exercise 2.

- 1 Advertising companies increase sales through the \_\_\_\_\_ tion of goods on TV.
- 2 Some pessimists argue that the human race's love of technology will eventually cause the \_\_\_\_\_ tion of society.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ ments in technology have gathered pace in recent years as the speed of computers has increased.
- 4 The greatest human \_\_\_\_\_ ment is the invention of the wheel, not the computer.
- 5 What is the \_\_\_\_\_ tion of the latest electronic gadgets for consumers?
- 6 Why is the \_\_\_\_\_ ing of new ideas so crucial for developing new products?

**Listening**

**IELTS Section 2**

**What to expect in the exam**

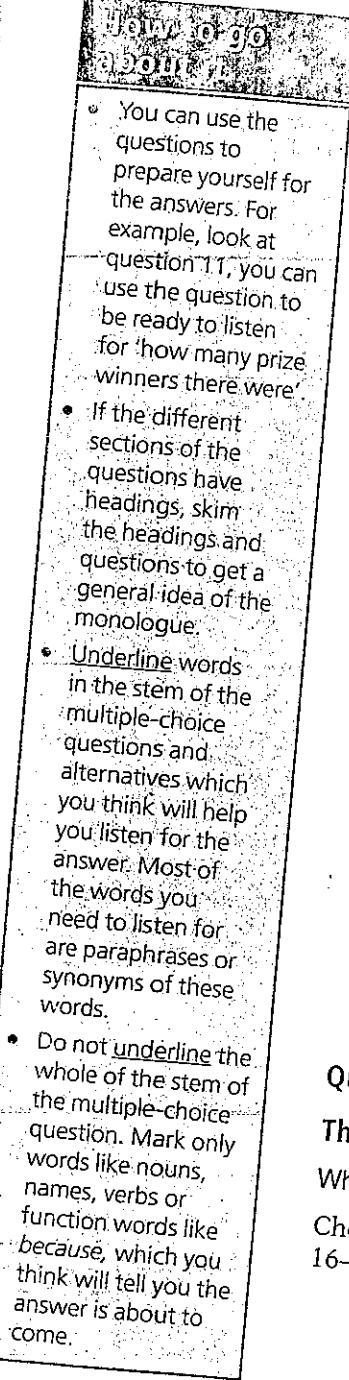
- In IELTS Listening Section 2 you will hear a monologue (one person speaking), but sometimes you may hear one person answering questions. The topic is usually of general interest and there can be two or three sets of questions.
- You will be given time to look at the questions before you begin and in the middle of the recording.
- At the end of the section, you will be given time to check your answers.

The items listed in questions 16–20 on page 20 are in the order they appear in the monologue. You will probably not hear the same words and phrases, so you will have to listen for synonyms or paraphrases. Look at the adjectives listed in A–F and think of at least one synonym for each.

## 1.2 SECTION 2 Questions 11–20

### Questions 11–15

Choose the correct letter, A, B or C.



### Penwood Museum Competition

- 11 In the sixth summer show competition, there were
  - five prize winners.
  - four prize winners.
  - three prize winners.
- 12 The theme of this year's competition is
  - involving young people in the museum's activities.
  - forming better links between local people and the museum.
  - improving the local community's access to art appreciation.
- 13 The competition was open to those aged
  - 13–19.
  - 15–19.
  - 13–18.
- 14 During the preparation for the entry the competitors were
  - able to use the museum's educational facilities.
  - not permitted to use the museum's educational facilities.
  - allowed to buy any of the equipment they needed.
- 15 According to the speaker, the prize-winning exhibit has
  - had no influence at all on attendances.
  - led to a big reduction in attendances.
  - brought about an increase in attendances.

### Questions 16–20

#### The Video Commentaries

What did the older people say about each piece of equipment?

Choose **FIVE** answers from the box and write the correct letter, A–F next to questions 16–20.

#### Comments

- too large
- boring
- more convenient
- exciting
- well-constructed
- still looked fashionable

#### Equipment

- 16 early wooden-framed TV .....
- 17 early radios .....
- 18 microwave ovens .....
- 19 laptops .....
- 20 old cameras .....

## How to do better

- Some IELTS reading passages do not have a title. For these passages, look at the last question which will be a multiple-choice question. There are usually four alternatives. One alternative covers the whole passage and the others generally relate to parts of the passage, so they will give you an idea of what the passage is about.
- Skim the passage and the questions as quickly as you can. Remember the questions will give you a summary of the content of the passage.

## READING PASSAGE

You should spend about 20 minutes on **Questions 1–13**, which are based on the reading passage below.

The long period of the Bronze Age in China, which began around 2000 B.C., saw the growth and maturity of a civilization that would be sustained in its essential aspects for another 2,000 years. In the early stages of this development, the process of urbanization went hand in hand with the establishment of a social order. In China, as in other societies, the mechanism that generated social cohesion, and at a later stage statecraft, was ritualization. As most of the paraphernalia for early rituals were made in bronze and as rituals carried such an important social function, it is perhaps possible to read into the forms and decorations of these objects some of the central concerns of the societies (at least the upper sectors of the societies) that produced them.

There were probably a number of early centers of bronze technology, but the area along the Yellow River in present-day Henan Province emerged as the center of the most advanced and literate cultures of the time and became the seat of the political and military power of the Shang dynasty (ca. 1600–1050 B.C.), the earliest archaeologically recorded dynasty in Chinese history. The Shang dynasty was conquered by the people of Zhou, who came from farther up the Yellow River in the area of Xi'an in Shaanxi Province. In the first years of the Zhou dynasty (ca. 1046–256 B.C.), known as the Western Zhou (ca. 1046–771 B.C.), the ruling house of Zhou exercised a certain degree of ‘imperial’ power over most of central China. With the move of the capital to Luoyang in 771 B.C., however, the power of the Zhou rulers declined and the country divided into a number of nearly autonomous feudal states with nominal allegiance to the emperor. The second phase of the Zhou dynasty, known as the Eastern



Zhou (771–256 B.C.), is subdivided into two periods, the Spring and Autumn period (770–ca. 475 B.C.) and the Warring States period (ca. 475–221 B.C.). During the Warring States period, seven major states contended for supreme control of the country, ending with the unification of China under the Qin in 221 B.C.

Although there is uncertainty as to when metallurgy began in China, there is reason to believe that early bronze-working developed autonomously, independent of outside influences. The era of the Shang and the Zhou dynasties is generally known as the Bronze Age of China, because bronze, an alloy of copper and tin, used to fashion weapons, parts of chariots, and ritual vessels, played an important role in the material culture of the time. Iron appeared in China toward the end of the period, during the Eastern Zhou dynasty.

One of the most distinctive and characteristic images decorating Shang-dynasty bronze vessels is the so-called taotie. The primary attribute of this frontal animal-like mask is a prominent pair of eyes, often protruding in high relief. Between the eyes is a nose, often with nostrils at the base. Taotie can also include jaws and fangs, horns, ears, and eyebrows. Many versions include a split animal-like body with legs and tail, each flank shown in profile on either side of the mask. While following a general form, the appearance and specific components of taotie masks varied by period and place of production. Other common motifs for Shang ritual bronze vessels were dragons, birds, bovine creatures, and a variety of geometric patterns. Currently, the significance of the taotie, as well as the other decorative motifs, in Shang society is unknown.

## Technology—now and then

Jade, along with bronze, represents the highest achievement of Bronze Age material culture. In many respects, the Shang dynasty can be regarded as the culmination of 2,000 years of the art of jade carving. Shang craftsmen had full command of the artistic and technical language developed in the diverse late Neolithic cultures that had a jade-working tradition. On the other hand, some developments in Shang and Zhou jade carving can be regarded as evidence of decline. While Bronze Age jade workers no

doubt had better tools – if only the advantage of metal ones – the great patience and skill of the earlier period seem to be lacking.

If the precise function of ritual jades in the late Neolithic is indeterminate, such is not the case in the Bronze Age. Written records and archaeological evidence inform us that jades were used in sacrificial offerings to gods and ancestors, in burial rites, for recording treaties between states, and in formal ceremonies at the courts of kings.

### Questions 1–6

Do the following statements agree with the information given in the reading passage?

Write:

**TRUE** if the statement agrees with the information

**FALSE** if the statement contradicts the information

**NOT GIVEN** if there is no information on this

- 1 As the migration of people to towns and cities took place, Chinese society became more unified.
- 2 According to evidence that has been unearthed, the Zhou people lost power to the Shang.
- 3 At the end of the Zhou dynasty, there were nine powers seeking to rule China.
- 4 Iron was introduced to China from outside.
- 5 There was only one type of taotie.
- 6 There is some proof that later jade carving was superior to earlier examples.

### Questions 7–12

Classify the following descriptions as relating to

- A Bronze
- B Taotie
- C Jade

#### List of Descriptions

- 7 Its decoration depended on when and where it was made.
- 8 Its meaning in one period of history is still a mystery.
- 9 Its decoration illustrates issues with which the elite in China dealt with.
- 10 It was not worked with the same degree of sophistication as in previous times.
- 11 It sprang up spontaneously without any help from beyond China.
- 12 The time when it was first produced is not known.

### Question 13

Choose the correct letter **A**, **B**, **C** or **D**.

Which of the following is the most suitable title for the reading passage?

- A** The importance of jade carvings
- B** The Chinese Bronze Age
- C** The decline of the Bronze Age
- D** How iron was introduced to China

### Reacting to the text

'History has nothing to teach us, so there is no point dwelling on the past.'

Do you agree with the statement? Does ancient history have any relevance today?

### Language focus 1: Past simple and present perfect

1 Look at the verb tenses in the reading passage on page 21 and answer the following questions:

- Which tense is used more often: the past simple or the present perfect? Why do you think this is?
- Which is more common, the active or the passive voice? Why?

 Read more about how the tenses are used in the Grammar reference on page 220.

2 For sentences 1–8 below, decide if the verb in brackets should be active or passive. Then put it into the past simple.

- 1 The invention of the plough (revolutionize) agriculture.
- 2 What (contribute) to the rapid pace of change in the world in the 20th century?
- 3 The impact of a comet (lead) to the extinction of the dinosaurs.
- 4 Chess first (play) in India.
- 5 The radio (invent) in Italy by Marconi.
- 6 When people (create) cities, it (shape) the way the human race (live) forever.
- 7 Before the advent of mechanized transport, people (travel) for days between countries.
- 8 The mountainous landscape in Greece (influence) the development of ancient city states.

3 For sentences 1–8 below, underline the correct verb form in brackets.

- 1 Not long ago, I (began/have begun/was begun) to study another language.
- 2 When we (were/have been) young, we (had/didn't have/haven't had) many toys, but children nowadays (became/have become/have been become) used to having lots of toys and games.
- 3 Recently, companies (started/have started/have been started) thinking about moving into space tourism.
- 4 In the middle of the 20th century, new materials like plastic (transformed/have transformed/have been transformed) kitchenware.

- 5 I first (went/have gone/have been gone) to South America in the early seventies, but I (never visited/have never visited/have never been visited) Asia.
- 6 (Did you ever see/Have you ever seen/Did you ever seen) the Northern Lights?
- 7 In the past five years, survival rates for people with certain illnesses (improved/have improved/have been improved).
- 8 Yesterday, I (did/have done/have been done) something I (did not do/have not done/have not been done) before. I (spent/have spent/have been spent) the whole day reading a novel.

4 Write five statements about yourself, using the structure *I have never ... , but I ... and the time phrases below.*

*The day before yesterday ...*

*Three days/weeks ago ...*

*Last week/month/year ...*

*The week before last ...*

#### Example:

*I have never been to a gym/the theatre on my own, but yesterday I went to the cinema for the first time by myself.*



- 5  Work in pairs. Tell your partner your sentences. Then ask each other questions to find out more details. Use the following words in your questions: *when, why, why not, what, how, how long*.

## Technology—now and then

### Word building: Qualifying adjectives

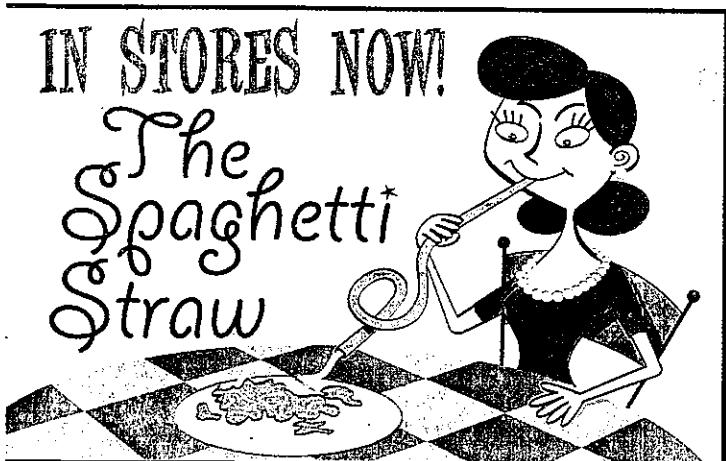
- 1 In IELTS Writing Task 2, IELTS Speaking Part 3 and IELTS Listening it is important be able to qualify ideas and recognize when ideas are being qualified. In the listening practice on page 20 you heard people using adjectives like *too big*, *stylish* and *handy* to make positive or negative comments about objects. For each adjective 1–12 below, write the opposite form in the correct column of the table.

	in-/im-	un-	-less
1 convenient	<i>inconvenient</i>		
2 practical			
3 important			
4 necessary			
5 significant			
6 harmful			
7 valuable			
8 useful			
9 effective			
10 appealing			
11 worthwhile			
12 inspiring			

- 2 Decide which of the words below are synonyms for the word *important*.  
 crucial      pointless      vital      essential      empty      key      critical
- 3 Decide which of the words below is a synonym for the word *unimportant*.  
 trivial      harmless      worthless      insignificant
- 4 For sentences 1–6 below, decide which adjective from exercise 1 can be used to replace the underlined words. Make any necessary changes.

**Example:**

Many of the early technologies we take for granted are those that we cannot do without.  
necessary



- 1 Some ideas from the 1950s were not very sensible or easy to use.
- 2 Using hydrogen cars to combat global warming is a solution that produces the desired result.
- 3 Underground transport systems built in the 19th century are still easy to use for commuters.
- 4 The coordination skills learnt when doing practical work like making things by hand proved to be extremely useful for young people.
- 5 Instead of being an activity which does no harm, playing computer games can cause emotional damage to young players.
- 6 The work of people like Louis Daguerre, who shaped the world of cinema, can only be considered as stimulating and motivating to later generations.

## Language focus 2: Habit in the past

- 1 Look at the following statements from the listening practice on page 20.

*They remembered how they would all go round to ... ,  
... all of whom used to have one ...*

Statements a–c below explain the reasons why we use *would* and *used to* to talk about the past. Decide which statements describe why they are used in the examples above.

- a Like the simple past, *would* and *used to* show repeated actions/activities that no longer happen.
- b *Would* is used for reminiscing about the past.
- c *Used to* is used to talk about states that no longer exist, while *would* is only used to describe repeated actions/activities. *Would* is not usually used in negative or yes/no questions.

 Read more about *would* and *used to* in the Grammar reference on page 220.

- 2 For 1–8 below decide which sentences are correct. Then decide why the incorrect sentences are wrong.

- 1 I would work at the post office during holidays when I was young.
- 2 Students used to play silly games, but they would never hurt anyone.
- 3 My father would work as a lawyer, but he didn't do it for long.
- 4 People in my hometown would hold lots of parties at all times of the year.
- 5 My uncle used to mend machinery and would even build his own car.
- 6 My brothers and sisters didn't use to go to university. They went straight into work after secondary school.
- 7 As a rule, people left their doors unlocked; there never used to be any break-ins.
- 8 People didn't use to throw things out rather than mending them, as they do now.

## Adverbs of frequency

- 1 Look at the following sentence from the listening practice on page 20 and underline the adverb of frequency. Decide where this word fits in the line below showing adverbs of frequency.

*They remembered how they would sometimes all go round to someone's house to watch TV as a special treat.*

- 1 Always
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Frequently
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Seldom
- 6 Never



- 2 Complete the remaining gap in the line with a suitable adverb of frequency.
- 3 Decide where on the line you can add the words in the box below.

occasionally	often	not often	normally
regularly	hardly ever	rarely	commonly

 Read more about adverbs of frequency in the Grammar reference on page 220.

- 4 For questions 1–8 below, decide if the adverb of frequency in *italics* is suitable. Replace the adverbs that are not suitable.

  - 1 I *always* read the newspaper in the morning. I only read it in the afternoon.
  - 2 I *would sometimes* play games with my friends in the summer evenings. We used to meet up about five times a week.
  - 3 I have *never* liked any computer games, but as a teenager I *would* play board games.
  - 4 Governments *seldom* listen to their people. It happens only once in a while.
  - 5 Where I come from, people *usually* tend to greet each other in the street each time they meet, but sometimes they don't.
  - 6 In some parts of the world people have *hardly ever* left their villages, maybe only once in a lifetime.
  - 7 When I was a child I *often* used to watch my grandfather working; as a rule nearly every day.
  - 8 At school, I *would always* do my homework on time. I was never late.



- 5 Write a sentence about your childhood and early life for each of the sentence beginnings below.

*Example:*

I would ...

*I would go to the river near my home rather than sit at home all day in front of a machine.*

- 1 I used to ...
- 2 I would sometimes ...
- 3 I used to always ...
- 4 I would hardly ever ...

## Technology-now and then

### Speaking

IELTS Part 2

- Work in pairs. Look at the following Part 2 task card and make notes.

Describe something which you have made.

You should say:

what it was  
when you made it  
how you felt about making it  
and explain why you made it.



- 2 Compare your notes with another pair. Consider the following:

- The number of words in your notes
- Are your notes easy to read at a glance? Why/Why not?

- 3 Work in pairs. Take turns talking about the topic, using your notes to guide you. You should speak for up to two minutes; time each other using a stopwatch. When your partner has finished speaking, give him/her feedback using the checklist on page 210.

### Writing:

IELTS Task 2



Two different views are expressed in the question. On a piece of paper, make two columns A and B. Choose one of the views and write a list of ideas in column A in one to two minutes. Do not exclude any ideas.

Then write a list of opposing views in column B. Select one or two ideas from each column.

Express your own opinions by either balancing the two views or supporting one view.

Write an introduction that paraphrases the question. Keep the introduction brief - two to three sentences is enough.

### What to expect in the exam

- In IELTS Writing Task 2 you will be asked to write an essay about a topic of general interest.
- You are asked to write at least 250 words.
- You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

- 1 Work in pairs. Read the Task 2 question below and answer questions 1–10 which follow.

#### WRITING TASK 2

You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

Write about the following topic:

*Some people fear that technology is gradually taking over control of our lives, while others think that it has led to many positive developments in all aspects of their lives.*

*Discuss both these views and give your own opinion.*

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

Write at least 250 words.

- 1 Is it crucial to write more than 250 words?
- 2 Do you need to give reasons and examples to support your answer? Should the examples be personal or abstract?
- 3 Can you give results, causes and effects and express reservations to support your answer?
- 4 Is there an upper and lower limit to the number of paragraphs you can write?
- 5 How many parts are there in the above question?
- 6 How many ideas do you need to write about?
- 7 Can you state your opinion in the first paragraph?
- 8 How long should each paragraph be?
- 9 Is there only one way to answer the question?
- 10 What are complex sentences? How do you write them?

Work in pairs. Look at the following introductions to an answer to the question. Decide which two are suitable and why.

- 1 Technology is now used in all areas of our lives: the home, at work and in education. Most people use computers every day.
- 2 Some people fear that technology is gradually taking control of our lives. Others think that it has led to many positive developments in all areas of their lives.
- 3 In some people's eyes the influence of technology over our lives is beneficial and yet to others it is harmful. The arguments on both sides are valid, but there is, in my opinion, little to be anxious about regarding the use of technology.
- 4 As with any development, people worry about how new technology will affect their lives. There are, however, many people who see the benefits of technology, and so are in favour of its use.

The paragraph below continues the argument from one of the introductory paragraphs in exercise 2. Read the paragraph and match it to an introduction.

To some people technology appears to be controlling people's lives. However, I feel the overwhelming effect is beneficial, because technology like computers, mobile phones etc. has brought enormous improvements to many people's lives worldwide. Take, for example, the impact technology has had on communication. Computers have revolutionized the way items such as letters, messages and packages are sent. A quick message, for instance, can be transmitted between New York and Beijing in seconds either by text message or by email. Moreover, very large files such as reports and even whole books that were once sent by post can now be transmitted in order to save time and money. As a result, the economy benefits.

Put each of the linking words in **bold** in exercise 3 into the correct box in the table below.

	Example	Reason	Result	Additional information	Purpose	Contrast
Adverb						
Conjunction						
Other						

Decide what other words can be used to indicate examples and add them to the table.

Decide which words in the box below can be used to replace the words in exercise 3 and 4 and add them to the table.

but	although	since	as	similarly	furthermore
consequently	despite	so	therefore	accordingly	
what is more	also	and so	to		

Write your own answer for the Task 2 question in exercise 1. When you have finished, check your answer using the checklist on page 209.



# Review

## Vocabulary

Complete the gaps in 1–8 below with a suitable word. There may be more than one possible answer.

- 1 How have young people been \_\_\_\_\_ by video games?
- 2 What do you think has been the greatest \_\_\_\_\_ in the world in recent years?
- 3 Who do you think has done the most to \_\_\_\_\_ the world in the past 50 years?
- 4 What is the \_\_\_\_\_ of overusing computers?
- 5 Has technology \_\_\_\_\_ the way we live?
- 6 What has been the most crucial \_\_\_\_\_ in your life in the past year?
- 7 Do you believe that as human beings we are \_\_\_\_\_ the planet?
- 8 What do you think you can do to \_\_\_\_\_ your career?

## Word building

- 1 Complete the following qualifying adjectives from page 24.

- 1 c \_\_\_\_\_ t
- 2 s \_\_\_\_\_ t
- 3 u \_\_\_\_\_ g
- 4 n \_\_\_\_\_ y
- 5 w \_\_\_\_\_ s
- 6 a \_\_\_\_\_ g
- 7 h \_\_\_\_\_ s
- 8 i \_\_\_\_\_ e
- 9 c \_\_\_\_\_ l
- 10 i \_\_\_\_\_ t

- 2 For 1–6 below, underline the correct adjective in *italics*.

- 1 The restrictions on car movements are *harmless/harmful* to the economy.
- 2 In some ways using technology is dangerous, but by and large it is very *useful/detrimental*.
- 3 Many people thought the film was rather *inspiring/dull*, but the critics felt it was just very ordinary.
- 4 Training courses need to teach relevant practical skills, but in most cases they are totally *practical/impractical*.
- 5 Learning to read efficiently is *crucial/unimportant* in today's world, but unfortunately not enough is being done to improve people's skills.
- 6 Do you think it is *necessary/inconvenient* to know how things work or are made? Or is it unnecessary in the modern world?

## Past simple and present perfect

In three of the sentences below the underlined phrases need to change places. Decide which three sentences need to be changed and correct them. Make any necessary changes.

**Example:**

I have listened to the radio yesterday, but I didn't listen to it this morning.

I listened to the radio yesterday, but I haven't listened to it this morning.

- 1 I have played the piano yesterday at home, but I didn't play it today yet.
- 2 I have never eaten dates, but I had figs for the first time a few days ago.
- 3 More new inventions have been created since 1900 than were created at any time before then.
- 4 Although the latest developments in technology affected the way we live, I think the wheel has made a greater impact when it was invented.
- 5 Many people throughout the ancient world developed ideas that have influenced modern education more than is realized.
- 6 My grandfather has designed a new type of car engine when he was in his twenties.  
I designed one too as part of the engineering course I'm doing.

## Habit in the past

In the following extract from IELTS Speaking Part 2, underline the five mistakes in the verbs and verb phrases in *italics*. Then decide what the candidate was asked to describe.

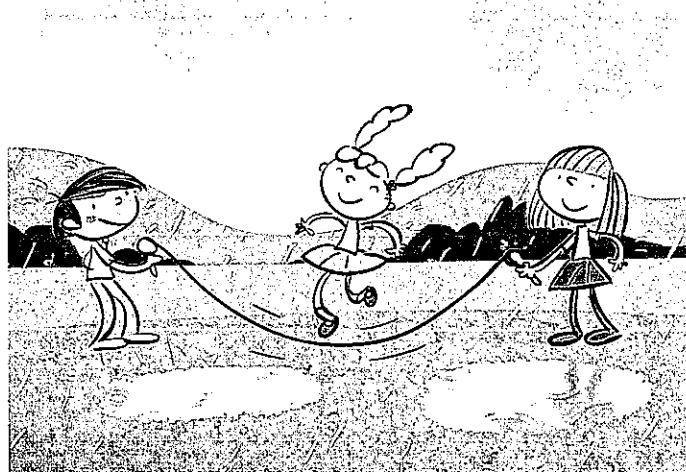
'The place

I'd like to describe is

my hometown, where I lived until

I was ten years old. I 1 hadn't visited my hometown for the last 15 years. So recently I 2 cided to pay a short visit. I can't say that I 3 would w what to expect. Fields where I 4 would play with friends 5 were now covered with buildings and the 6 school I would attend is no longer there. It 7 has been l into a supermarket. A lot of famous people 8 used to l the school, so I am surprised that permission 9 was m to knock it down.

If I remember rightly, it 10 would rain a lot when I was a child, but 11 it has never seemed to annoy us kids. We 12 have just carried on regardless.



## Spelling check

As quickly as you can, look at the following lists of words and circle the correct spelling.

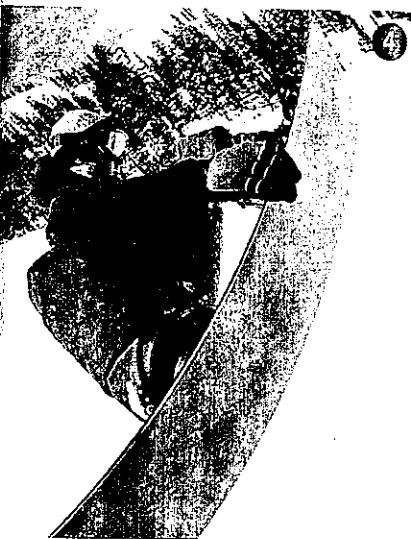
1 convenient	convenient	convenient
2 whorthwhile	worthwhile	worthwile
3 appealing	apealing	apealling
4 ineffectiv	inefective	ineffective
5 useful	usfull	usefull
6 unnecessary	unnecessary	unnecesary
7 impractical	inpractical	impracticel

# 3

# Thrill seekers

## Vocabulary: Sports

- 1  With a partner, describe what is happening in each of the photographs. Then discuss the questions below.



- Do any of these activities appeal to you? Why/Why not?
- Which activity do you think is the most exciting/popular/risky?
- What is the attraction of extreme sports compared with activities such as playing computer games or reading?

- 2 For 1–8 in the table below decide what sport is connected with the place and the equipment. There may be more than one possible answer.

Sport	Place	Equipment
1	pitch	ball/goal
2	ring	gloves/shorts
3	track	shoes/spikes
4	gym	weights
5	pool	costume
6	sea reefs	oxygen tank
7	court	racquet/ball
8	course	clubs/irons

- 3 Work in pairs. Give at least one example of each type of sport in 1–10 below. You may use a dictionary to help you, if necessary.

1 motor  
2 field

3 water  
4 combat

5 racquet  
6 equestrian

7 winter  
8 indoor

9 outdoor  
10 team

Hot air

- Ski to cool will
- Make infatuated number one
- Try typical exercise very to no longer
- Change our answers exactly correctly more in time before

ening

IS Sections

0 90  
ITie questions  
an idea of the  
t of what youin  
ny specific  
ation in  
for example,  
rs, nouns,  
gs etc.decide the  
word that  
red, for  
e, noun,  
c. Also try  
de whether  
re singular  
il.he number  
is required.  
write any  
rom the  
ns on the  
sheet. For  
e, if the  
n is, 'in the  
' and the  
answer is  
the answer  
rning would  
ig.**What to expect in the exam**

- In IELTS Listening Section 3 there can be two or more speakers having a discussion about a subject of an academic nature. You need to concentrate and learn to recognize who is speaking.
- At the beginning of the recording the topic of the conversation is mentioned.
- You will be given time to look at the questions before you begin and in the middle of the recording.
- At the end of the section you will be given time to check your answers.

**1.3 SECTION 3 Questions 21–30****Question 21**

Choose the correct letter, A, B or C.

- 21 The initial purpose of the case study was to look only at the club's
- A health and safety policy.
  - B sporting achievements.
  - C management structure.

**Questions 22–25**

Complete the notes below.

Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER** for each answer.**Stars Club Case Study****Club background**

- 600 members overall
- 23 staff including 22 ..... workers

So far interviewed around 23 .....

Face-to-face interviews preferable to a questionnaire

Would be able to ask for 24 ..... where necessary

Good administration/very focused managers

Management group has team 25 .....

Being there is an exhilarating experience

**Questions 26–30**

Complete the table below.

Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** for each answer.**Reasons for Club's Success**

<b>Reasons</b>	<b>Comments by researchers</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
funding from government, private 26 ..... and .....	crucial	to pay for facilities, 27 ..... and time off work
quality of 28 .....	professional	encouraging people to reach their 29 .....
motivation and 30 ..... of athletes	thrilling	to become the best in their field

## Thrill seekers

### Language focus 1: Comparison

- 1 Look at the following extract from the listening practice on page 31.

a ... *what's made it (the club) more successful than other local clubs ...*

This can be rewritten as:

b ... *why it (the club) has had more success than other local clubs*

or

c ... *why it (the club) has succeeded more than ...*

Look at sentences a–c above and decide whether each one uses a noun, verb or adjective to make a comparison. Why is the comparative of the adjective formed with the word *more*?

**36** Read more about comparison in the Grammar reference on page 220.

- 2 Complete the table below.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
		the worst
	better	
noisy		
wet		
tasty		
cheap		
lively		
appetizing		

- 3 For 1–8 below, put the word in brackets into the correct comparative or superlative form.

- 1 It's much (*easy*) to find places to do specialist sports outside cities and towns.
- 2 Activities like bowling are far (*popular*) among older age groups.
- 3 Which sport do you think is (*energetic*) of all?
- 4 People who do some physical activity are supposed to be (*happy*) than less active people.
- 5 It is becoming (*difficult*) for people to organize their lives around leisure activities nowadays.
- 6 Is work (*stressful*) aspect of modern life?

- 7 Is mental activity (*important*) than physical activity?
- 8 People don't realize that racing drivers are (*fit*) individuals in sport.



- 4 Work in pairs. Look at sentences 1–8 in exercise 3 and decide what the noun is for each adjective.

- 5 Rewrite sentences 1–8 in exercise 3 using a noun instead of an adjective. Make any necessary changes.

*Example:*

- 1 It's much (*easy*) to find places to do specialist sports outside cities and towns.

*Places to do specialist sports can be found ... with more ease outside cities and towns.*

- 6 The questionnaire below contains some mistakes. Rewrite the questions that are incorrect.

Do you agree that ...

- 1 football is exciting than swimming?
- 2 athletics is the most boring activity to watch on TV?
- 3 extreme sports like sky-diving are dangerouser than hiking?
- 4 you need to be fiter to go cycling than walking?
- 5 table tennis is not most exciting sport in the world?
- 6 people are lazier nowadays than they were in the past?
- 7 rowing is a sport only for richest people?
- 8 tennis is more exhilarating than skiing?
- 9 watching sport on TV or the Internet is less exciting than seeing it live?
- 10 racquet sports like squash and tennis are tiring than many other sports?

- 7 **Use the questionnaire to interview other students in your class. Ask for reasons and examples. If someone agrees with a statement, put a tick (✓) next to the question.**

## Word building: Adjectives ending in *-ing* / *-ed*

In the listening practice on page 31, Marcello says:

*'It's a really exhilarating experience being there. I can't wait to go in every day.'*

The adjective *exhilarating* comes from the verb *exhilarate*. There are two types of adjectives that can be made from the verb:

- Verb + *-ing*: *exhilarating*   *Something is exhilarating if it makes me feel exhilarated.*
- Verb + *-ed*: *exhilarated*   *I feel exhilarated because something is exhilarating.*

Adjectives ending in *-ing/-ed* like *exhilarating* and *exhilarated* are used to evaluate or express an opinion about something. Like the speaker in the listening practice you can use adjectives like this in your speaking and writing to express your judgement about an idea, event, experience, etc.

### 1 For 1–8 below, underline the correct adjective in *italics*.

- 1 Do you find sports like mountaineering and parkour *thrilling/thrilled* to watch?
- 2 Do you think people get *irritating/irritated* by the constant encouragement to do something physical?
- 3 Why do you think people are *interesting/interested* in extreme sports?
- 4 Do you think sports stars are as *motivating/motivated* for young people now as in the past?
- 5 What makes funfair rides like roller coasters *exciting/excited*?
- 6 Are you the sort of person who considers sports programmes on TV *annoying/annoyed*, or do you get *annoying/annoyed* by other types of programmes?
- 7 Do you think extreme sports are more *challenging/challenged* than other sports?
- 8 Do you feel *invigorated/invigorating* when you do any type of energetic activity?



### 2 Work in pairs. Choose three questions from exercise 1 to ask your partner. Take turns asking and answering the questions. Give reasons and examples in your answers.

### 3 Work in pairs. For 1–8 below, use a form of the word in brackets (noun, verb or adjective) to complete the sentences.

- 1 It is rare to see a whole stadium *(electrify)* by a player's performance.
- 2 These days I don't think young people feel *(challenge)* enough physically at school or work.
- 3 Where I come from people find football more *(interest)* than other sports.
- 4 Some sports like snowboarding and skateboarding seem to hold some *(fascinate)* for young people.
- 5 Being *(motivate)* to take up some activity, however gentle, is not always easy.
- 6 The thrill of modern computer games is as *(excite)* as some real sports.
- 7 People often feel *(refresh)* after doing strenuous physical exercise.
- 8 Other people may find as much *(excite)* in reading a book as in climbing a mountain.



## Thrill seekers

### Speaking

IELTS Speaking

#### What to expect in the exam

- In IELTS Speaking Part 1 you will be asked about familiar topics, for example, common pastimes in your country now compared with the past.
- In Part 1 the discussion is more personal and less abstract than in Parts 2 and 3.

- 1 Make examiner's questions from the following lists of words.
  - 1 what/kinds/sports/popular/your country?
  - 2 they/as popular/used be/in past?
  - 3 are/same games/popular/as in past?
  - 4 do/young people/more physical activities/extreme sports/how past?
  - 5 what/makes/these games/interesting/people?
  - 6 sports/challenging/now than/they in the past
  - 7 young people/challenged more/howadays in the past?
- 2 **O** Work in pairs. Take turns playing the role of the examiner and the candidate. Ask and answer the questions. Try to use some of the adjectives from the Word building section on page 33.

### Reading

IELTS Reading Passage

#### Don't forget!

If there is no title; look at the last question to get an idea of the content of the passage.

#### What to expect in the exam

- IELTS reading passages may be unique but they follow certain patterns like cause and effect, problem and solution, historical development and argument and explanation. The patterns that you will come across in IELTS are limited, but the content is unlimited.
- To achieve a high score you need to learn to be familiar with and recognize how writers organize information as this helps you see the patterns of organization of reading passages, for example, cause and effect. See Ready for Reading on page 91.

Work in pairs. Look at the photograph. Describe what kinds of rides you would expect to find in an amusement park or fairground.

### READING PASSAGE

You should spend about 20 minutes on **Questions 1–13**, which are based on the reading passage below.

*Readers can join a unique experiment to discover what goes on in our brains and bodies at the fairground.*

*Roger Highfield reports.*

- A For decades, thrill-seekers have happily queued to experience a few seconds of the adrenaline-spiking, intestine-twisting thrills of roller coaster and other funfair joy rides. Nowadays, people also spend hours living out the virtual excitement of computer games.
- B An experiment will soon lay bare the science of thrills and help to build the foundation of the next generation of funfair rides and sensational computer games.

Brendan Walker, a self-proclaimed 'thrill engineer', is curating this extraordinary venture where people can become a guinea pig. Fairground: Thrill Laboratory, at the Science Museum's Dana Centre, will include three different rides over three weeks – the Booster, to measure the physiology of excitement and thrill; a ghost train, to measure fear and the tingle of anticipation; and Miami Trip, a gentler ride designed to explore pleasure.



- C One of the collaborators in the thrill lab is Prof Tom Rodden. Its impetus is the blurring of the boundary between the real and the digital worlds, he explained: today, trainers count footsteps, wrist watches can measure heart rate, satellites can detect where we are and, all the while, computer games are being played in the streets not just the living room, and computer accessories such as joysticks are being replaced with real-world objects such as tennis racquets.
- D Doctors already understand the broad effects of joy rides. As a roller coaster puts the body through weightlessness, high gravitational forces and acceleration, the brain struggles to make sense of conflicting and changing signals from the senses. There are effects on the vestibular system, located in the inner ear, that detects position and motion, and on the somatic nervous system, which controls voluntary systems in the body, such as heartbeat.
- E Added to the confusion of these signals are the messages from the eye, which may be different from those of the other systems. This can lead to peculiar effects such as thevection illusion (think of when you are stopped at a traffic light and the car next to you edges forward – you feel as though you are moving).
- F Overall the brain responds to an exhilarating ride by triggering the release of a potent cocktail of biochemicals to deal with the body's stress, including more adrenaline (epinephrine) and norepinephrine which can suppress pain and boost the glow of euphoria that follows. The result can be pleasure but can also be nausea. Military and Nasa researchers have studied the problem for half a century, calling it 'simulator sickness'.
- G But engineers and scientists have not figured out how to fool the senses at the same rate at the same time. They still don't know for sure who might get sick. Meanwhile, the latest rides are pushing the boundaries of endurance. The human body cannot take much more of a G-force than the latest rollercoasters, so we need to understand more about what distinguishes a spine-tingling thrill from a gut-emptying fright to ensure the experience is memorable for the right reasons.
- H At the thrill lab volunteers will be asked to try the fairground rides while hooked up to special equipment. This includes an accelerometer that measures the G-force their body is subjected to; a measure of blood oxygen levels; measures of skin conductance (sweating) and an ECG monitor that keeps track of their heart rate. In addition, a helmet-mounted video camera will film their expressions, from the first gasp to the last scream. As with astronauts and test pilots, information will be beamed in real time to a computer. And measurements will be displayed publicly. Aside from providing amusement for onlookers, participants can relive their terrifying experiences.
- I This study will help designers of amusement parks to squeeze more shrieks out of people by creating the illusion of imminent death, said Prof Rodden. Equally, the next generation of rides will sense when too many people feel nauseous and wind down accordingly. In short, they will be able to distinguish terror from titillation. This work will also help computer games to escape the boundaries of the Xbox and PlayStation. Steve Benford, of the mixed-reality lab at the University of Nottingham, believes that the thrill lab will help to design more immersive rides and games, 'real-time adaptive spaces.'

### Questions 1–6

The reading passage has nine paragraphs, A–I.

Which paragraph contains the following information?

**NB** You may use any letter more than once.

- 1 the impact on the human auditory system
- 2 what the lab experiments will show onlookers
- 3 the purpose of having different test rides
- 4 the various types of medical apparatus employed to monitor the research
- 5 the substances produced in reaction to thrilling rides
- 6 specific assistance to those designing amusement parks in the future

Questions 1–6:  
Read the instructions  
carefully. In this  
section, you can  
use any letter more  
than once.  
  
For any of the  
questions in this  
section, if the  
looks as if  
it fit together  
same  
ph.  
  
For any pieces  
mention  
how other  
fit in the

### Questions 7–12

Do the following statements agree with the information given in the reading passage?

Write:

**TRUE** if the statement agrees with the information

**FALSE** if the statement contradicts the information

**NOT GIVEN** if there is no information on this

- 7 More people now get thrills from computer games than fairground rides.
- 8 The brain has difficulty understanding the messages sent from the senses during rollercoaster rides.
- 9 Simulator sickness has been under investigation by a large number of researchers.
- 10 The most recent rollercoasters take the human body further than their G-force limits.
- 11 The lab volunteers will consist of equal numbers of men and women.
- 12 Future rides will be able to adapt to people's reactions.

### Question 13

Choose the correct letter **A**, **B**, **C**, or **D**.

- 13 Which of the following is the most suitable title for the reading passage?
  - A Roller coasters and their effects on the brain
  - B What makes fairground rides so thrilling?
  - C The equipment used to test the efficacy of funfair rides
  - D How the brain copes with fear in response to funfair rides

### Reacting to the text

Do you find roller coasters 'thrilling'? Why/Why not?

Why do you think people enjoy extreme rides?

### Language focus 2: Adjectives with prepositions

- 1 For 1–10 below, underline the correct preposition in *italics*.

- 1 I am very keen *about/on/for* swimming, especially first thing in the morning.
- 2 Some people are addicted *by/with/to* sports, they spend all their time glued to the TV.
- 3 He's mad *for/to/about* parachuting. It's something I personally can't understand.
- 4 I'm not interested *in/by/with* going to the gym.
- 5 I easily get bored *in/about/with* doing nothing.
- 6 I can't say I'm indifferent *in/to/about* sport, but I don't like spending my time watching it.
- 7 I used to be very enthusiastic *on/about/with* team sports, but not any more.
- 8 I'm not sure I'm capable *to/for/of* running for long distances.
- 9 I'm really passionate *for/about/on* travelling around the world and meeting fellow hockey enthusiasts.

- 10 I am fond *about/to/of* travelling but my brother is fanatical *for/about/with* visiting new places.

Read more about adjectives with prepositions in the Grammar reference on page 221.

- 2 Work in pairs. Match the sentence beginnings 1–7 with the endings a–g. It is possible to match two of the sentence beginnings with more than one ending.

- |                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| 1 I am mad         | a to any kind of physical activity.             |
| 2 I am not keen    | b about playing computer games.                 |
| 3 I am bored       | c on team sports.                               |
| 4 I am interested  | d in walking in the countryside.                |
| 5 I am passionate  | e with watching sport on TV.                    |
| 6 I am fond        | f about doing all kinds of exercise.            |
| 7 I am indifferent | g of reading the sports pages in the newspaper. |

Look at questions 1–6 in the table below and underline the answer which is most suitable for you. If none are suitable, write your own answer in the 'other' box.

1 Which sport do you like the most?	football	horse-riding	swimming	other:
2 Who do you prefer doing it with?	a colleague	a friend	nobody	other:
3 How often do you like doing it?	once a week	twice a week	three times a week	other:
4 When do you normally like to do it?	mornings	afternoons	evenings	other:
5 How would you describe your attitude to the sport?	interested	enthusiastic	addicted	other:
6 Why do you enjoy doing it?	challenging	exciting	exhilarating	other:

O Explain your answers to a partner using the adjectives and prepositions in exercise 1.

### Taking

IELTS Part 2

- 1 Look at the following Part 2 task card. Make notes to prepare your answer using the adjectives and questions and answers in the Language focus 2 exercises on page 36 to help you.

Describe a sporting activity you like.

You should say:

when you first played it

who you do it with

where you do it

and explain why you enjoy doing it.

- 2 O Work in pairs. Take turns talking about the topic, using your notes to guide you. You should speak for up to two minutes; time each other using a stopwatch. When your partner has finished speaking, give him/her the feedback using the checklist on page 210.

### Taking

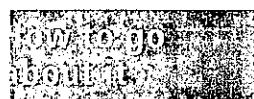
IELTS Part 3

#### What to expect in the exam

- In IELTS Speaking Part 3 you will have a discussion with the examiner, which is linked to the topic of Part 2. However, the questions will be more abstract and you need to talk about general ideas, not about yourself and your own experiences as in Parts 1 and 2.

- 1 O Decide which three of the following phrases describe the main reasons for people doing sport. Then discuss your answers with a partner, giving reasons and examples.
- 1 to keep fit
  - 2 so they can lose weight
  - 3 so that they can make friends
  - 4 in order to help them relax
  - 5 so as to get an adrenaline rush
  - 6 in order to escape from the real world
- 2 Underline the words in 1–6 above that indicate purpose. Then use these phrases to write your own sentences explaining why you do sporting activities.
- 3 It is important to give variety to what you say. Rephrase items 1–6 using the following structure: *because they + want/would like/would rather/would rather not/like to ...*. Make any necessary changes.

## Thrill seekers



You need to develop your ideas by using simple signposts such as 'purpose' words.

Give reasons and examples.

- 4 Work in pairs. Look at the Part 3 questions below and choose one or two questions from each. Briefly discuss them using the expressions of purpose in exercise 1. Then take turns asking each other the questions. When your partner has finished speaking, give him/her feedback using the checklist on page 210.

### Physical activity

- Do you think that doing physical activity is important nowadays?  
What are the advantages and disadvantages of doing any kind of physical activity?  
Are people less active than they were in the past? Why/Why not?  
In what ways can people be encouraged to adopt a less sedentary and more active lifestyle?

### Benefits of sport

- What are the social benefits of doing sporting activities?  
Are we more risk averse than we were in the past, that is, do we seek to avoid risks nowadays?  
How can the lives of young people be made more challenging?  
What are the benefits to the individual and society of people being involved in extreme sports? Why?

## Writing:

IELTS Task 1

- 1 Look at the following Task 1 question. Then write the answers to questions 1–9 below in full sentences.

### WRITING TASK 1

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

*The table below shows the percentage of adults aged 16 and over who participated in various activities in the four weeks prior to interview in the United Kingdom in 2002.*

*Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.*

Write at least 150 words.

#### Participation in various sporting activities

	Males (%)	Females (%)	Total (%) (average)
Walking	49	41	45
Cue sports (eg. billiards)	19	4	11
Cycling	15	8	11
Swimming	13	16	15
Football	10	0	5
Weight training	9	3	6
Keep fit/Yoga	7	17	12
At least one activity <sup>1</sup>	71	57	64

<sup>1</sup> Includes other items not separately listed.

- 1 Did fewer women than men go swimming?
- 2 Was there a far greater proportion of men than women involved in walking?
- 3 Were males less likely to take part in sporting activities?
- 4 Did nearly twice as many women as men go cycling?

- 5 Does the table compare data about male and female involvement in a selection of activities in the United Kingdom in 2002?
- 6 Did ten per cent of men play football, while no women played?
- 7 Compared with males, did more than twice as many females go to keep fit/yoga classes?
- 8 Was football the least popular activity overall?
- 9 Overall, were males more involved in physical activity than females?
- 2 Work in pairs. Match each of your answers to the questions in exercise 1 to section **a**, **b** or **c** below.
- a** the introduction      **b** the overview      **c** specific data
- 3 Underline the words and phrases used to make comparisons in questions 1–9 in exercise 1.
- 4 Rewrite sentences 1–6 using the words and phrases in the box below. Make any necessary changes.

a smaller proportion of three-quarters	half	a third of the number of five times the number of	40% of over 50%
---	------	--	--------------------

**Example:**

Twice as many cars were sold in June compared to March.

*Half as many cars were sold in March compared to June.*

- 1 The football match was attended by three times as many spectators as the rugby match.
  - 2 The sports department was visited by only 20 per cent of the shoppers in February 2009 when compared to February 2008.
  - 3 More than four out of every ten competitors were from the main city.
  - 4 The bulk of players were from overseas rather than home-grown.
  - 5 A quarter of the members of the sports club paid by cash rather than credit card.
  - 6 The team lost just under half of the games they played last season.
- 5 Write an answer for the Task 1 question below using the comparative structures in Language focus 1 on page 32 and the words and phrases in exercise 4. When you have finished, check your answer using the checklist on page 209.

**WRITING TASK 1**

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

*The table below gives information about the participation of 11–14 year-olds by gender in extreme sports in the UK in 2003.*

*Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.*

Write at least 150 words.

**Extreme sports that 11–14 year-olds participated in, by gender, 2003**

	Male (%)	Female (%)	Total (%) (average)
Mountain biking	22.7	13.3	18.1
Snowboarding	8.1	4.0	6.1
Mountain Climbing	10.6	9.3	10.0
Skateboarding	27.5	13.8	20.8
Rollerblading	21.7	31.7	26.6

sure your  
lution does  
st copy the  
ctions.  
a clear  
iew.  
data and  
are specific  
but do not just  
a list.

# 3

# Review

## Vocabulary

- 1 Decide if the sports in the box below are indoor sports, outdoor sports or both. Then put them in the correct column in the table.

golf snowboarding boxing squash  
football baseball rugby running

Indoor	Outdoor	Both

- 2 Decide which of the sports in exercise 1 require each piece of equipment 1–10 below?

- |              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1 a ball     | 6 a board   |
| 2 a wall     | 7 gloves    |
| 3 clubs      | 8 a racquet |
| 4 a net      | 9 a bat     |
| 5 goal posts | 10 spikes   |

## Comparison

- 1 Rewrite sentences 1–6 below using an adjective made from the noun underlined.

*Example:*

People's lives have less excitement nowadays than in previous generations.

*People's lives are less exciting nowadays than in previous generations.*

- 1 Does windsurfing involve greater expense than ordinary surfing?
- 2 I find that watching sport has greater appeal for me than taking part.
- 3 Which sport presents a greater challenge than any other?
- 4 Which sport has the best safety on record?
- 5 As they are old, the facilities have less value than those at other clubs.
- 6 The club has more success than similar organizations.

- 2 Write a full sentence for each list of words in 1–8 below.

- 1 India/not/be/big/Africa
- 2 Pacific Ocean/be/wide/Atlantic Ocean
- 3 mountaineers/not/earn/much/footballers
- 4 football matches/attract/far great/numbers/squash tournaments
- 5 parkour/seem/much/risky/skateboarding
- 6 many sports/demand/stamina/intellect
- 7 active/life/be/considerable/harmful/sedentary lifestyle
- 8 private cars/make/much/noise/lorries

## Adjectives with prepositions

Complete sentences 1–7 with a suitable adjective. There may be more than one possible answer.

- 1 Are you \_\_\_\_\_ on listening to sports commentaries on the radio?
- 2 Are you \_\_\_\_\_ in meeting famous sports people?
- 3 He has enormous stamina. He is \_\_\_\_\_ of running for hours.
- 4 Sport is like a drug to some people. They are completely \_\_\_\_\_ to doing it or watching it.
- 5 Some people do not find sport interesting. They are completely \_\_\_\_\_ to it.
- 6 I like adventure films, but I wouldn't say I was wildly \_\_\_\_\_ about them!
- 7 I get easily \_\_\_\_\_ with watching sport on TV.

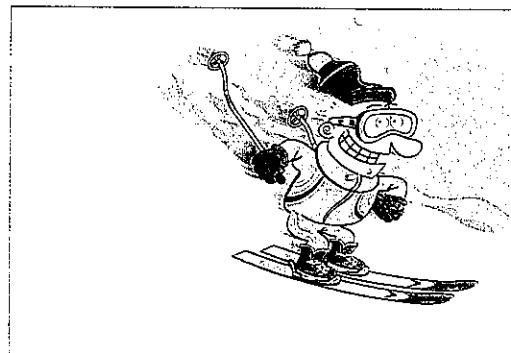
## Word building

- 1 For 1–8 below, underline the adjectives and decide if they are correct. Correct any mistakes.

- 1 I found that I was fascinated by the skill required in the game of baseball.
- 2 It was clear that he was very motivating and wanted to go back to the gym.
- 3 We were all thrilled by the pace of the football game.
- 4 Is the noise of the motorbikes in motorsports irritated for you?
- 5 I was very interesting in trying out snowboarding for the first time.
- 6 She was excited to watch in the horse race, especially when she overtook everyone.
- 7 I wasn't annoyed at all by the fact that the rugby team lost; it was a good game.
- 8 I was not really challenging by the game of tennis, but I enjoyed it nonetheless.

- 2 Match 1–5 below with a–e to complete the IELTS Speaking Part 1 answers.

- 1 I really find skiing thrilling.
  - 2 I love playing football and rugby,
  - 3 I'm mad about baseball, especially live matches.
  - 4 I am very keen on indoor sports,
  - 5 I'm really enthusiastic about extreme sports like hang-gliding.
- a Some people are frightened of heights, but I find flying fascinating.
  - b I find being in the stadium electrifying.
  - c as they are very fast moving team sports and they're challenging mentally and physically.
  - d because where I grew up the weather was too cold to play outside. So I became interested in badminton and squash.
  - e It's so exciting racing down a mountain slope at high speed.



- 3 The IELTS Speaking Part 1 statements in exercise 2 are personal, but in Part 3 you need to talk about abstract ideas. Choose a statement in exercise 3 and write three or four sentences about the sport in an abstract way.

### **Example:**

I'm mad about baseball, especially live matches. I find being in the stadium electrifying.

People generally like baseball because they find the atmosphere in the stadium electrifying.

The atmosphere in the stadium at baseball games is often electrifying.

It is thrilling to watch baseball in a packed stadium.

# Listening

## Introduction

The IELTS Listening module has 40 questions and lasts approximately 30 minutes. There are four sections with ten questions in each.

The first two sections are of a social nature. Section 1 is a conversation between two people and Section 2 is usually a monologue. However, Section 2 can also be a conversation between two people. Sections 3 and 4 are connected with education and training. Section 3 is a conversation involving up to four people and Section 4 is a monologue.

You hear each section once only and answer the questions in the question booklet as you listen. You are given time to check your answers at the end of each section. At the end of the test you have ten minutes to transfer your answers to the answer sheet. A brief description is given at the beginning of each section. At the beginning of section 1 an example is always given.

The question types used are:

- multiple choice
- short-answer questions
- sentence completion
- labelling a diagram/plan/map
- notes/form/summary/flow-chart completion
- classification
- matching

## Section 1

Section 1 is a conversation between two speakers in a social setting (for example, enrolling in a club or buying something), which involves the exchange of information like personal details.

The section is divided into two parts. You will be given time to look at the questions before each part.

**1**  1.4 Listen and follow the instructions.

### SECTION 1 Questions 1–10

#### Questions 1–6

Complete the form below.

Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER** for each answer.

#### Details for book search

Example	Answer
Department	Book Search

Title	1 .....
Author	Dayne 2 .....
ISBN number	978-0- 3 .....
Paperback book	

Only published in	4 .....
No longer in print	
Book category	5 ..... fiction
Search types:	
Gold	£25
Silver	6 £ .....

**Questions 7–10**

Complete the sentences below.

Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER** for each answer.

- 7 The caller's mobile number is 08967 .....
- 8 Her email address is ..... thompson9z@yahoo.fr.
- 9 Her address is ..... Chaucer House, Ludlow Park Drive, Richmond,  
SW20 9RL.
- 10 She doesn't want to receive any emails about .....

- 2 Work in pairs. Look at the listening script on page 228 and check your answers. Underline the words in the questions which show the answer is about to be given. Match these words with the answers in the script.
- 3 **O** With your partner, discuss the type of questions you have problems with, for example, writing down numbers, words with plural endings, or answers which are close together or far apart. Compare them with another pair of students. Keep a record of the problem areas and think about them while you are studying by yourself and before you do a test.

**Section 2**

In Section 2 you will hear a monologue of a social nature like a radio broadcast or a talk about a place, but be aware than you may also hear a conversation between two people.

There may be two or three types of question. The recording is divided into two parts, but you will be given time to look at the questions before each part.

- 1 In questions **11–16** on page 44, decide which you think you should listen for first: items **A–G** or the parts of the cinema **11–16**.
- 2 Work in pairs. Decide what synonyms you might hear for the words in **A–G**.
- 3 For questions **17–20**, underline the word or words which show the answer is about to

## Ready for Listening

- 4 1.5 Listen and follow the instructions.

### SECTION 2 Questions 11–20

#### Questions 11–16

Which change has been made to each part of the cinema?

Choose **SIX** answers from the box and write the correct letter, **A–G**, next to questions 11–16.



#### Regal Cinema Complex

- A enlarged
- B replaced
- C still closed
- D thoroughly cleaned
- E split up
- F brightened up
- G moved

#### Part of the cinema

- 11 facade .....
- 12 auditorium .....
- 13 foyer .....
- 14 bar .....
- 15 roof terrace .....
- 16 cinema shop .....

#### Questions 17–20

Choose the correct letter **A**, **B** or **C**.

- 17 The renovated cinema will open again from
  - A 14th July.
  - B 4th July.
  - C 14th June.
- 18 Which group will receive free tickets during the first week of opening?
  - A Pensioners who attend any evening session.
  - B Young people aged 17–25.
  - C Children who arrive for a matinee performance.
- 19 On Wednesdays the reduction on ticket prices for cinema members will be
  - A 25%.
  - B 50%.
  - C 33%.
- 20 A new development at the cinema is the
  - A cinematography classes.
  - B weekly workshops.
  - C monthly talks.

- C monthly talks.
- 5 Work in pairs. Look at the listening script on page 229 and check your answers. Find the synonyms for the words or phrases in questions 11–16. Were any of the words you chose in exercise 2 used?

### Section 3

In Section 3 you will hear a conversation between two to four people on a topic connected with education or training, like preparing for a tutorial or receiving feedback on an assignment.

There may be only one type of question or up to three. The recording is divided into two parts, but you will be given time to look at the questions before each part.

- 1 Work in pairs. For question 21, decide which words in the stem help prepare you for the answer. Decide what synonyms might you hear for each.
- 2 For questions 22–24, decide which aspects of research you think are most likely to be still undecided at the beginning of a research project. Then think of synonyms for the words in A–G.
- 3 For questions 25–30, decide which answers are numbers and which answers could be 
- 4 1.6 Listen and follow the instructions.

### SECTION 3 Questions 21–30

#### Question 21

Choose the correct letter **A**, **B** or **C**.

- 21 Zahra's talk is on electronic gadgets that people
- A find very annoying to have to listen to.
  - B bought in the recent past.
  - C feel they have to carry with them.

#### Questions 22–24

Choose **THREE** letters, **A–G**.

Which **THREE** of the following elements of conducting Zahra's research are mentioned as not yet decided?

- A length of the questionnaire
- B pictures to use
- C volume of data
- D duration of interviews
- E period of research
- F age of interviewees

## Ready for Listening

### Questions 25–30

Complete the table below.

Write **NO MORE THAN THREE WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER** for each answer.

#### Questionnaire on gadgets

Tim's electronic gadgets	Use	Score
Mobile	Excluding phoning mainly for sending <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• texts</li><li>• 25 .....</li></ul>	10
Laptop	Typing assignments and 26 .....	27 .....
iPod	Just listening to music	28 .....
Future newspaper reader	Eventually for 29 .....	30 .....

- 5 Work in pairs. Look at the listening script on page 229 to check if any of the words or phrases you chose for exercise 2 were used.

### Section 4

In Section 4 you will hear a talk or lecture of an educational/academic nature. You do not need any specialist knowledge to understand the talk.

There may be only one type of question or up to three. There is no break in the middle, but there is a pause of a few seconds. You will be given time to look at all of the questions before you begin.

- 1 Work in pairs. For questions 31–35, decide which words in the stem indicate the answer is about to be given. Then think of paraphrases for the alternatives **A–C**.
- 2 For questions 36–40, study the diagram carefully and make sure you know the sequence the information is given in.
- 3 1.7 Listen and follow the instructions.

### SECTION 4 Questions 31–40

#### Questions 31–35

Choose the correct letter **A**, **B** or **C**.

##### Cloud-seeding to provide rain

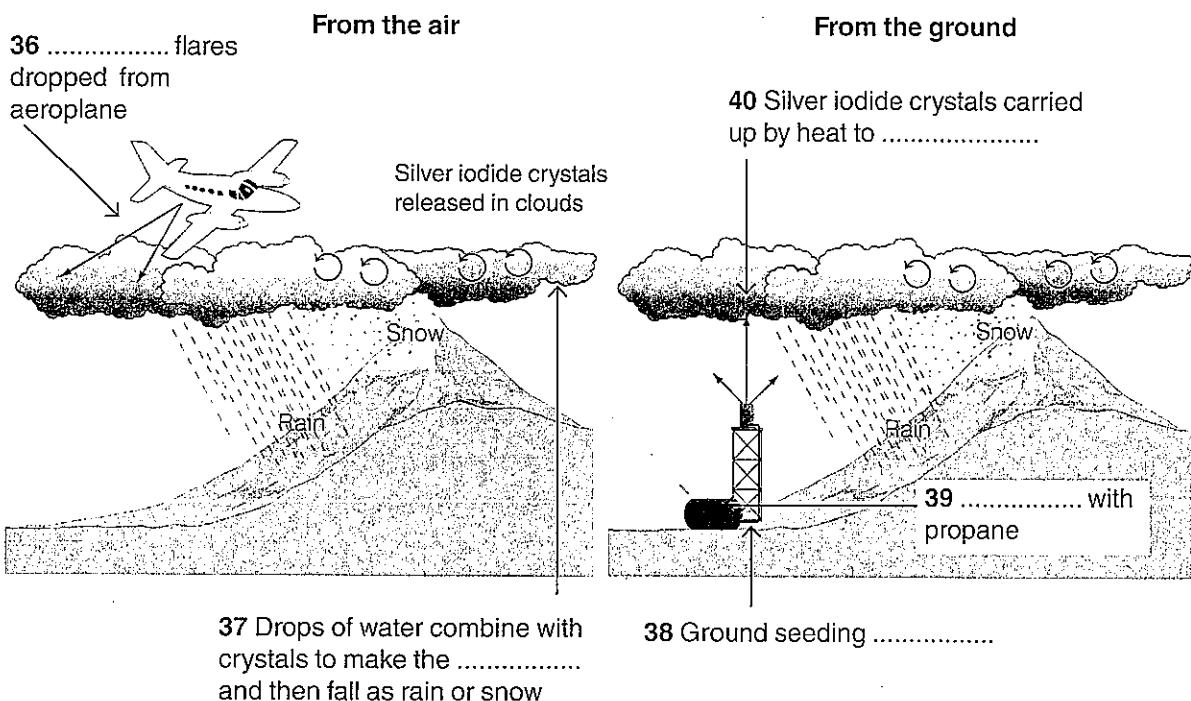
- 31 Boreholes provide water for
- industrial use.
  - agricultural purposes.
  - domestic consumption.
- 32 According to the speaker, in the past people have tried to induce rain by
- supernatural means.
  - using fires.
  - special dances.

- 33 There is some proof that seeding clouds increases rainfall by  
 A 15%.  
 B 55%.  
 C 25%.
- 34 According to the speaker, why do some people not support cloud seeding?  
 A The benefits of the practice are limited.  
 B The costs of the equipment are too great.  
 C The effects of playing with nature are unknown.
- 35 The country that is most keen on cloud seeding is  
 A Russia.  
 B China.  
 C the USA.

### Questions 36-40

Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** for each answer.

#### How cloud seeding works



- 4 Check your answers in the listening script on page 230.

### What to expect in the exam

At the end of Section 4 you will be given ten minutes to transfer your answers from the question booklet to the answer sheet. In order that you do not lose any marks when you are transferring your answers it is important to do the following:

- make sure that you transfer all the answers and put them in the correct boxes
- take great care with spelling, especially with plural words and countable and uncountable nouns
- make sure that you do not copy words from the questions as part of the answers

## 4

# Global problems and opportunities

## Vocabulary 1: General category nouns

- 1  With a partner, describe each of the photographs. Then discuss the questions below.



- Describe your reaction to each photograph.
- Do you think any of the photographs present any opportunities? Give reasons and examples.
- Do you think problems and difficult situations can present us with opportunities?

- 2 Nouns such as *situation* and *problem* can help you to organize your ideas when you are writing or speaking and to understand what you are reading about. Which noun can you use in both of the gaps below?

*Computer waste is a serious world \_\_\_\_\_.* It is now accumulating all over the world. The \_\_\_\_\_, however can be solved by ...

Match each group of adjectives 1–8 with a noun a–h that collocates with all of the adjectives in the group.

- |                                   |                 |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 acute/serious/insurmountable    | a circumstances |
| 2 golden/excellent/perfect        | b problem       |
| 3 adverse/unfavourable/trying     | c opportunity   |
| 4 ideal/dangerous/sticky          | d event         |
| 5 imaginative/effective/perfect   | e issue         |
| 6 memorable/festive/state         | f occasion      |
| 7 significant/political/momentous | g situation     |
| 8 burning/controversial/thorny    | h solution      |

- 3 Complete sentences 1–8 with a word from the box below. Make any necessary changes.

issue	incident	outcome	problem	possibility
impression	dilemma	event		

- 1 I would like to describe an amusing \_\_\_\_\_ from my work.
  - 2 There is a faint \_\_\_\_\_ that the plan will succeed.
  - 3 All governments face a terrible \_\_\_\_\_ over funding priorities.
  - 4 A series of significant \_\_\_\_\_ occurred in the early part of the 19th century, which changed the face of transport for ever.
  - 5 Instead of being seen as a serious \_\_\_\_\_, the situation should be thought of as a golden opportunity.
  - 6 Energy costs have been a burning \_\_\_\_\_ several times in the last few decades.
  - 7 The sight of the natural forest made a profound \_\_\_\_\_ on me.
  - 8 The \_\_\_\_\_ of the talks was not totally unexpected.
- 4 Match each sentence 1–6 with a sentence a–f. Use the adjectives and nouns in a–f to help you identify the connection.
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 I lost my wallet last week.                                   | a It was too good an opportunity to miss.                       |
| 2 I went to my sister's wedding.                                | b It is a rather awkward situation.                             |
| 3 After leaving college, I found myself with lots of free time. | c It is a divisive issue that arouses passion.                  |
| 4 Both sides refuse to talk to each other.                      | d It was the happiest event of her life.                        |
| 5 Experimentation on animals is controversial.                  | e These were the perfect circumstances to write my first novel. |
| 6 I was offered a scholarship to go to university.              | f It was an annoying incident, which I reported to the police.  |
- 5 **O** Work in pairs. Choose one or more of the following events and tell your partner what happened:
- an amusing incident from your work
  - a golden opportunity you missed
  - an event that made a profound impression on you

### stening

IELTS Section 4

#### What to expect in the exam

- In IELTS Listening Section 4 you will hear a monologue once only. It is of an academic nature, but does not require specialist knowledge.
- You are told at the beginning of the recording what the topic is about. Sometimes there is a heading for the questions or part of the questions.
- There is a short pause in the middle of the monologue.
- Section 4 is slightly more difficult than Section 3.

#### How to do about it

- Skim the questions quickly to get an idea of the content.
- Underline words, dates etc. that will help to show that the answer is coming.
- Sometimes, the answers come close together and sometimes there is a big gap between them. Make sure you do not lose concentration.
- When you have to complete gaps, check the number of words or numbers that you need to write and decide what type of words are required: nouns (singular or plural, countable or uncountable), verbs, adjectives or adverbs.

- O** Work in pairs. Describe the railway system in your country. Say when it was first introduced and how efficient it is.

 1.8 SECTION 4 Questions 31–40

**Questions 31–37**

Complete the table below.

Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** for each answer.

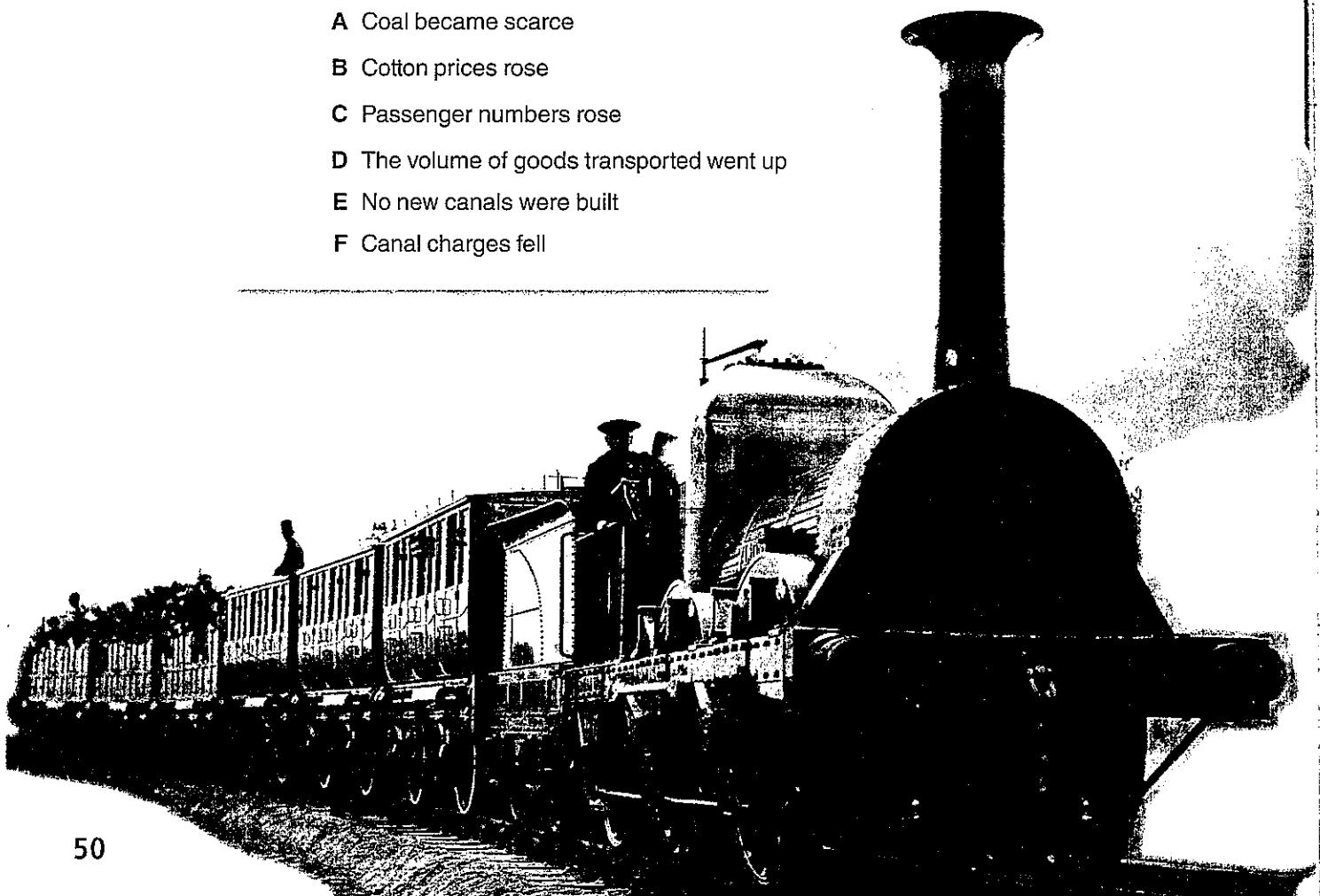
Date	Modern railway developments
1803	William Jessop's 31 ..... is considered to be the first one ever built.
1804	The achievements of Richard Trevithick passed mainly 32 .....
1812	The Salamanca was the first commercially successful 33 .....
1825	The Darlington to Stockton railway was at first constructed to carry 34 ..... . Carrying 35 ..... was considered unimportant.
1831	The Liverpool to Manchester line was the first modern railway, because it carried merchandise and 36 ..... on a fixed timetable. 37 ..... were felt to be hindering the growth of the cities and towns in the area.

**Questions 38–40**

Choose **THREE** letters, A–F.

Which **THREE** of the following consequences of the opening of the new Liverpool to Manchester railway are mentioned?

- A Coal became scarce
- B Cotton prices rose
- C Passenger numbers rose
- D The volume of goods transported went up
- E No new canals were built
- F Canal charges fell



## Language focus 1: Countable and uncountable nouns

At the beginning of the listening practice on page 50 you heard the phrases below. Underline the nouns and decide which are countable and which are uncountable?

*... the development of early forms of transport ...  
... new opportunities for innovation and progress ...  
... in the evolution ...*

Match each uncountable noun 1–10 with a countable noun a–j that is associated with it. What other countable nouns can you add in each category?

- |                 |              |
|-----------------|--------------|
| 1 furniture     | a shirts     |
| 2 clothing      | b chairs     |
| 3 luggage       | c oranges    |
| 4 cash          | d flats      |
| 5 fruit         | e goods      |
| 6 accommodation | f coins      |
| 7 media         | g burglaries |
| 8 merchandise   | h magazines  |
| 9 crime         | i bottles    |
| 10 litter       | j suitcases  |

 Read more about countable and uncountable nouns in the Grammar reference on page 221.

For sentences 1–8, replace the words in *italics* with a word or phrase from the box below. Make any necessary changes to the verb.

suggestions	machines	information	behaviour
musical instruments	robberies and thefts	language	litter

- 1 *Cans and bottles* are an eyesore on any city street.
- 2 *Some machinery* is expensive to maintain.
- 3 *The actions* of football hooligans cost the public large amounts of money.
- 4 *Details* about the damage appeared in the newspaper.
- 5 *Crime* is surprisingly on the decrease.
- 6 *Music* is played by many people as a means of relaxation.

- 7 *Advice from the right person* about which career path to follow is vital.
- 8 *The words and phrases* all children pick up follow fairly similar patterns.

- 4 Expand the notes below into sentences. Put the nouns into the singular or plural and use the correct form of the verb.

  - 1 many business now demand lot work employee
  - 2 people expect good weather when go holiday
  - 3 theatre audience decline generally but audience for new musical extremely small last night
  - 4 increased use public transport bus train good environment
  - 5 with increase price paper book newspaper become expensive
  - 6 coffee tea commodity which see fall in value recently
  - 7 entertainment like horror and violent film should ban
  - 8 electronic goods refrigerators cause considerable harm planet

- 5 For sentences 1–8 below, underline the correct word in *italics*.

- 1 There is now no need for people to throw away *equipment/equipments* like *computer/computers*.
- 2 The *weather/weathers* deteriorated rapidly with severe *storm/storms* forecast.
- 3 *Information/Informations* like bank *detail/details* should not be revealed for security reasons.
- 4 *Business/Businesses* done on the Internet can save *business/businesses* large amounts of money.
- 5 People frequently travel with a huge amount of *luggage/luggages*, when only a small number of *case/cases* is allowed on board.
- 6 *Furniture/Furnitures* is made by skilled craftsmen working in *wood/woods* from different *tree/trees*.
- 7 *Waste/Wastes* such as *litter/litters* ought to be recycled, not thrown away.
- 8 People sometimes need to do other *job/jobs* besides their permanent *work/works* to earn more *money/moneys*.

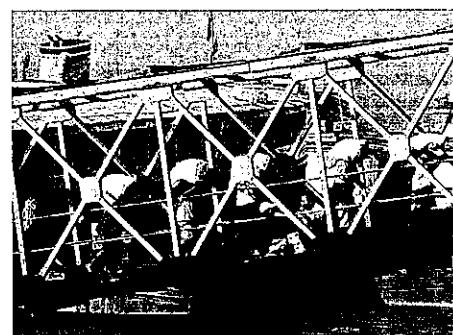
## Speaking

### IELTS Part 1

- 1 In IELTS Speaking Part 1 you may be asked to talk about the natural resources in your country such as oil and metal, or food products such as tea and coffee. Look at the examiner's questions below. Underline the countable nouns and circle the uncountable nouns.

- 1 Describe the main types of food resources that are produced in your country.
- 2 What goods are manufactured in your home country?
- 3 What types of food are produced in your country?
- 4 What produce is exported/imported?
- 5 What is the staple food in your country?
- 6 What commodities are produced in your country?
- 7 Is the merchandise sold in the shops in your country the same as in other countries you have visited?
- 8 What crops are grown in your country?

- 2  Work in pairs. Choose three or four of the questions in exercise 1. Take turns asking and answering the questions. Pay particular attention to the nouns and verbs.



### Reading

### Environmental issues

What are the three most shocking environmental catastrophes that you have heard or read about in the media recently? Do you think financial penalties are a way to stop such incidents? Why/Why not?

### READING PASSAGE

You should spend about 20 minutes on Questions 1–13, which are based on the reading passage below.

## Why plastic is the scourge of sea life



A 'plastic soup' of waste floating in the Pacific Ocean is growing at an alarming rate, and now covers an area twice the size of the continental United States, scientists have said.

The vast expanse of debris – in effect the world's largest rubbish dump – is held in place by swirling underwater currents. This drifting 'soup' stretches from about 500 nautical miles off the Californian coast, across the northern Pacific, past Hawaii and almost as far as Japan.

Charles Moore, an American oceanographer who discovered the 'Great Pacific Garbage Patch', or 'trash vortex', believes that about 100 million tons of flotsam are circulating in the region. Marcus Eriksen, a research director of the US-based

Algalita Marine Research Foundation, which Mr Moore founded, said yesterday: 'The original idea that people had was that it was an island of plastic garbage that you could almost walk on. It is not quite like that. It is almost like a plastic soup. It is endless for an area that is maybe twice the size as continental United States.'

The 'soup' is actually two linked areas, either side of the islands of Hawaii, known as the Western and Eastern Pacific Garbage Patches. About one-fifth of the debris – which includes everything from footballs and kayaks to Lego blocks and carrier bags – is thrown off ships or oil platforms. The rest comes from land.

Mr Moore, a former sailor, came across the sea of waste by chance in 1997, while taking a short cut home from a Los Angeles to Hawaii yacht race. He had steered his craft into the 'North Pacific gyre' – a vortex where the ocean circulates slowly because of little wind and extreme high pressure systems. Usually sailors avoid it.

He was astonished to find himself surrounded by rubbish, day after day, thousands of miles from land. 'Every time I came on deck, there was trash floating by,' he said in an interview. 'How could we have fouled such a huge area? How could this go on for a week?'

Mr Moore, the heir to a family fortune from the oil industry, subsequently sold his business interests and became an environmental activist. He warned yesterday that unless consumers cut back on their use of disposable plastics, the plastic stew would double in size over the next decade.

Professor David Karl, an oceanographer at the University of Hawaii, said more research was needed to establish the size and nature of the plastic soup, but that there was 'no reason to doubt' Algalita's findings.

'After all, the plastic trash is going somewhere and it is about time we got a full accounting of the distribution of plastic in the marine ecosystem and especially its fate and impact on marine ecosystems.'

Professor Karl is co-ordinating an expedition with Algalita in search of the garbage patch later this year and believes the expanse of debris actually represents a new habitat. Historically, rubbish that ends up in oceanic gyres has biodegraded. But modern plastics are so durable that objects half-a-century old have been found in the north Pacific dump. 'Every little piece of plastic manufactured in the past 50 years that made it into the ocean is still out there somewhere,' said Tony Andrady, a chemist with the US-based Research Triangle Institute.

Mr Moore said that because the sea of rubbish is translucent and lies just below the water's surface, it is not detectable in satellite photographs. 'You only see it from the bows of ships,' he said.

According to the UN Environment Programme, plastic debris causes the deaths of more than a million seabirds every year, as well as more than 100,000 marine mammals. Syringes, cigarette lighters and toothbrushes have been found inside the stomachs of dead seabirds, which mistake them for food.

Plastic is believed to constitute 90 per cent of all rubbish floating in the oceans. The UN Environment Programme estimated in 2006 that every square mile of ocean contains 46,000 pieces of floating plastic.

Dr Eriksen said the slowly rotating mass of rubbish-laden water poses a risk to human health too. Hundreds of millions of tiny plastic pellets, or nurdles – the raw materials for the plastic industry – are lost or spilled every year, working their way into the sea. These pollutants act as chemical sponges attracting man-made chemicals such as hydrocarbons and the pesticide DDT. They then enter the food chain. ‘What goes into the ocean goes into these animals and onto your dinner plate. It’s that simple,’ said Dr Eriksen.

### Questions 1–9

Complete the summary using the list of words, A–Q, below.

Research has shown that the increase in the amount of 1 ..... in the Pacific Ocean is disturbing. According to one estimate, there are millions of tons of rubbish floating in the region. The plastic rubbish covers an area approximately 2 ..... that of the USA. Some of the garbage comes from ships and oil rigs, but the vast 3 ..... is not from the sea. The ‘North Pacific gyre’, which sailors tend to keep away from, was already 4 ..... in the late nineties with predictions of the size of the plastic soup 5 ..... twofold in the following ten years. An expedition is being arranged to find the sea junk which Professor Karl thinks is a new living 6 ..... While in the past rubbish in the sea broke up, today’s plastic is so 7 ..... that some pieces half a century old have been found. And the problems all this plastic junk causes? Thousands of sea 8 ..... are killed every year and the plastic is now a threat to human food 9 .....

- |                      |                       |                      |
|----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| <b>A</b> polluted    | <b>B</b> junk         | <b>C</b> short-lived |
| <b>D</b> majority    | <b>E</b> increasing   | <b>F</b> cleaner     |
| <b>G</b> twice       | <b>H</b> thrice       | <b>I</b> consumption |
| <b>J</b> link        | <b>K</b> creatures    | <b>L</b> produce     |
| <b>M</b> minority    | <b>N</b> long-lasting | <b>O</b> decreasing  |
| <b>P</b> environment | <b>Q</b> world        |                      |

### Questions 10–13

Do the following statements agree with the claims of the writer in the reading passage?

Write:

- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| <b>YES</b>       | if the statement agrees with the claims of the writer        |
| <b>NO</b>        | if the statement contradicts the claims of the writer        |
| <b>NOT GIVEN</b> | if it is impossible to say what the writer thinks about this |

- 10 The plastic soup is the biggest collection of waste on the planet.
- 11 The soup is made of three areas connected together.
- 12 The amount of plastic waste in the sea will remain roughly stable.
- 13 Most of the rubbish in the sea appears to be made up of plastic.

### Reacting to the text

Were you surprised by the scale of the ocean pollution described in the passage? Do you think anything can be done to deal with the situation, or are we fighting a losing battle?

## Language focus 2: Making suggestions

- 1  Work in pairs. The reading passage on page 52 describes a major environmental problem. Decide which one of the following suggestions is the best solution to the problem.
  - 1 The United Nations Environment Programme could be given powers to fine nations who cause pollution.
  - 2 The most important step is to prevent the situation from becoming worse by introducing heavy punishments for pollution, including imprisonment.
  - 3 Countries on the Pacific Rim should seize the opportunity to start a clean up programme.
  - 4 Ships ought to be sent to the area to remove the waste from the water.
- 2 Underline the words used to make a suggestion in each sentence 1–4 in exercise 1. Then decide whether each measure is a strong or tentative (weak) suggestion.
-  Read more about making suggestions in the Grammar reference on page 221.
- 3  Work in pairs. Look at the following statements 1–7 about grave concerns that the world faces today. Discuss what you think might be the best solution for each.
  - 1 There is famine in many parts of the world.
  - 2 Poverty has still not been eradicated.
  - 3 Floods are occurring more frequently.
  - 4 Many of the world's waterways have little life in them.
  - 5 Many species of animals are becoming extinct.
  - 6 Many cities are becoming overcrowded.
  - 7 Water is becoming scarce in various regions.

- 4 Rewrite sentences a–g below using the modal verbs in brackets.

*Example:*

The most important step is to prevent the situation from becoming worse. (*should*)

*The situation should be prevented from becoming worse.*

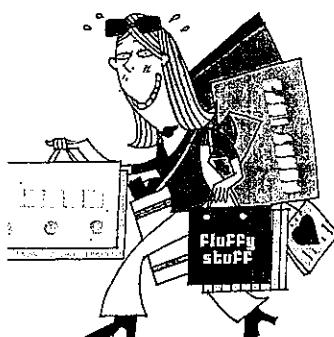
- a The best example I can think of is for governments to try to encourage people to return to the countryside. (*ought to*)
- b Another possible course of action is for banks to cancel the international debts of poor countries. (*could*)
- c One suggestion is for governments to provide poorer countries with the skills to feed themselves. (*should*)
- d One possible answer is to oxygenate rivers and reintroduce fish. (*could*)
- e One possibility is to put protection orders on all wild animals. (*can*)
- f There is a slim chance that water desalination plants will work in some regions. (*might*)
- g I think that planting more trees is the best option. (*should*)

- 5 Match each suggestion in exercise 4 to a problem in exercise 3.
- 6  Work in pairs. Write one new suggestion for each problem in exercise 3. Then change partners and ask each other questions about the suggestions you have made. Use the following questions:

*What do you think is the answer to solve/tackle/ remedy/deal with/eradicate/improve ... ?*

*What do you think can be done to ... ?*

## Vocabulary 2: Developing ideas by expanding the meaning of adjectives

- 1 When we write and speak we can use words that are similar in meaning to develop or explain our ideas. For 1–7 below, underline the correct verb in *italics*.
 
  - 1 Some people find buying consumer goods very satisfying. Sometimes, it is just the act of purchasing which *coaxes/pleases* them.
  - 2 Positive health education on TV can be motivating. It can *encourage/frighten* people to improve their lifestyle.
  - 3 The results were alarming. It *frightened/interested* the government so much they actually took some action.
  - 4 The news on TV is sometimes very worrying. It can *trouble/tempt* people all day long.
  - 5 Disaster movies are very appealing to many people. It is the fact that they feel comfortable and safe themselves as they watch that *excites/attracts* them.
  - 6 I found the festivities really interesting. They *bothered/fascinated* me so much that I had to read more about them.
  - 7 The scale of crime in some cities has been so shocking it has *stunned/pleased* even the police.
- 2 Rewrite 1–7 in exercise 1 by transforming the verb in *italics* into the adjective and the adjective into the verb.

*Example:*

*Some people find buying consumer goods very pleasing. Sometimes, it is just the act of purchasing which satisfies them.*

- 1 In Task 2 the instructions ask you to support your ideas by giving reasons and examples, so it is important to know how to link your ideas to form paragraphs. Read the following paragraph on homelessness and decide whether the words that will go in each gap will introduce an example, result, contrast, reason, purpose or concession.

Many major cities like New York, London or Paris face problems relating to homelessness, mainly 1 \_\_\_\_\_ there is a shortage of housing and high rents for property. 2 \_\_\_\_\_ there are many empty properties in these cities, which could be used to alleviate the situation. Governments should 3 \_\_\_\_\_ encourage property owners to rent out the properties to those without homes. 4 \_\_\_\_\_, incentives can be given to owners by giving tax relief or subsidies 5 \_\_\_\_\_ help release empty properties on to the market. Measures like this would 6 \_\_\_\_\_ help to alleviate the situation. 7 \_\_\_\_\_ this is not a complete answer to the problem, it ought to be considered.

- 2 Complete each gap in the paragraph in exercise 1 with a linking word from the box below.

for example    therefore    yet    in order to    because    although    then

- 3 Put the linking words and phrases in the box below into the correct column in the table.

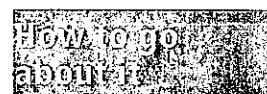
however still but much as	nevertheless yet even so in spite of the fact that	though even so while	nonetheless even if	although despite the fact that
------------------------------------	---	----------------------------	------------------------	-----------------------------------

Adverb	Conjunction	Both

- 4 For sentences 1–5 below, underline the correct word in *italics*. There may be more than one possible answer.

- 1 People tend to be pessimistic about their present circumstances. *But/However,/Although* I think the human race is eternally optimistic; otherwise, how would we survive?
- 2 Man-made problems such as the plastic soup in the Pacific Ocean are disastrous, *but/however,/although* perhaps this time we can learn from our mistakes.
- 3 While/*Although/However*, green technology is certainly beneficial, there are issues that we need to be careful about.
- 4 *Even so,/Even if/Though* the human race faces problems, there are always opportunities to use them for further development.
- 5 Many people believe that the changes we see in the world are a result of natural causes. *Even so,/Nonetheless,/Whereas* there is compelling evidence to the contrary.

## Global problems and opportunities



- ▶ Write any ideas that you can think of that relate to the essay topic.
- ▶ Write the ideas at random around the page or vertically down the left hand side.
- ▶ Select two or three main ideas and link other ideas from the list to the main ideas.
- ▶ Alternatively, take one idea and think of other nouns and adjectives that relate to it.

- 5 Work in pairs. Look at the Task 2 question below and make a list of 5–7 ideas for your answer.

### WRITING TASK 2

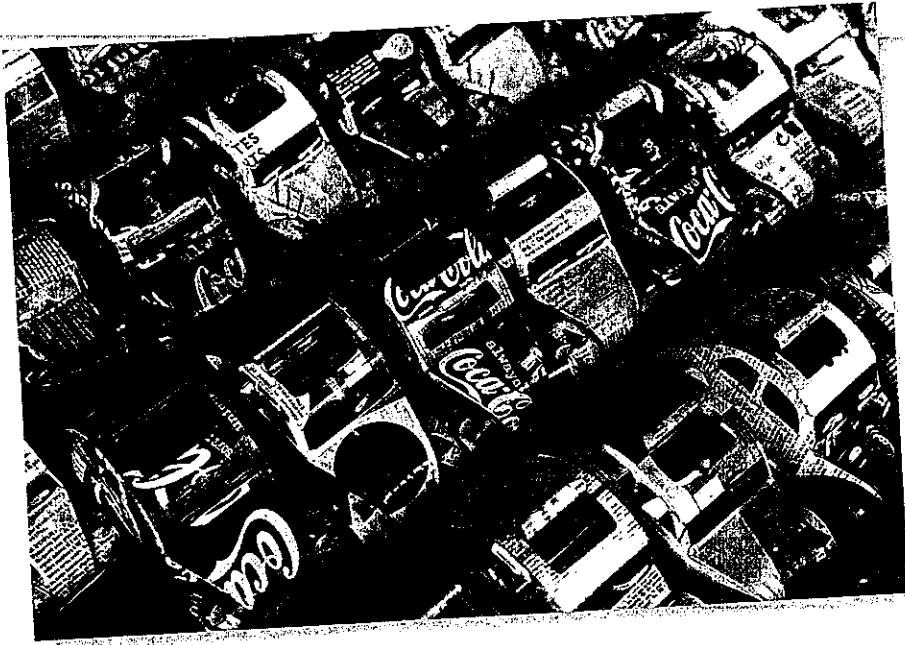
You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

Write about the following topic:

*It is generally agreed that the amount of rubbish created by humans today is a worldwide problem. What do you think are the main causes of this situation? What measures can be used to tackle the problem?*

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

Write at least 250 words.



- 6 As a class, identify the linking words and phrases you would use to develop and connect your ideas.
- 7 Look at the following ideas relating to the question. Decide whether each column A and B relates to causes or examples. Then match each item 1–6 in A with an item a–f in B.

#### A

- 1 lack of education and ignorance
- 2 natural causes
- 3 overpopulation
- 4 unchecked development
- 5 increased consumption
- 6 energy demands

#### B

- a merchandise, for example, cars/clothes/computers
- b eating/heating/travelling
- c throwing away waste like plastic bottles/paper
- d large cities like Mexico City/London
- e infrastructure for roads/airports
- f disasters such as flooding/avalanches

- 8 Write your own answer to the question in exercise 5. When you have finished, check your answer using the checklist on page 209.

king

Part 2

- 1 Prepare notes for the following Part 2 task card.

Describe a recent incident where you damaged the environment.

You should say:

when it happened

where it happened

how you felt about it

and explain what you learnt from this incident.

- 2 **O** Work in pairs. Take turns talking about the topic, using your notes to guide you. Speak for up to two minutes; time each other using a stopwatch.

- 1 Work in pairs. Look at each Part 3 question below and decide:

- what synonyms you can use for the nouns, verbs and adjectives in each sentence.
- whether you are likely to use uncountable or countable nouns to begin each answer.

#### News and events

Do media like TV and newspapers influence the way people behave? Why?

How can the media encourage people to change their behaviour as regards the environment? Which do you think is the best means of achieving this?

Do you think the future will be any different? Will there be more environmental issues to concern us?

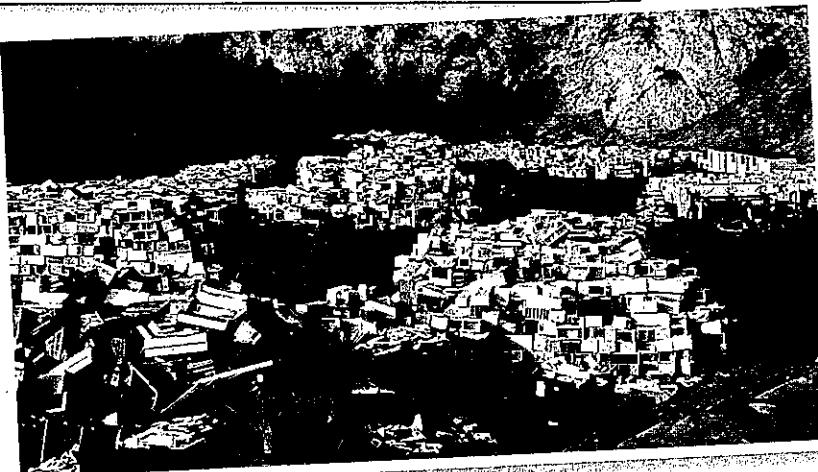
#### World problems

Do you think that people should be concerned about the world's environmental problems?

What do you think individuals can do to tackle world electronic waste like computers, if anything?

Do you think waste created from discarded machines is causing more problems nowadays than in the past?

Do you think mankind faces more dilemmas now than in the past?



- 2 **O** Work in pairs. Take turns asking and answering the questions above, asking additional questions where necessary. Choose two or more of the bullet points in the 'How to go about it' box above to check as you listen to your partner. Give each other feedback after each role-play.

# 4

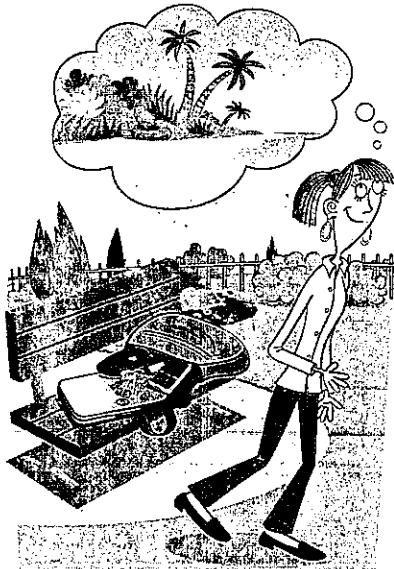
# Review

## Vocabulary

- 1 Decide which noun is being explained in 1–6 below.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ A situation where you have to make difficult choices.  
2 \_\_\_\_\_ A matter like a problem that you discuss.  
3 \_\_\_\_\_ Something which happens that is usually important or historic; more than just an occasion or an incident.  
4 \_\_\_\_\_ Something which gives you a chance to do something.  
5 \_\_\_\_\_ Something which happens that is minor; it is not a big or important event.  
6 \_\_\_\_\_ A feeling you have about someone or something.

- 2 Read the following extracts from IELTS Speaking Part 2. Decide whether the nouns in *italics* are correct. Replace the nouns that are not correct.



I would like to describe  
an incident that happened to me at college.

Just before a major presentation on crisis management in environmental disasters I almost had a **1 crisis** myself. A minor **2 event** happened which made a lasting **3 impression** on me. I lost my bag; I was daydreaming and left it on a bench. My money, keys, mobile and laptop; everything was in it. It was a terrible **4 problem** to be in. I saw the **5 possibility** of failing my course flash in front of me. Someone in the distance, another student, saw it happen and came rushing after me. A minor **6 occasion** perhaps, but it taught me that there are **7 events** when you meet honest people. All **8 situations** are, in fact, perfect **9 opportunities** for making friends.

- 3 Use the initial letter before each blank space to help you complete the sentences below with an appropriate adjective and verb. Be careful with the form of each verb.

- 1 The film was **s**\_\_\_\_\_ . It **s**\_\_\_\_\_ me completely and I couldn't stop thinking about it.  
2 When you find a book that is **i**\_\_\_\_\_ and it **f**\_\_\_\_\_ you, it is difficult to put down.  
3 What makes the sea so **a**\_\_\_\_\_ ? I think it **a**\_\_\_\_\_ people because it is so soothing.  
4 Sorting out problems is so **s**\_\_\_\_\_ . It is the relief of removing difficulty from their lives which **p**\_\_\_\_\_ people.  
5 Some images at the exhibition on the destruction of the environment are so **a**\_\_\_\_\_ that it left people extremely **f**\_\_\_\_\_ .  
6 I don't find government attempts to change behaviour very **m**\_\_\_\_\_ . They frighten people rather than **e**\_\_\_\_\_ them.  
7 The news item about the plastic soup in the Pacific Ocean was **w**\_\_\_\_\_ . It **t**\_\_\_\_\_ me for days.

## Countable and uncountable nouns

For 1–9 below, complete the table with a suitable uncountable noun for the examples of countable nouns that are given.

Uncountable nouns	Countable nouns
1 litter	bottles and cans
2	coats and hats
3	notes
4	trunks and cases
5	bananas and pineapples
6	bedsits and rooms
7	wardrobes and beds
8	robberies and muggings
9	journals and films

## Making suggestions

Suggest as many solutions as you can to the problem of water shortages in the world. Give the results of the suggestions. Use the following words: should, ought to, might, could, one possibility, one step.

*Examples:*

*Mobile desalination plants could be built and sent in response to emergencies around the world. This would help poor nations who cannot afford to build permanent plants.*

*One possibility is to train the public to conserve the water supply when they are using water at home. For example, when cleaning their teeth people could turn the tap off while they brush.*

## Writing

- 1 For sentences 1–4 below, underline the correct word in *italics*. There may be more than one possible answer.
  - 1 The steps that need to be taken are unacceptable to some people. *Nevertheless*, Yet/*Still* they need to be taken.
  - 2 *Despite the fact that*/*In spite of that*/*However*, there are constant public campaigns to help prevent pollution, the public continue to ignore the warnings.
  - 3 Immigration is frequently seen as a negative issue, *yet*/*however*, *even so*, it is vital for most modern economies.
  - 4 *Much as*/*Although*/*But* I am against short-term solutions to problems, I think the government should donate food immediately.
- 2 Look at the two examples below of IELTS Writing Task 2 questions. What are the similarities and differences between them? Think about the topic and how you would organize the answer.
  - a Some people feel that water shortages will cause serious problems in the future, while others believe that such shortages are just temporary natural events. What is your opinion?
  - b Water shortages are causing serious problems all over the world. What do you think are the main causes of this situation?



# The future

## Language focus: Ways of looking at the future

- 1 Work in groups. Look at the pictures below. Which represents your view of what the future will look like? Why?

1



2



- 2 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions below.

Do you think machines will control our lives in the future? In what ways? Give reasons.

How do you think machines will improve our lives in the future?

Do you think it is possible that machines will control or govern the planet in the future?

- 3 Read statements 1–6 below and decide whether each is a prediction, plan or fixed schedule.

1 We're going to visit a science exhibition this afternoon.

2 I'm leaving in 50 minutes.

3 I think people will be living on Mars in 20 years.

4 By 2050 machines like robots will have taken over our world.

5 Civilization as we know it will no longer exist. It will be very advanced technologically.

6 The space shuttle to the moon lifts off at 10pm.

- 4 Match descriptions a–f below to sentences 1–6 in exercise 3.

- a The present continuous tense is used for fixed arrangements.
- b *Going to* is used for intentions or plans.
- c The future simple tense is used for predictions or instant decisions.
- d The future continuous tense is used for a situation which will be happening at a particular time in the future.
- e The future perfect tense is used for a completed action at or before a point of time in the future.
- f The present simple tense is used for events that relate to a schedule/timetable.

Read more about different ways to talk about the future in the Grammar reference on page 222.

- 5 For 1–5 below, underline the two verb phrases and match them to a description a–f in exercise 4.

- 1 As we're flying tomorrow morning at 8 am, shall I arrange an alarm call for 5 am?
- 2 Why are the government going to spend less money on technological research in the future? I think it'll do a lot of harm.
- 3 By tomorrow, we'll have completed the computer project, and it'll be working perfectly.
- 4 Some people believe robots are going to be the next big techno craze, but it won't last long.
- 5 When she arrives tomorrow, she'll be carrying a red bag.

For 1–5 below, replace the verb that is in the wrong tense.

- 1 People will be living in space in the year 2050, but will they really have enjoyed it?
- 2 According to the timetable, the train arrives at noon. I'll sit at the front if you are looking for me.
- 3 I'm staying at the Braganza Hotel for four days next week, so I'll have met you on Tuesday.
- 4 The government are going to change the law next month. At least that's their intention, but I bet something is happening to make them change their minds.
- 5 The public will have become better informed about healthy eating by then, and are thus going to improve their general well-being.

Work in pairs. For sentences 1–6 below, decide whether you can rewrite each one using the tense in brackets. Decide what the difference is.

- 1 I'll be seeing the doctor next Wednesday at 2.00.  
(present simple)
- 2 Society is not going to change dramatically by 2030.  
(future perfect)

- 3 The ageing population is going to cause more problems in terms of cost in the future.  
(present continuous)

- 4 The world will certainly have changed for the better by then.  
(going to)

- 5 The human race will be living in more closely-knit communities in the future.  
(simple future)

- 6 My diary is full, but perhaps I'll be able to meet you on Saturday.  
(going to)

- 8 Work in pairs. Make predictions about what your life will be like next year, five years from now and ten years from now. Give reasons and examples.

## Vocabulary 1: Adjective/noun collocations

- 1 Work in pairs. For 1–8 below, use an adjective from the box to replace the words in *italics* to make a common collocation. Place the adjective before the noun.

- 1 a civilization *that is current and contemporary*
- 2 societies *that live off the land*
- 3 a culture *that is stronger than other cultures*
- 4 communities *that are doing well and are successful*
- 5 the public *that is made up of ordinary people*
- 6 populations *that live in towns and cities*
- 7 the elite *that controls and runs a country*
- 8 a people *that live in a particular region*

general	governing	agricultural	indigenous
modern	dominant	thriving	urban

- 2 Complete each gap in the paragraph below with one of the noun collocations from exercise 1.

The 1 \_\_\_\_\_ has widely different views about what life will be like in years to come. Some pessimists predict that 2 \_\_\_\_\_ as we know it will collapse in the near future, and that people will end up living in 3 \_\_\_\_\_ just as their ancestors did before the Industrial Revolution. Others think that 4 \_\_\_\_\_ will increase in size so much that there will be no agricultural land left, and that there will be one 5 \_\_\_\_\_ rather than the multicultural world of today with a 6 \_\_\_\_\_ made up of robots controlling everything and everyone.

- 3 Work in groups. What is your reaction to the predictions in exercise 2? Do you think life will be very different in the near future? Why/Why not?

## Part 3 The future

### Speaking

IELTS Part 3

Work in pairs. Use the picture below to help you talk about the world in the future. Describe the following:

- what will be happening
- what will happen
- what will have happened

### Useful expressions

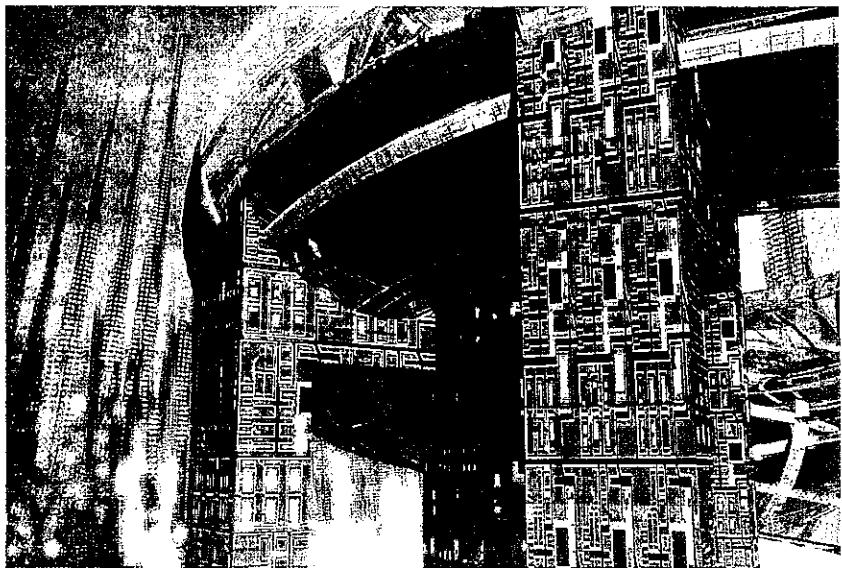
In 10/20/50/100 years' time ...

Over the next century ...

Before the end of the century ...

By the time we reach the end of the century ...

In the coming decades ...



Work in pairs. Look at the Part 3 questions below. Then take turns asking and answering the questions. When you have finished, give each other feedback using the checklist on page 210.

### DIGITAL TECHNOLOGY

- In Part 3 you need to talk in more abstract terms.

#### Robots

Do you think we should be pessimistic about machines like robots taking over our lives? Why?/Why not?

What do you think are the advantages and disadvantages of using machines like robots?

#### The world in the future

In what ways do you think society will change in the future?

How do you think modern civilization will develop over the next half century?

Do you think humans will be living on another planet in the future? Why?/Why not?

Why do you think people make predictions about the future?

### Listening

IELTS Section 1

You will hear someone enquiring about and booking an exhibition. Before you listen to the conversation, check the meaning of the following words and phrases.

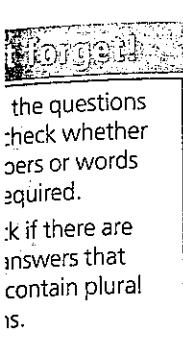
- 1 booking office
- 2 preview
- 3 the week after next
- 4 restrictions
- 5 sign up for
- 6 come up
- 7 register
- 8 range

## 1.9 SECTION 1 Questions 1–10

### Questions 1–6

Complete the notes below.

Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER** for each answer.



### Notes on Exhibition

Example	Answer
Title of Exhibition: Robots: the end of <i>modern civilization</i>	
Two free:	1 .....
Day(s) exhibition full:	2 .....
Days chosen by caller:	3 ..... and .....
Reference number:	4 .....
Eating facilities	
• 15 restaurants	
• Including 5 ..... cafés	
• Local restaurants putting on 6 .....	



60079765 8462221

### Questions 7–10

#### Accommodation

- Halls of Residence £30 a night
- Hotels from about £30 to approximately 7 £ .....

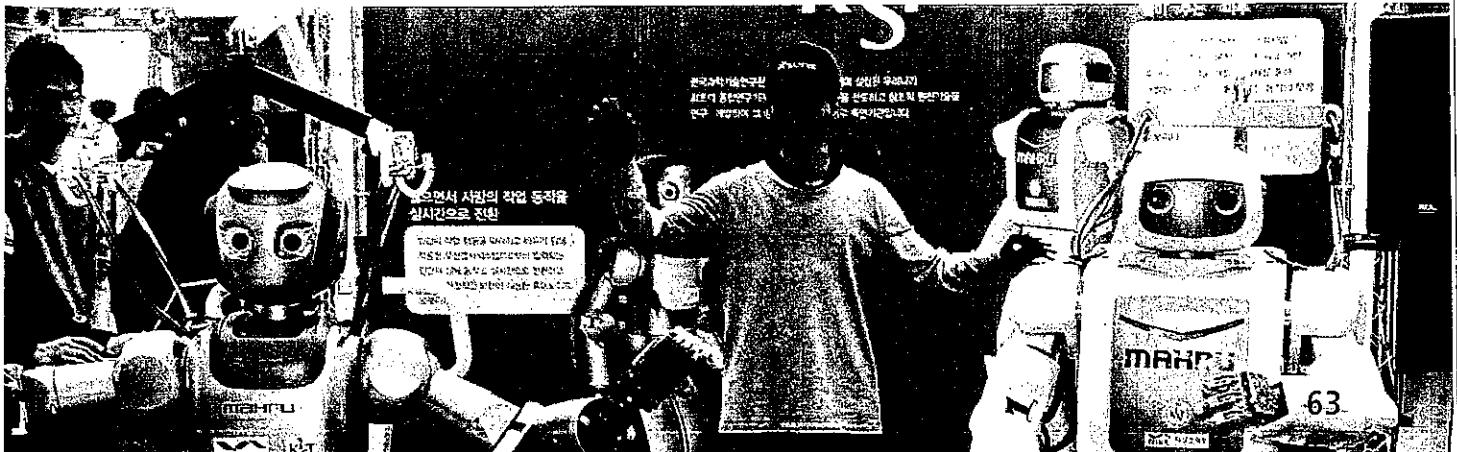
#### Transport Links

- Within walking distance of the station and 8 ..... from the airport
- It is possible to catch bus number 9 .....
- A taxi costs no more than 10 £ .....

### Do you like going to exhibitions?

Do you like to book in advance or do you like to turn up on the spur of the moment?

Would you go to an exhibition on robots? Why/Why not?



## The future

### Word building: Forming adjectives from nouns

- 1 Work in pairs. Make adjectives from the nouns in the box below and add them to the correct column in the table.

use	luxury	technology	success	population	space
beauty	agriculture	tradition	nation	danger	industry

Adjectives ending -al	Adjectives ending -ous	Adjectives ending -ful

- 2 For 1–8 below, complete the gaps with a suitable adjective from exercise 1.
- At the moment some houses in my community are very \_\_\_\_\_, but in the future they will not be so big.
  - I cannot say it is a \_\_\_\_\_ society at the moment, but as the Internet and computers spread that will change.
  - The area where I was brought up is very \_\_\_\_\_ with lots of trees and stunning gardens, but I think all this beauty will be destroyed by future developments.
  - My home town still survives on the production of \_\_\_\_\_ crafts, but I think that modern industry is beginning to creep in.
  - We have many \_\_\_\_\_ monuments, but people forget what important events they signify.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ office blocks with all the latest modern facilities and expensive furniture will replace old factories and buildings.
  - I come from one of the most \_\_\_\_\_ regions of the world, and I think it will become even more crowded in the future.
  - My home town is \_\_\_\_\_ at attracting tourists, but it's not in danger of becoming overwhelmed yet.
- 3 Work in pairs. Choose one or more statement from exercise 2 that relates to you. Explain the statements you have chosen. Give reasons and examples.

#### Reading

IELTS Reading Passages

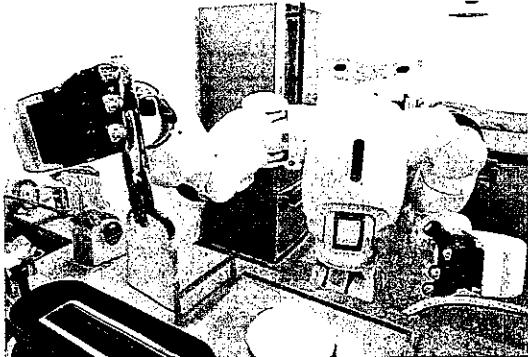
Glance quickly at the title, sub-title and the passage as a whole and write down at least five points that you think the text will contain. Then answer the following questions:

- what made you choose the five points you wrote down?
- what do you think the word *pragmatics* might mean in the sub-heading?

## READING PASSAGE

You should spend about 20 minutes on **Questions 1–13**, which are based on the reading passage below.

*As Japan builds a new generation of robot companions, U.S. firms focus on pragmatics.*



Meet Wakamaru and Roomba, two household helper robots with very different pedigrees. Wakamaru, from Mitsubishi Heavy Industries, is a waist-high bot with a canary yellow exterior and limpid eyes. It can recognize 10,000 Japanese words, identify eight family members by face or voice, remind you to make an appointment or make your beds and, if somebody breaks into your house, send photographs of the intruder to your mobile phone. When the machine rolled off the assembly line in 2005, Mitsubishi expected U.S. sales to reach 10,000 models a year, despite the bot's \$15,000 price tag. Instead, the company filled only a few dozen orders. Wakamaru is now off the market and being rented out as a receptionist at \$1,000 a day.

Roomba, by contrast, looks more like an appliance than a robotic friend. The frisbee-like disc's sole purpose is to vacuum, which it does automatically, thanks to sensors that adjust the settings to suit different floor types, avoid drop-offs like stairs and navigate between table legs and household pets. Starting price: \$130. Massachusetts firm iRobotCorp. has sold more than 3 million of the machines.

Wakamaru and Roomba represent radically different approaches to the next big thing in robotics: the use of robot assistants in the office, hospital and home. The Japanese, who have long been fascinated by the robot as android, are concentrating on making machines that look and act like human beings. U.S. firms, on the other hand, have eschewed the flashier android approach and instead are emphasizing products that, like Roomba, are narrowly targeted to specific tasks like mowing lawns, cleaning pools and taking patients' vital signs.

So far, the success of Roomba suggests that the U.S. firms have the upper hand. But the race is only beginning and the stakes are potentially huge. The market for personal and service robots is about \$3 billion now, but is expected to reach \$15 billion by 2015, according to the Japan Robotics Association and market analysts like ABI Research. In 10 years or so, experts predict, sales of personal robots could surpass sales of industrial robots, now about \$4.6 billion a year.

The issue for robot developers is whether the technology of artificial intelligence will allow Japanese developers to fulfill their vision of friendly robots capable of working alongside people. If so, Japan could be in a position to dominate the next phase of robotics. If not, the Americans, with their pragmatic but uninspiring designs, could win the race.

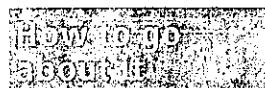
Japan approaches this new market from a position of strength. Over the past 50 years, it has become the undisputed leader in industrial robots, supplying 40 percent of the world market. At the same time, Japanese pop culture has become saturated with images of friendly droids from Manga cartoons and animé, and bots by Sony and Honda are as famous in Tokyo as Jessica Simpson is in Texas. Japan's robot industry — with the help of \$100 million in research funding from the government — is driven in large part by the dream of a day when droids will aid humans in almost every aspect of daily life.

There's the egg-shaped PaPeRo — recently rated the most popular bot in Japan by Robot Life magazine — which works select day-care centers, singing songs and reading e-mails to children according to texted instructions from parents. There's Actroid, a mannequinesque gynoid who wows corporate guests with her dynamic facial expressions and cheeky conversation skills (ask her how much she weighs, and she'll tell you what she can bench-press).

Japanese and American firms have their eyes on the same prize: the market for home health care, particularly for the elderly. As baby boomers hit retirement age, the need to monitor and assist seniors will create a surge in demand for personal-care robots, experts say. Since 2001, the Japanese government has spent \$210 million on research to meet its goal of deploying robots to support its aging workforce. (It's timeline specifies that bots should be able to straighten a room by the end of this year, make beds by 2013, and help with baths and meals by 2025.) The desire to field human-like robots, however, is an impediment. Honda, for instance, decided to keep its Asimo robot bipedal, even though its two feet are impractical in homes with stairs and clutter. The one field in which Japanese robots have a clear lead requires no practical applications: entertainment robots, a \$185 million market that is expected to rise to \$3 billion by 2014, according to private research firms.

All this grass-roots robotics innovation has led tech giants to predict that in the next twenty years, robots could be the biggest technological revolution since PCs and the Internet. Whether these robots are cleaning up homes or serving as co-workers, entertainers and friends depends on which vision wins out.

## The future



### For questions 1–7:

- Skim the summary to decide whether it relates to the whole passage or part of it.
- This summary does not have a title so look at the title of the passage.
- Check the word limit for each answer.
- Always think about the types of words that are needed, for example, nouns, verbs, adjectives etc.
- Do not write any words on the answer sheet that are paraphrased in the summary.

### For questions 8–11:

- Read the stem and underline any words that you think will be paraphrased.
- Read each alternative as a complete sentence by combining it with the stem.
- Locate the information in the text.

### For questions 12 and 13:

- Use names, numbers and paraphrases of the nouns in the questions to help you locate the answers in the passage.

### Questions 1–7

Complete the summary below.

Choose **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** from the passage for each answer.

When Wakamaru first appeared on the market, Mitsubishi forecast robot sales in thousands in the US, but sales figures were very low. The robot is now on hire as a 1 ..... Roomba, an American robot which was designed only to 2 ..... , has sales running into the millions. These two machines symbolize two very 3 ..... in the world of robot technology. The Japanese focus is on making machines that behave like 4 ..... , while the U.S. are concentrating on robots that do specific tasks. In effect, the choice is between friendly robots working with people or machines that are 5 ..... but boring. Japanese and American firms are after the same market: health provision at home, especially for 6 ..... . Tech giants project that in the coming decades there is a possibility robots will be the most important 7 .....

### Questions 8–11

Choose the correct letter **A, B, C or D**.

8 Wakamaru is

- A the same height as a human being.
- B shorter than a human being.
- C heavier than a human being.
- D quicker than a human being.

9 The purpose of Romba's sensors is to help it

- A move around objects.
- B navigate the stairs.
- C polish different surfaces.
- D clean household pets.

10 US firms prefer robots

- A that are very cheap to make.
- B that can act as companions.
- C that focus on designated tasks.
- D that look like humans.

11 The battle in artificial intelligence is between

- A creating practical robots and friendly robots.
- B producing cost effective and attractive robots.
- C building fast and efficient robots.
- D making elegant and industrial robots.

### Questions 12 and 13

Answer the questions below.

Choose **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER** from the passage for each answer.

- 12 What has Japan's position been in the industrial robots market over the past half century?
- 13 What was the Japanese government's expenditure on research into using robots to help elderly workers?

### Reacting to the text

Would you like to have a robot in your home? Why/Why not?

How soon do you think robots will be commonplace in people's homes?

Do you think we have anything to fear from the development of robots, or can they only be beneficial? Give reasons and examples.

### Vocabulary 2: Verbs of prediction

Underline the four verbs in the box below that cannot be used to indicate prediction in an IELTS Writing Task 1 answer.

predict	prophesy	forecast	assume	foretell
project	estimate	anticipate	expect	foresee

Decide what the noun and adjective is for the correct verbs in exercise 1.

Rewrite sentences 1–8 below using the words which follow each sentence.

**Example:**

It is predicted that computer sales will account for 20 per cent of the total

... are predicted ...

*Computer sales are predicted to account for 20 per cent of the total.*

1 By the year 2030 the population will have increased to nearly 70 million.

... it is estimated ...

2 Spectator numbers will be rising dramatically towards the end of the year.

... are forecast ...

3 The projected sales next month will be lower than this month.

It is ...

4 It is forecast that passenger numbers will increase substantially.

The forecast is ...

5 Sales will climb at the rate of 20 per cent a year.

... predicted ...

6 Attendances will decline gradually in the next two years.

... are anticipated ...

7 Advances in technology are not expected to slow down in the coming years.

It is expected ...

8 The estimated recovery in ticket purchases will happen in the third quarter.

... are estimated ...



## The future

### Writing:

IELTS Task 1

### What to expect in the exam

- Pie charts indicate proportions. They can contain percentages adding up to 100%, as in the example here, or they can contain units in proportions that add up to more than 100. They can show changes over time in different pie charts, or all relate to the same year.

- Look at the Task 1 question below. Then for 1–12 in the model answer below, put the verb in brackets into the correct tense.

### WRITING TASK 1

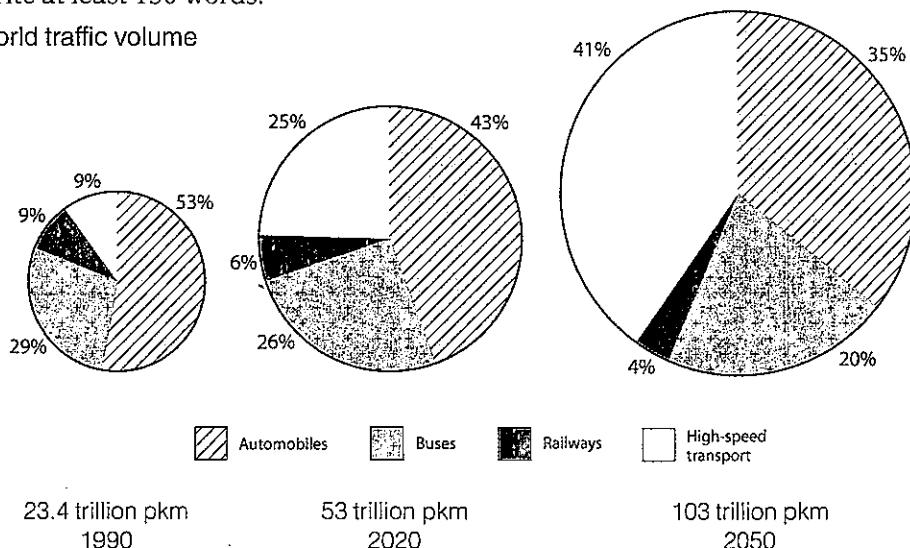
You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

*The charts below show the world traffic volume measured in passenger-kilometre-miles.*

*Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.*

Write at least 150 words.

#### World traffic volume



The pie charts (1) show the changes in the proportions of pkm for a range of different forms of transport every thirty years between 1990 and 2050 along with the total number of passenger kilometres.

The most striking feature of the chart (2) is the rise in traffic volume from high-speed transport. It (3) expect to see a dramatic increase, climbing from just 9% of traffic volume in 1990 to 25%, and then 41% in 2020 and 2050 respectively. By contrast, it (4) predict that there will be fewer automobile pkm, which (5) shrink from 53% of market share to 43%, and to 35% in 2050.

While railways (6) see the most significant fall in traffic volume percentage-wise, it (7) anticipate that buses (8) fare better. The former (9) represent 9% of total traffic volume in 1990, but the projected figure for 2050 (10) be just 4%, a drop of more than 50%. This (11) compare with traffic volume for buses in 2050 of 20% against 26% in 2020, and 29% in 1990.

It is clear that high speed transport (12) expect to increasingly dominate the market.

- Underline** the linking words in the model answer.
- Find examples in the model answer where the pronouns *it* and *this* and the phrase *the former* are used to connect ideas between sentences. What does each one refer to?
- For 1–5, **underline** two suitable words or phrases in *italics* to link the information. Use the punctuation to help you.
  - By 2020 it is predicted that more of the total traffic volume of the total 53 trillion pkm will be accounted for by high-speed transport than in 1990 (25% against 9%). *By contrast/While/By comparison* automobiles are expected to account for 43% and 53% in the respective years.

- 2 In the year 2050 it is projected that high-speed transport will account for 41% of total traffic volume. *By contrast/Whereas/Meanwhile*, bus use is expected to shrink to 20%.
- 3 In 1960 automobiles accounted for 54% of the traffic volume, *but/whereas/in contrast* high-speed transport represented only 3%.
- 4 The majority of traffic volume was made up of automobiles in 1990 at 53%. *Meanwhile/But/By contrast*, buses accounted for 29%, with the railways and high-speed transport coming next with 9% each.
- 5 The proportion of passenger traffic miles accounted for by automobiles is expected to decrease to 43% by 2020, *whereas/whilst/meanwhile* it is forecast that the pkm for railways will shrink by a smaller amount: 29% to 26%.
- 6 Use the lists of words in 1–4 below to write your own sentences about the pie charts in exercise 1. Add the relevant data from the charts.

  - 1 high-speed transport account for traffic volume in 1990 while in 2050 forecast represent
  - 2 estimate proportion traffic volume automobiles 2050 in contrast to 1990
  - 3 in 1990 automobiles make up bulk passenger kilometres but 2050 this forecast drop to
  - 4 in 1990 out of a total traffic volume of 23.4 trillion pkm automobiles account for buses, railways and high-speed transport respectively by comparison by 2020 anticipate high speed transport jump automobiles buses railways

- 6 Write your own answer for the Task 1 question below. When you have finished, check your answer using the checklist on page 209.

### WRITING TASK 1

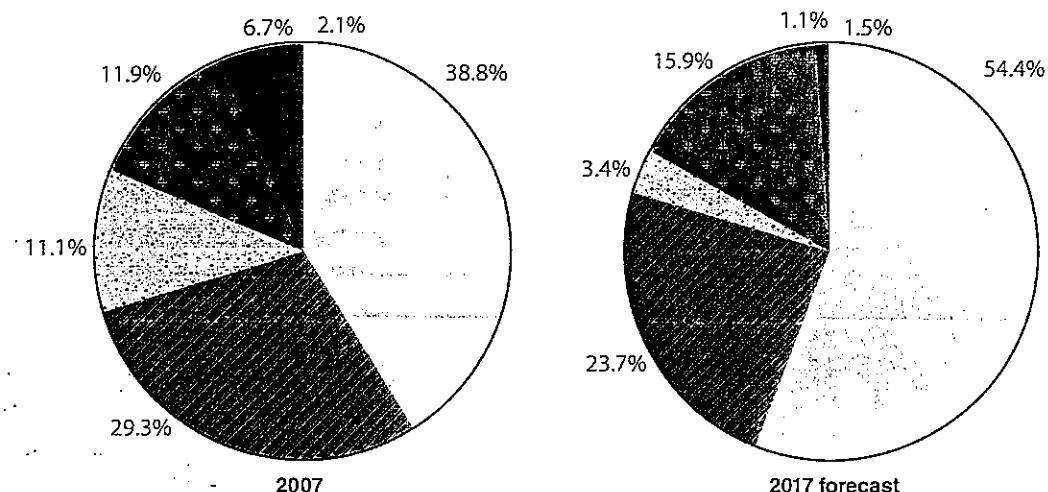
You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

*The charts below provide information about energy generation by fuel type in Florida in two separate years.*

*Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.*

Write at least 150 words.

Energy generation by fuel type



[Legend: Natural gas (white), Coal (dark grey), Other (light grey), Nuclear (diagonal lines), Oil (black), Renewables (white with dots)]

# Review

## Vocabulary

For 1–8 below, replace the underlined phrases with a suitable adjective/noun collocation.

- 1 Do you think the civilization of today will change much over the next century?
- 2 Should we try to protect the remaining societies that live off the land?
- 3 Are populations that live in the towns under threat from increasing violence?
- 4 Will the cultures that are stronger than others always be in control?
- 5 Are peoples that have lived in certain parts of the world for centuries under threat?
- 6 Do the elites that control countries have any idea what the lives of ordinary people are like?
- 7 Do communities that are doing well in inner cities have a beneficial impact on society in general?
- 8 Does the opinion of the public at large influence governments?

Use a collocation dictionary or a thesaurus to find one more adjective that you can use with each noun in the collocations in exercise 1.

## Word building

Rewrite sentences 1–8 below by using an adjective made from the underlined noun and then add a reason.

*Example:*

Flats in the capital city do not have much space.

Flats in the capital city are not very spacious, because there are so many people looking to find a place to live.



- 1 Electronic dictionaries are not really of much use.
- 2 In certain south-east Asian countries technology is much more advanced than in the West.
- 3 This country has many buildings of great beauty.
- 4 The population of Bangladesh is enormous.
- 5 Jobs involved in agriculture are very demanding.
- 6 Living a life of luxury is not open to all of us.
- 7 Astronauts face many dangers when they go out into space.
- 8 Skills that follow old traditions are going out of fashion.

## Ways of looking at the future

- 1 For 1–5 below, put the verbs in brackets into the correct future form.

I'm leaving for New Zealand Friday of this week. The plane (leave) at 6 am in the morning, and after several stops I (sit) in a hotel in Auckland sometime on Monday. I think it's going to be an exciting trip.

2 I don't think the human race (land) on other planets in the solar system by the year 2050 as the cost will be astronomical. However, I do think that the moon will be inhabited in the next 20 years or so.

3 I think that putting money into space research is essential, because it (lead), as in fact it has already done, to many new developments in medicine and technology.

4 I am optimistic about the future. I think we are going to have to face challenges in the near future, but people (rise) to them just as they have done in the past. For example, some deadly diseases like malaria certainly (disappear).

5 I'm not really sure, but generally I think the world in the future (be) a better place than it is today. People (live) in a society free of cares and worries, where all of the work (do) by robots and other machines. These machines will be so lifelike that it (be) impossible to tell the difference between them.

- 2 Which four of the extracts in exercise 1 would you expect as an answer to an IELTS Speaking Part 3 question? Why is the other extract not suitable?

## Proof reading

As quickly as you can, find the mistakes in sentences 1–10 below.

- 1 By the year 2020 the population will increased to nearly 120 million.
- 2 By 2015 it is predicted that car journeys will decline. Whereas high-speed rail transport will be expanding.
- 3 The pie chart show the developments in transportation over time.
- 4 It is forecast that passengers number will increase substantially.
- 5 Trafic volume on the railways is projected to rise in the coming decades.
- 6 The number of journeys taken will fall dramatically in the near future.
- 7 The majority of trips is make up of train journeys.
- 8 The strike feature is the rise in rail journeys.
- 9 The number of passenger journeys made by car will fall, by contrast high-speed transport will shoot up.
- 10 It is predict that the number of people using the system will rise.

# Answer key

## Unit 1 We are all friends now

### Vocabulary 1: Describing people Page 6

2

#### Possible answers

- 1 adventurous, sporty, dynamic
- 2 artistic, creative
- 3 wise, considerate, supportive, helpful
- 4 talkative, chatty
- 5 hard-working, conscientious

4

- 1 respected/respectful/respectable
- 2 ambitious
- 3 caring/careful
- 4 humorous
- 5 talented
- 6 generous
- 7 cheerful
- 8 sociable
- 9 calm
- 10 punctual
- 11 reliable
- 12 loyal
- 13 honest
- 14 patient

5

- 1 humorous
- 2 calm
- 3 cheerful
- 4 talented
- 5 ambitious
- 6 sociable
- 7 respected
- 8 generous
- 9 loyal
- 10 caring
- 11 reliable
- 12 punctual

### Reading Page 8

#### Questions 1–6

- 1 viii
- 2 vi
- 3 vii
- 4 iii
- 5 ii
- 6 i

#### Questions 7–10

- 7 phenomenal level
- 8 university life
- 9 academic support
- 10 university friendships

#### Questions 11–13

- 11 FALSE. ‘Virtual interviews’ will not be the only research methodology used at Leicester. Section D: *This project will be using both an online questionnaire and virtual interviews.*
- 12 NOT GIVEN. Section D: no comparison is mentioned between the UK and other places.
- 13 TRUE. Section F: *... or to bring together current and new students to provide peer support.*

### Language focus 1: Present simple, present continuous and past simple

Page 10

1

- 1 Section D
- 2 Section A
- 3 Section B
- 4 Section D

2

- 1 raised – past simple
- 2 is running – present continuous
- 3 know, impacts – present simple
- 4 builds – present simple

3

- a present simple
- b present continuous
- c past simple
- d present simple

4

- 1 helps
- 2 participated
- 3 impacted
- 4 influenced
- 5 are now recruiting
- 6 feel

5

- 1 *help* is used as an infinitive (Section A) and in the present simple (Section B)
- 2 *participate* is used as a gerund after the preposition *with* (Section A)
- 3 *impact* is in the present simple (Section B)
- 4 *influence* is used as an infinitive (Section F)
- 5 *recruit* is used as an infinitive (Section A)
- 6 *feel* is in the same tense, the present simple (Section D)

### Listening Section 1 Page 11

1

- 1 a name
- 2 a noun
- 3 a number
- 4 an adjective
- 5 a name
- 6 a name
- 7 a number
- 8 a noun

#### Questions 1–4

- 1 Andrews
- 2 July
- 3 8/eight
- 4 part-time

#### Questions 5–8

- 5 Davenport
- 6 Fordenham
- 7 8876451
- 8 morning

#### Questions 9 and 10

IN ANY ORDER

C

D



## Answer key

### Language focus 2: Likes and dislikes

Page 12

1

She uses the *-ing* form after *like* as she is emphasizing what she enjoys from her past experience of doing it. This is different from *like* followed by the infinitive with *to*, which indicates routine habit or duty as opposed to enjoyment.

2

- 1 Correct
- 2 Correct
- 3 Incorrect – ‘to join’
- 4 Correct
- 5 Correct
- 6 Correct
- 7 Incorrect – ‘doing’

3

- 1 playing
- 2 to live
- 3 being/to be
- 4 to keep
- 5 taking
- 6 to be
- 7 socializing/to socialize, staying
- 8 playing
- 9 to see

4

- 1 I’d like to live in the countryside.
- 2 Nowadays people dislike doing certain sports.
- 3 Adrian likes cleaning/to clean the kitchen every morning.
- 4 She enjoys shopping enormously.
- 5 Pedro can’t stand playing video games.
- 6 He likes people he knows to be honest.
- 7 She would prefer to see the film on DVD at home rather than in the cinema.
- 8 He really loves mingling/to mingle with other people at parties.

### Speaking Part 2 Page 13

1

#### Possible answers

- 1 supportive/wise/considerate/helpful
- 2 hard-working/conscientious/supportive/helpful
- 3 adventurous/sporty

4

who the person is – present simple  
what they are like generally – present simple  
what qualities this person has – present simple  
and explain why you would like to be like this person – conditional

### Vocabulary 2: Verbs of movement Page 14

1

1 h 2 d 3 b 4 g 5 j 6 i 7 a 8 e 9 c 10 f

2

- 1 fell and then levelled off
- 2 hit a peak
- 3 dipped
- 4 plummeted
- 5 rose gradually
- 6 remained flat/stable
- 7 fell gradually
- 8 fluctuated
- 9 hit a low
- 10 soared

3

a bottom out, a rocket, a soar, a plummet, a level off

4

- 1 There was a drop in the price of laptops followed by a period of stability.
- 3 There was a slight fall and then a quick recovery in the amount of money spent.
- 4 There was a plunge in visitor numbers to the website in the first quarter of the year.
- 5 There was a slow but sure increase in book purchases over the year.
- 6 There was stabilization in the number of students applying to university over the period.
- 7 There was a steady decrease in attendance figures/attendances at the conference last year.
- 8 There were some fluctuations in the growth rate during the last year.

You cannot change sentences 2, 9 and 10.

### Writing Task 1 Page 15

1

Introduction c is the best answer because it paraphrases the rubric. Note the change in words (*illustrates/hits/in the UK/on a weekly basis/over one year to March 2008*).

2

- 1 illustrates/shows
- 2 vary/varied
- 3 was
- 4 rose/climbed/increased
- 5 was/is
- 6 was/is
- 7 reached/hit
- 8 rose/climbed/increased (but avoid repetition)
- 9 fell/dropped

### Review 1 Page 16

#### Vocabulary

1

1 h 2 e 3 g 4 a 5 d 6 c 7 b 8 f

2

- 1 humorous
- 2 caring
- 3 punctual
- 4 respected
- 5 talented
- 6 artistic
- 7 patient
- 8 reliable

#### Present simple, present continuous and past simple

1

Sonja: 1, 4, 5  
Wei: 3, 7, 8  
Ahmed: 2, 10, 12  
Tony: 6, 9, 11

2

- |     |         |
|-----|---------|
| 1 c | 7 a     |
| 2 c | 8 b     |
| 3 c | 9 b     |
| 4 b | 10 b, a |
| 5 a | 11 b, c |
| 6 a | 12 b    |

**Writing**

1

- 1 noticeable
- 2 shows
- 3 fluctuated
- 4 surge
- 5 remained steady
- 6 plummeted
- 7 decline
- 8 downward
- 9 trend
- 10 breakdown

2

- 1 The trend in attendances is/was clearly upward.  
There is/was a clear upward trend in attendances.
- 2 There is/was an increase in student numbers over the year.  
Student numbers increased over the year.
- 3 Market share fell overall over/during the past decade.  
There was an overall fall in market share over/during the past decade.
- 4 Generally speaking, the trend in the cost of train journeys is/was flat.
- 5 The trend in prices is/was downward overall.
- 6 The miles covered by shoppers declined.
- 7 The price of grain rose steadily in the last six months.  
There has been a steady rise in the price of grain in the last six months.
- 8 There has been a clear downward trend in the number of flights abroad.

## Unit 2 Technology—now and then

### Vocabulary: Verbs of cause and effect

Page 18

1

- 1 a wheel
- 2 an abacus
- 3 a telescope
- 4 a combustion engine
- 5 a laptop

They are all examples of technology which has changed the world.

2

- 1 improvement
- 2 destruction
- 3 shape/shaping
- 4 result
- 5 effect
- 6 harm
- 7 enhancement
- 8 promotion
- 9 damage
- 10 ruin/ruination
- 11 production
- 12 fostering
- 13 advance/advancement
- 14 deterioration
- 15 achievement
- 16 attraction

Affect does not follow any of the patterns.

3

- 1 Positive
- 2 Negative
- 3 Neutral
- 4 Neutral

- 5 Neutral
- 6 Negative
- 7 Positive
- 8 Positive
- 9 Negative
- 10 Negative
- 11 Neutral
- 12 Positive
- 13 Positive
- 14 Negative
- 15 Positive
- 16 Neutral

4

- 1 The demand for fuel is destroying the way of life of the inhabitants of rainforests.
- 2 People constantly debate whether television influences society positively or negatively.
- 3 The company restructuring will improve profits significantly.
- 4 Climate change has ruined many crops.
- 5 The fire did not harm the mountainside as much as people first thought.
- 6 Relations between the two countries deteriorated sharply as a result of the conflict.
- 7 The affair damaged his reputation enormously.
- 8 Artificial intelligence is impacting on the development of technology hugely.
- 9 Many people like Einstein and Newton shaped the world.

5

- 1 promotion
- 2 destruction
- 3 Improvements/Advancements
- 4 achievement
- 5 attraction
- 6 fostering/shaping

### Listening Section 2 Page 19

- A big/not small
- B not interesting/exciting
- C handier
- D thrilling/exhilarating
- E well made/well put together
- F trendy/in vogue

### Questions 11–15

- 11 A 12 B 13 B 14 A 15 C

### Questions 16–20

- 16 F 17 A 18 C 19 D 20 E

### Reading Page 21

#### Questions 1–6

- 1 TRUE. Paragraph 1: *In the early stages of this development, the process of urbanization went hand in hand with the establishment of a social order.*
- 2 FALSE. Paragraph 2: *The Shang dynasty was conquered by the people of Zhou.*
- 3 FALSE. Paragraph 2: ... seven major states contended for supreme control of the country.
- 4 NOT GIVEN. However, see paragraph 3: *Iron appeared in China towards the end of ... . We do not know where it came from: inside or outside China.*
- 5 FALSE. Paragraph 4: *Many versions include ...*
- 6 FALSE. Paragraph 5: ... the great patience and skill of the earlier period seem to be lacking.

## Answer key

### Questions 7–12

- 7 B
- 8 B
- 9 A
- 10 C
- 11 A
- 12 A

### Question 13

B

## Language focus 1: Past simple and present perfect Page 23

1

- Simple past. It is used because the text is talking about specific events in the past. The two examples of the present perfect relate to general/indefinite observations made at an unknown time.
- Although the passive is used a lot, the active voice is more common when events are being mentioned.

2

- 1 revolutionized
- 2 contributed
- 3 led
- 4 was first played
- 5 was invented
- 6 created, shaped, lived
- 7 travelled
- 8 influenced

3

- 1 began
- 2 were, didn't have, have become
- 3 have started
- 4 transformed
- 5 went, have never visited
- 6 Have you ever seen
- 7 have improved
- 8 did, have not done, spent

## Word building: Qualifying adjectives

### Page 24

1

- 1 inconvenient
- 2 impractical
- 3 unimportant
- 4 unnecessary
- 5 insignificant
- 6 harmless
- 7 valueless
- 8 useless
- 9 ineffective
- 10 unappealing
- 11 unworthy
- 12 uninspiring

2

crucial, vital, essential, key, critical

3

trivial, insignificant

4

- 1 impractical
- 2 effective
- 3 convenient
- 4 worthwhile
- 5 harmless
- 6 inspiring

## Language focus 2: Habit in the past Page 25

1

*They remembered how they would all go round to ... b  
... all of whom used to have one ... c*

2

- 1 Correct
- 2 Correct
- 3 *Used to* is used to talk about states (e.g. occupations), not *would*.
- 4 Correct
- 5 You don't say *would build* or *used to build his own car*, but *built*.
- 6 *Didn't go to* is needed, not *didn't use to*. The action is neither repeated nor a state.
- 7 Correct
- 8 Correct

## Adverbs of frequency Page 25

1 sometimes, position 4

2

2 usually, normally, commonly

3

- |            |                                |
|------------|--------------------------------|
| Position 2 | normally                       |
| Position 3 | regularly, often, commonly     |
| Position 4 | occasionally, not often        |
| Position 5 | not often, hardly ever, rarely |

4

- 1 never read
- 2 usually/normally/regularly play
- 7 regularly used to watch

## Writing Task 2 Page 26

1

- 1 You will lose marks if you write less than 250 words, as you will not have completed the task properly.
- 2 The instructions ask you to discuss both views so it is important to support your ideas with reasons and examples. As in Speaking Part 3, the ideas and examples should be abstract and about people in general, not about what happened to you.
- 3 Yes. You can support your ideas and reasons by showing the results, causes and effects and express any reservations or doubts you may have.
- 4 There is no specific limit, but ideally aim to write an introduction, three main paragraphs in the body of the essay, and a conclusion. As this is formal writing you will lose marks if you do not write in paragraphs.
- 5 There are three parts: a discussion of the first view – 'some people fear that technology is gradually taking over control of our lives'; a discussion of the second view – 'while others think that it has led to many positive developments in all aspects of their lives' and your own opinion.
- 6 Three main ideas – one per paragraph. However, you could have two ideas in some paragraphs. Avoid listing ideas without developing them by giving reasons and examples.

7 Yes you can and then support it.

- 8 If you write around 30 words each for the introduction to the essay and the conclusion, this leaves a minimum of 190 words to write for the body of the essay, roughly 65 words per paragraph. Note these are just rough estimates. Learn how much 60/70 words is in your own handwriting so you can estimate how much to write. Even draw a line on your writing paper which represents an approximation of 250 words in your handwriting and aim to cross the line as you are writing.

9 There is more than one way of writing any essay. Try to follow the way described here and then develop different ways of writing an essay.

10 Complex sentences are sentences with more than one clause. Or, in other words, a sentence with more than one idea linked by a connecting word. For example, a statement like *Technology is beneficial because it ... resulting in ...* has three ideas: statement/opinion-reason/result. Use a mixture of simple and complex sentences and avoid the overuse of connecting words and the word *and*.

2

3 and 4. 1 is not suitable because it doesn't deal directly with the questions asked. 2 is not suitable because it copies the rubric.

3

4

4

	Example	Reason	Result	Additional information	Purpose	Contrast
Adverb	for example, for instance		As a result	Moreover		However
Conjunction		because			in order to	
Other	like, such as					

5

a good example is ... /the best example is ... /take ... /take ... for example/for instance/As far as ... is concerned/where the impact of ... is concerned/namely

6

reason: since/as

result: consequently/so (conjunction and adverb)/therefore/accordingly/and so (conjunction)

additional information: similarly/furthermore/what is more/also

purpose: to

contrast: but, although (conjunctions)/despite (preposition)

7

### Sample answer

Although technology has brought many benefits to our lives, it has some drawbacks like entering into people's privacy which has become a cause for concern for some people.

It is true that due to advances in technology, our privacy is increasingly violated with our personal details being constantly exposed in public. Take for example cameras which are found in the UK on the streets, in shops or in different premises. These devices working around the clock record pictures of all individuals passing in their visual field and they can be watched at any time for various purposes. This seems to be offensive to some people who fear that their pictures may be used in some unacceptable practices. Furthermore, most supermarkets provide loyalty cards to their customers offering them discounts according to points they gain when they purchase goods. As these cards contain customers' personal details, shops know what people consume therefore they can continuously control our lives.

However, besides these drawbacks there are numerous advantages resulting from technology in various aspects of the life, namely in education, banking, security or employment. For example these cameras found at the corner of the streets are used to tackle criminality. Once a crime is committed in an area, images are analysed by police to find the offender. Regarding communication for example, the internet has transformed the world into a small village. A person from Congo living in the UK can exchange with their family e-mails, photos or videos, they can even chat what was not possible some decades ago.

To sum up, I think that despite some violations of our privacy which are unavoidable, the advantages of technology are still greater. Therefore its utilisations should be encouraged but the authorities in charge of the community should protect people's privacy as much as possible and personal details or their images should only be disclosed in case of crime investigations.

Word count: 315

### Examiner's comment

A well-balanced and coherently presented response, with relevant examples being adduced in support of the chosen standpoint. Any grammatical errors do not impede communication, and the conclusion rounds the essay off effectively. Good range of vocabulary and sophisticated and well controlled use of language.

Possible score: 8.0

### Review 2 Page 28

#### Vocabulary

- 1 affected
- 2 achievement
- 3 shape
- 4 result/impact/effect/consequence
- 5 affected/influenced/enhanced/improved
- 6 development/improvement/achievement
- 7 improving/affecting/ruining/damaging/harming/destroying
- 8 further/advance/enhance/improve

#### Word building

1

- 1 convenient
- 2 significant
- 3 uninspiring
- 4 necessary
- 5 worthless
- 6 appealing
- 7 harmless
- 8 ineffective
- 9 crucial
- 10 inconvenient/important/insignificant

2

- 1 harmless
- 2 useful
- 3 inspiring
- 4 impractical
- 5 crucial
- 6 necessary

#### Past simple and present perfect

- 1 played, haven't played
- 4 have affected, made
- 6 designed, have designed

## Answer key

### Habit in the past

- 1 Correct
- 2 Correct
- 3 I knew
- 4 Correct
- 5 Correct
- 6 used to attend
- 7 Correct
- 8 Correct
- 9 Correct
- 10 used to rain
- 11 it never seemed
- 12 just carried on

### Spelling check

- 1 convenient
- 2 worthwhile
- 3 appealing
- 4 ineffective
- 5 useful
- 6 unnecessary
- 7 impractical

## Unit 3 Thrill seekers

### Vocabulary: Sports Page 30

1

- 1 wingsuit flying
- 2 white water rafting
- 3 playing Wii
- 4 snowboarding

2

- 1 football, rugby
- 2 boxing
- 3 running
- 4 bodybuilding, weightlifting
- 5 swimming
- 6 scuba-diving
- 7 tennis, squash
- 8 golf

3

### Possible answers

- 1 Formula 1 racing, motocross
- 2 hunting, fishing
- 3 water-skiing, swimming, wind surfing, water polo, sailing, surfing
- 4 martial arts, judo, fencing
- 5 tennis, squash, badminton
- 6 show jumping, horse-riding
- 7 skiing, snowboarding
- 8 squash, basketball
- 9 rugby, running
- 10 football, basketball, hockey, cricket

### Listening Section 3 Page 31

#### Question 21

21 C

#### Question 22–25

- 22 freelance workers
- 23 173 people
- 24 more details
- 25 representatives

#### Question 26–30

- 26 individuals, companies
- 27 travelling/traveling expenses
- 28 (the) coaching

29 (full) potential

30 dedication

### Language focus 1: Comparison Page 32

1

- a adjective
- b noun
- c verb

2

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
bad	worse	the worst
good	better	the best
noisy	noisier/more noisy	the noisiest
wet	wetter	the wettest
tasty	tastier	the tastiest
cheap	cheaper	the cheapest
lively	livelier	the liveliest
appetizing	more/less appetizing	the most/least appetizing

3

- 1 easier
- 2 more popular
- 3 the most energetic
- 4 happier
- 5 more difficult
- 6 the least/most stressful
- 7 more/less important
- 8 the fittest

4

- 1 ease
- 2 popularity
- 3 energy
- 4 happiness
- 5 difficulty
- 6 stress
- 7 importance
- 8 fitness

5

- 1 Places to do specialist sports can be found with more ease outside cities and towns.
- 2 Activities like bowling enjoy more popularity among older age groups.
- 3 Which sport do you think requires/needs the most energy (of all)?
- 4 People who do some physical activity are supposed to experience more/greater happiness than less active people.
- 5 People have greater difficulty/more difficulties organizing their lives around leisure activities nowadays.
- 6 Do people experience greater stress in their work nowadays than before?
- 7 Does mental activity have less/more importance than physical activity? Is mental activity of lesser/greater importance than physical activity?
- 8 People don't realize that racing drivers are the fittest individuals in sport.

6

- 1 ... more exciting than ...
- 2 Correct
- 3 ... more dangerous than ...
- 4 ... fitter ...
- 5 ... the most exciting ...
- 6 Correct

- 7 ... the richest ...  
 8 Correct  
 9 Correct  
 10 ... more tiring than ...

### Word building: Adjectives ending in *-ing/-ed* Page 33

- 1  
 1 thrilling  
 2 irritated  
 3 interested  
 4 motivating  
 5 exciting  
 6 annoying, annoyed  
 7 challenging  
 8 invigorated

- 3  
 1 electrified  
 2 challenged  
 3 interesting  
 4 fascination  
 5 motivated  
 6 exciting  
 7 refreshed  
 8 excitement

### Speaking Part 1 Page 34

- 1 What kinds of sports are popular in your country?  
 2 Are they as popular as they used to be in the past?  
 3 Are the same games as popular as in the past?  
 4 Do young people do more physical activities like extreme sports now than in the past?  
 5 What makes these games interesting to people?  
 6 Are sports more challenging now than they were in the past?  
 7 Are young people challenged more nowadays than in the past?

### Reading Page 34

Questions 1–6  
**1 D 2 H 3 B 4 H 5 F 6 I**

#### Questions 7–12

- 7 NOT GIVEN. Paragraph A: Computer games and fairground rides are mentioned but there is no comparison.  
 8 TRUE. Paragraph D: *the brain struggles to make sense of conflicting and changing signals from the senses.*  
 9 NOT GIVEN. Paragraph F: The number does not tell you how many people are involved. Always watch out for words of quantity like *all/a few/little/most* and make sure they match the meaning in the text.  
 10 FALSE. Paragraph G: *The human body cannot tolerate much more of a G-force than the latest rollercoasters, ...*  
 11 NOT GIVEN. Paragraph H: The text does not mention anything about the balance of men and women.  
 12 TRUE. Paragraph I: *Equally, the next generation of rides will sense when too many people feel nauseous and wind down accordingly. In short, they will be able to distinguish terror from titillation.*

Question 13  
**13 B**

### Language focus 2: Adjectives with prepositions Page 36

- 1  
 1 on  
 2 to  
 3 about  
 4 in  
 5 with  
 6 to  
 7 about  
 8 of  
 9 about  
 10 of, about

- 2  
 1 b/c/f  
 2 c  
 3 e  
 4 d  
 5 b/f  
 6 g  
 7 a

### Speaking Part 3 Page 37

- 2  
 1 to  
 2 so  
 3 so that  
 4 in order to  
 5 so as to  
 6 in order to

3  
**Possible answers**

- 1 because they want/like to keep fit  
 2 because they would like/want to lose weight  
 3 because they would like/want to make friends  
 4 because they like/want to relax  
 5 because they want an adrenaline rush  
 6 because they like to escape from the real world

### Writing Task 1 Page 38

- 1  
 1 No. Fewer men than women went swimming.  
 2 No. There was a greater proportion of men than women involved in walking, but not a far greater proportion.  
 3 No. Women were less likely to take part in sporting activities.  
 4 No. Nearly twice as many men as women went cycling.  
 5 Yes. The table compares information about male and female involvement in a selection of activities in the United Kingdom in 2002.  
 6 Yes. Ten per cent of men played football while no women played.  
 7 Yes. Compared to males, more than twice as many women went to keep fit/yoga classes.  
 8 Yes. Football was the least popular activity overall.  
 9 Yes. Overall males were more involved in physical activity than females.

- 2  
 a the introduction: 5  
 b the overview: 3 and 9  
 c specific data: 1, 2, 4, 6, 7, 8

- 3  
 1 fewer ... than  
 2 a far greater proportion of ... than  
 3 less likely to  
 4 twice as many ... as ...  
 5 compares data about ...

## Answer key

6 while

7 Compared with ... more than twice as many ...

8 the least popular

9 more involved in ... than ...

4

1 The rugby match was attended by a third of the number of spectators at the football match.

2 The sports department was visited by five times the number of shoppers in February 2008 when compared to February 2009.

3 More than 40% of the competitors were from the main city.

4 A smaller proportion of players were home-grown rather than from overseas.

5 Three-quarters of the members of the sports club paid by credit card rather than cash.

6 The team won just over 50%/half of the games they played last season.

5

### Sample answer

The table gives information about an involvement of 11-14 years age teenagers in five different types of Extreme sports by both sexes in 2003.

Overall, with the exception of Rollerblading the participation of boys in Extreme sports exceeds the involvement of girls. For example, the proportion of boy participants in Mountain biking is much greater (22.7%) than the percentage of girl participants (13.3%). On the other hand, the percentage of males (27.5%) involved in Skateboarding is almost double the proportion of females taking part in it (13.8%). The same pattern is seen when we look at Snowboarding (male 8.1 % and female 4%).

Regarding [the] Mountain climbing there was nearly same proportion of both gender participants (10.6% male and 9.3% female). The exception was Rollerblading where the girls outstrip the boys, 31.7% and 21.7% respectively. It is clear that, the proportion of males involved in Extreme sports is much higher than the percentage of the females.

Word count: 156

### Examiner's comment

The response is well organised, fluently written and identifies the main trends. The lexical resource is evident. However, elementary errors persist, reducing effectiveness overall. Greater is misspelt and rules regarding capitalisation, prepositions (on) and articles (first sentences paragraphs 1 and 3) are ignored. The response also employs inappropriate sign posting (on the other hand).

Possible score: 6.5

## Review 3 Page 40

### Vocabulary

1

1 golf: outdoor

2 snowboarding: outdoor

3 boxing: indoor

4 squash: indoor

5 football: both

6 baseball: both

7 rugby: outdoor

8 running: both

2

1 squash, football, baseball, rugby

2 squash

3 golf

4 football

5 football, rugby

6 skateboarding, snowboarding

7 boxing

8 squash

9 baseball

10 running

### Comparison

1

1 Is windsurfing more expensive than ordinary surfing?

2 I find watching sport more appealing (to me) than taking part.

3 Which sport is the most challenging?

4 Which sport is the safest?

5 As they are old, the facilities are less valuable than those at other clubs.

6 The club is more successful than similar organizations.

2

1 India is not as big as Africa./India is not bigger than Africa.

2 The Pacific Ocean is wider than the Atlantic Ocean.

3 Mountaineers do not earn as much as footballers.

4 Football matches attract far greater numbers than squash tournaments.

5 Parkour seems to be much riskier/more/less risky than skateboarding.

6 Many sports demand more/less stamina than intellect.

7 An active life is considerably less harmful than a sedentary lifestyle.

8 Private cars (don't) make as much noise as lorries.

### Adjectives with prepositions

1 keen

2 interested

3 capable

4 addicted

5 indifferent

6 enthusiastic/fanatical

7 bored

### Word building

1

1 fascinated, correct

2 motivating, incorrect - *motivated*

3 thrilled, correct

4 irritated, incorrect - *irritating*

5 interesting, incorrect - *interested*

6 excited, incorrect - *exciting*

7 annoyed, correct

8 challenging, incorrect - *challenged*

2

1 e 2 c 3 b 4 d 5 a

## Ready for Listening

### Section 1 Page 42

#### Questions 1-6

1 *The Judgement*

2 Wight

3 691-0-9-8879-9

4 North America

5 biographical

6 17

**Questions 7–10**

- 7 54 65 36  
8 mandy  
9 90  
10 special offers

**Section 2 Page 43**

**1**  
The parts of the cinema (items 11–16) as they will normally be introduced first, followed by details about what happened to them.

- 2**  
**Possible answers**  
**A** enlarged: extended, bigger, more spacious  
**B** replaced: changed, taken the place of; instead of/ in place of  
**C** still closed: not open yet; still being renovated; work still being done/carried out  
**D** thoroughly cleaned: spotless; the dirt removed; as good as new; looks like new  
**E** split up: divided; partitioned; made into 2/3/4 smaller ...  
**F** brightened up: made brighter/less dull/cheered up  
**G** moved: shifted; transferred; relocated; not in the same place as before

- 3**  
**17** open  
**18** group/free/tickets/first week  
**19** Wednesdays/reduction/members  
**20** new development

**Questions 11–16**

- 11 D    12 E    13 A    14 B    15 C    16 G**

**Questions 17–20**

- 17 A    18 C    19 B    20 C**

- 5**  
**11** D thoroughly cleaned: all the dirt has been completely removed  
**12** E split up: partitioned  
**13** A enlarged: made bigger  
**14** B replaced: where there was ... there is now ...  
**15** C still closed: will be opening shortly  
**16** G moved: no longer beside ... it is now next to ...

**Section 3 Page 45**

- 1**  
**Possible synonyms:**  
**talk:** seminar/lecture  
**electronic gadgets:** devices/gizmos/appliances  
**2**  
 Nearly all of them could be undecided with the aims being the most likely to be decided upon.

- Possible synonyms:**  
**A** length of the questionnaire: survey  
**B** pictures to use: photos/illustrations/drawings/images  
**C** volume of data: amount of information/statistics/facts and figures  
**D** duration of interviews: length of questioning  
**E** period of research: investigation/study  
**F** age of interviewees: people to be questioned/asked questions to/participants  
**G** exact aims: objectives

- 3**  
 Numbers: Questions 27, 28, 30  
 Plural: Question 25

**Question 21**

- 21 C**

**Question 22–24**

IN ANY ORDER

- A**  
**F**  
**G**

**Questions 25–30**

- 25** emails/e-mails  
**26** browsing the Internet  
**27** 8  
**28** 5  
**29** everything  
**30** 10

**Section 4 Page 46**

**1**

**Words in the stem:**

- 31** bore holes  
**32** in the past/induce rain  
**33** proof/increases rainfall  
**34** not support  
**35** country/keen

**Possible paraphrases in the alternatives:**

- 31**  
**A** employed/utilized in factories  
**B** on farms/to water fields  
**C** drinking and washing  
**32**  
**A** mystical/magical methods/ways  
**B** burning (something)  
**C** ritual (dancing)  
**33**  
**C** a quarter  
**34**  
**A** advantages of cloud seeding  
**B** price of the equipment/equipment is expensive/costly/not cheap  
**C** impact/outcome/result

**Questions 31–35**

- 31 B**  
**32 A**  
**33 A**  
**34 C**  
**35 B**

**Questions 36–40**

- 36** chemical/silver iodide  
**37** water freeze  
**38** generator  
**39** fuel tank  
**40** cloud level

**Unit 4 Global problems and opportunities****Vocabulary: General category nouns Page 48**

- 2**  
*problem* can be used in both gaps  
**1 b 2 c 3 a 4 g 5 h 6 f 7 d 8 e**  
**3**  
**1** incident  
**2** possibility  
**3** dilemma

## Answer key

- 4 events
- 5 problem
- 6 issue
- 7 impression
- 8 outcome

4

- 1 f 2 d 3 e 4 b 5 c 6 a

## Listening Section 4 Page 49

### Questions 31–37

- 31 public railway
- 32 unnoticed
- 33 steam locomotive
- 34 coal
- 35 passengers
- 36 passenger traffic
- 37 Canals

### Questions 38–40

- IN ANY ORDER
- C
- D
- F

## Language focus 1: Countable and uncountable nouns Page 51

1

Countable: forms, opportunities  
Uncountable: development, transport, innovation, progress, evolution

Note: *innovation* and *development* can also be countable

2

- 1 b (tables, shelves, desks ...)
- 2 a (shoes, sweaters, hats ...)
- 3 j (bags, rucksacks ...)
- 4 f (notes)
- 5 c (apples, bananas, lemons ...)
- 6 d (houses, hotels, cabins ...)
- 7 h (newspapers, television/radio programmes ...)
- 8 e (products)
- 9 g (thefts, robberies, shootings ...)
- 10 i (cans, packets, cigarettes ...)

3

- 1 Litter is ...
- 2 Machines are ...
- 3 The behaviour of football hooligans costs ...
- 4 Information ...
- 5 Robberies and thefts are ...
- 6 Musical instruments are played ...
- 7 Suggestions ... are ....
- 8 Language ... follows ...

4

- 1 Many businesses now demand a lot of work from (their) employees.
- 2 People expect good weather when they go on holiday.
- 3 Theatre audiences are in decline generally, but the audience for the new musical was extremely small last night.
- 4 Increased use of public transport like buses and trains is good for the environment.
- 5 With increases in the price of paper, books and newspapers are becoming expensive.
- 6 Coffee and tea are commodities which saw a fall in value recently.
- 7 Entertainment like horror and violent films should be banned.
- 8 Electronic goods like refrigerators cause considerable harm to the planet.

5

- 1 equipment, computers
- 2 weather, storms
- 3 Information, details
- 4 Business, businesses
- 5 luggage, cases
- 6 Furniture, wood, trees
- 7 Waste, litter
- 8 jobs, work, money

## Speaking Part 1 Page 51

1

- 1 Countable: types, resources, country
- 2 Countable: goods, country
- 3 Countable: types, country  
Uncountable: food
- 4 Uncountable: produce
- 5 Countable: country  
Uncountable: food
- 6 Countable: commodities
- 7 Countable: shops, country  
Uncountable: merchandise
- 8 Countable: crops, country

## Reading Page 52

### Questions 1–9

- 1 B 2 G 3 D 4 A 5 E 6 P 7 N 8 K 9 I

### Questions 10–13

- 10 YES. Paragraph 2: *The vast expanse of debris – in effect the world's largest rubbish dump.* The phrase *in effect* and the fact that the information is between dashes tells you this is what the writer thinks – it is his/her claim, not a statement of fact.
- 11 NO. See the information given by Marcus Eriksen in paragraph 3. Then look at the beginning of the next paragraph: *The soup* is actually two linked areas ... The word *actually* tells you what the writer claims is true.
- 12 NOT GIVEN. The writer does not make any predictions about this, even though Mr Moore warned in Paragraph 7: *unless consumers cut back on their use of disposable plastics, the plastic stew would double in size over the next decade.*
- 13 YES. Paragraph 13: *Plastic is believed to constitute 90 per cent of all rubbish floating in the oceans.* Note that the writer is claiming what appears is believed to be true.

## Language focus 2: Making suggestions

### Page 54

2

- 1 could
- 2 The most important ... is ...
- 3 should
- 4 ought to

Suggestions 2, 3 and 4 are strong suggestions; 1 is tentative.

4

- a Governments ought to try to encourage people to return to the countryside.
- b Banks could cancel the international debts of poor countries.
- c Governments should provide poorer countries with the skills to feed themselves.
- d Rivers could be oxygenated and fish reintroduced.
- e Protection orders can be put on all wild animals.
- f Water desalination plants might work in some regions.
- g More trees should be planted.

5

- a 6 b 2 c 1 d 4 e 5 f 7 g 3

## Vocabulary 2: Developing ideas by expanding the meaning of adjectives

Page 54

1

- 1 pleases
- 2 encourage
- 3 frightened
- 4 trouble
- 5 attracts
- 6 fascinated
- 7 stunned

2

- 1 Some people find buying consumer goods very pleasing. Sometimes, it is just the act of purchasing which satisfies them.
- 2 Positive health education on TV can be encouraging. It can motivate people to improve their lifestyle.
- 3 The results were frightening. They alarmed the government so much they actually took some action.
- 4 The news on TV is sometimes very troubling. It can worry people all day long.
- 5 Disaster movies are very attractive to many people. It is the fact that they feel comfortable and safe themselves as they watch that appeals to them.
- 6 I found the festivities really fascinating. They interested me so much that I had to read more about them.
- 7 The scale of crime in some cities has been so stunning it has shocked even the police.

## Writing Task 2 Page 55

1

- 1 reason
- 2 contrast
- 3 result/conclusion
- 4 example
- 5 purpose
- 6 result
- 7 concession

2

- 1 because
- 2 Yet
- 3 therefore
- 4 For example
- 5 in order to
- 6 then
- 7 Although

3

Adverb	Conjunction	Both
however	although	though
even so	but	yet
nevertheless	even if	
nonetheless	much as	
still	while	
	despite the fact that	
	in spite of the fact that	

4

- 1 However. You will see *But* used as an adverb in some texts.
- 2 but/although
- 3 While/Although
- 4 Even if/Though
- 5 Even so/Nonetheless

7

- A causes  
B examples

1 c 2 f 3 d 4 e 5 a 6 b

8

### Sample answer

Recent decades have witnessed a significant increase in the amount of rubbish produced by people around the world, causing a serious threat to all living things. It has been pointed out that changes in lifestyle and the industrial revolution are the main causes for this rise. However, there are many steps that can be taken to halt this problem.

After the industrial revolution there was a huge growth in the number of products available for people. Most of the producers try to attract consumers by using different types of packaging materials. Sometimes, the size and the amount of these materials are bigger than those for the products themselves. Also the production of new versions of different equipment, such as mobile phones, increases the waste.

Moreover, while most people, in the past, used their own bags when they went for shopping, nowadays, they depend on the disposable bags offered by shops, which are mostly made from plastic. In addition to that, the consumption of prepared food has experienced a crucial increase as a result to the rise in the number of working women. These foods are covered by different types of packaging material leading to increase in the amount of rubbish produced per capita.

Not only does the increase in the amount of rubbish threaten our lives by different pollutants, but it also causes depletion of valuable resources. For this reason there should be a new movement to decrease the amount of waste to its lowest level, and to use less harmful materials like biodegradable ones. Governmental and social organizations, like schools and media, should contribute to this process by explaining to people the importance of conserving our environment and resources.

Word count: 280

### Examiner's comment

A reasonably successful response that deploys both ideas and supporting evidence quite coherently. The sentence structures are varied, although some errors are evident. Overall, the response exhibits a fair level of precision and flexibility. Ambitious writing results in some grammatical inaccuracy, but this does not impose undue strain on the reader.

Possible score: 7.0

## Speaking Part 3 Page 57

1

### News and events

influence: affect/have an impact/impact on  
encourage: persuade  
change: adapt/modify  
achieve: realize/accomplish/attain  
issues: matters/problems  
concern: worry

## Answer key

### World problems

tackle: deal with  
discarded: thrown away  
waste: rubbish  
mankind: human beings  
dilemmas: problems

### Review 4 Page 58

#### Vocabulary

1

- 1 dilemma
- 2 issue
- 3 event
- 4 opportunity
- 5 incident
- 6 impression

2

- 1 Correct
- 2 incident
- 3 Correct
- 4 situation
- 5 Correct
- 6 incident
- 7 occasions
- 8 Correct
- 9 Correct

3

- 1 shocking, stunned
- 2 interesting, fascinates
- 3 appealing, attracts
- 4 satisfying, pleases
- 5 alarming, frightened
- 6 motivating, encourage
- 7 worrying, troubled

#### Countable and uncountable nouns

1

- 1 litter
- 2 clothing
- 3 cash/money
- 4 luggage/baggage
- 5 fruit
- 6 accommodation
- 7 furniture
- 8 crime
- 9 media

#### Writing

1

- 1 Nevertheless/Yet/Still
- 2 Despite the fact that
- 3 yet
- 4 Much as/Although

2

#### Possible answers

- a The general topic is water shortages. The question presents you with two separate opinions and asks for your opinion. You can follow one opinion or you can agree with parts of each one.
- b The general topic is water shortages. The question asks you to describe the causes. It does not ask you for solutions. You can give examples of about three situations or problems around the world. Then you can give the cause for each. Although you are not asked for any solutions, you could mention one or two by way of conclusion.

## Unit 5 The future

### Language focus: Ways of looking at the future Page 60

3

- 1 Plan
- 2 Plan
- 3 Prediction
- 4 Prediction
- 5 Prediction
- 6 Fixed schedule

4

- a 2
- b 1
- c 5
- d 3
- e 4
- f 6

5

- 1 we're flying – a  
shall I arrange – c
- 2 going to spend – b  
it'll do – c
- 3 we'll have completed – e  
it'll be working – d
- 4 are going to be – b  
it won't last – c
- 5 she arrives – f  
she'll be carrying – d

6

- 1 will they really enjoy it/be enjoying
- 2 I'll be sitting
- 3 I'll meet you
- 4 is going to happen, will happen
- 5 will have improved

7

- 1 The present simple is not possible. It is for a timetable.
- 2 Society will not have changed dramatically by 2030.  
*not going to* shows this is a prediction about what is not going to happen based on present information.  
The future perfect shows that it will not have happened before the date mentioned.
- 3 The present continuous is not possible.
- 4 The world is certainly going to change for the better by then.  
The future perfect shows that it will have happened before the date mentioned.  
*going to* shows this is a prediction about what is going to happen based on present information.
- 5 The human race will live in more closely knit communities in the future.  
The future continuous predicts what will be happening in the future.  
The simple future makes a straightforward prediction.
- 6 *going to* is not possible. Both are predictions. However, the simple future is a spontaneous reaction and *going to* is used after looking at the present information.

### Vocabulary 1: Adjective/noun collocations

#### Page 61

1

- 1 modern
- 2 agricultural
- 3 dominant
- 4 thriving

5 general  
6 urban  
7 governing  
8 indigenous

2

- 1 general public
- 2 modern civilization
- 3 agricultural societies
- 4 urban populations
- 5 dominant culture
- 6 governing elite

**Listening Section 1 Page 62**

- 1 booking office: a place where tickets are booked, bought and collected
- 2 preview: a chance to see a show, film or play before it opens to the general public
- 3 the week after next: two weeks from now
- 4 restrictions: limitations
- 5 sign up for: register for
- 6 come up: appear
- 7 register: enrol/join
- 8 range: variety/scope

**Questions 1–6**

- 1 day passes/tickets
- 2 Thursday
- 3 Tuesday, Friday
- 4 SF6733
- 5 3/three
- 6 special promotions

**Questions 7–10**

- 7 60
- 8 45 minutes
- 9 70
- 10 17

**Word building: forming adjectives from nouns Page 64**

1

Adjectives ending <i>-al</i>
usual
technological
agricultural
traditional
national
industrial

Adjectives ending <i>-ous</i>
luxurious
populous
spacious
dangerous
industrious

Adjectives ending <i>-ful</i>
useful
successful
beautiful

2

- 1 spacious
- 2 technological
- 3 beautiful
- 4 traditional
- 5 national
- 6 Luxurious
- 7 populous
- 8 successful

**Reading Page 64****Possible answers**

- robot developments
- types of robots
- examples from two countries
- cost
- different markets
- students' own answers
- pragmatics: practical applications

**Questions 1–7**

- 1 receptionist
- 2 vacuum
- 3 different approaches
- 4 human beings
- 5 pragmatic
- 6 the elderly
- 7 technological revolution

**Questions 8–11**

- 8 B
- 9 A
- 10 C
- 11 A

**Questions 12 and 13**

- 12 (undisputed) leader
- 13 \$210 million

**Vocabulary 2: Verbs of prediction Page 67**

- 1 prophesy, assume, foretell, foresee
- 2 prediction, predicted/predictable; forecast, forecast(ed); projection, projected; estimation, estimated; anticipation, anticipated; expectation, expected
- 3
  - 1 By the year 2030 it is estimated that the population will have increased to nearly 70 million.
  - 2 Spectator numbers are forecast to rise dramatically towards the end of the year.
  - 3 It is projected that sales next month will be lower than this month.
  - 4 The forecast is for a substantial increase in passenger numbers./The forecast is that passenger numbers will increase substantially.
  - 5 Sales are predicted to climb at the rate of 20 per cent a year./It is predicted that sales will climb at the rate of 20 per cent a year.
  - 6 Attendances are anticipated to decline gradually in the next two years.
  - 7 It is expected that advances in technology will not slow down in the coming years.
  - 8 Ticket purchases are expected to recover in the third quarter.

**Writing Task 1 Page 68**

1

- 1 show
- 2 is
- 3 is expected
- 4 is predicted
- 5 will shrink
- 6 will see
- 7 is anticipated
- 8 will fare
- 9 represented

10 is  
11 compares  
12 is expected

2

Then, By contrast, While, but

## Answer key

3

Second paragraph: *It* refers to 'traffic volume from high-speed transport'.

Third paragraph: *This* refers to the whole sentence 'The former represented ...'.

Third paragraph: *The former* refers to 'railways'.

4

1 By contrast, By comparison

2 By contrast, Meanwhile,

3 but, whereas

4 Meanwhile, By contrast

5 whereas, whilst

5

1 High-speed transport accounted for 9% of traffic volume in 1990 while in 2050 it is forecast to represent 41%.

2 It is estimated that the proportion of the traffic volume of automobiles will fall to 35% in 2050 in contrast to 53% in 1990.

3 In 1990 automobiles made up the bulk of passenger kilometres (53%), but by 2050, this is forecast to drop to 35%.

4 In 1990 out of a total traffic volume of 23.4 trillion pkm, automobiles accounted for 53% compared to buses, railways and high-speed transport, 29%, 9% and 9%, respectively. By comparison, by 2020 it is anticipated that high-speed transport will jump to 41% with automobiles, buses, railways making up 35%, 20% and 4% respectively.

6

### Sample answer

The pie chart depicts different proportions of fuel type that generate energy in Florida 2007 compared with the forecast for 2017.

Overall, it is clear that Natural gas is the main energy generator for both years, while Renewables and Oil come at the bottom of the list. For example, the energy generated by Natural gas increased from 38.8 % in 2007 to 54.4 % in 2017. Next comes the energy production by Coal which accounts for 29.3% of the energy market in 2007, followed by a drop of 5.6 % in the forecasted year of 2017. As for Nuclear, although it represents the third energy generator in Florida for both compared years, the trend here is upwards reaching 15.9 % at the estimated period.

In contrast, there is a significant drop in the energy production for both Oil and Other sources in the two separate years from 6.7 % to 1.1% for the former and 11.1 % to 3.4 % for the latter. As for the Renewables, the decrease in fuel generated over the period is less dramatic.

Word count: 178

### Examiner's comment

A generally sound response with the main areas of the prompt covered and the main trends and counter trends identified. A sophisticated range of vocabulary is employed and the rubric is neatly paraphrased, although just occasionally the register and phrasing are slightly uneven. Errors in capitalization throughout.

Possible score: 7.5

## Review 5 Page 70

### Vocabulary

1

1 Do you think that modern civilization will change much over the next century?

2 Should we try to protect the remaining agricultural societies?

3 Are urban populations under threat from increasing violence?

4 Will the dominant cultures always be in control?

5 Are indigenous peoples under threat?

6 Do the governing elites have any idea what the lives of ordinary people are like?

7 Do thriving communities in inner cities have a beneficial impact on society in general?

8 Does the opinion of the general public influence governments?

### Word building

1 Electronic dictionaries are useless/not really very useful, because ...

2 Certain south-east Asian countries are much more technological, because ...

3 This country has many beautiful buildings, because ...

4 Bangladesh is populous, because ...

5 Agricultural jobs are very demanding, because ...

6 A luxurious life is not open to all of us, because ...

7 It is dangerous when astronauts go out into space, because ...

8 Traditional skills are going out of fashion, because ...

### Ways of looking at the future

1

1 leaves, I'll be sitting

2 will have landed

3 will lead

4 will rise, will certainly disappear

5 will be, will live/will be living, will be done, will be

2

2,3,4,5

Extract 1 is personal, the others are all more abstract.

### Proof reading

1 will have increased/will increase

2 ... , whereas ...

3 shows

4 passenger numbers

5 Traffic

6 dramatically

7 made up

8 The most striking feature

9 .... By contrast, ...

10 predicted

## Unit 6 Fruits and seeds

### Reading Page 72

2

a 4 b 1 c 3 d 2

Text e relates to the making of a juice drink.

3

a flowered, fruit, produced, seeds, fall, ground, carried, birds, animals, wind, drop, wait, spring, germinate, grow, process, repeats

b blooms, crop, picked, taken, factory, oil, extracted, distilled, essence, perfumes, toiletries

c lays, egg, leaves, plants, eggs, hatch, caterpillars, eat, leaves, form, cocoon, insect, emerges

d plants, produce, flowers, open, attract insects, pollinate, plant

4 fruit, ripens, collected, taken, factory, crushed, extract, juice, packaged, sent, shops, sold

Questions 1–4

- 1 C The phrase relates to the whole paragraph.
- 2 G The phrase relates to part of the paragraph: ... *but certain types are grown in home dooryards ...*
- 3 B The phrase relates to the whole paragraph.
- 4 D The phrase relates to part of the paragraph: *The pomegranate tree is native from Iran to the Himalayas in northern India ...*

Questions 5–8

5 FALSE. Paragraph B: ... *and extremely long-lived, some specimens at Versailles known to have survived two centuries.*

6 NOT GIVEN. The flowers are mentioned in paragraph B, but there is no mention of whether they are particularly enticing to bees and birds or not.

7 FALSE. Paragraph C: *The seeds represent about 52% of the weight of the whole fruit.* Note how the answer to number 1 helps you locate the answer for number 7.

8 TRUE. Paragraph G: *The plant favors a semi-arid climate and is extremely drought-tolerant.*

Questions 9–13

9 pits

10 stem

11 tips

12 development

13 suckers

**Vocabulary 1: Conservation** Page 76

1

- 1 e, c
- 2 c, a
- 3 e, b
- 4 b, d
- 5 e, a
- 6 b, a
- 7 d, b
- 8 c, a

2

- 1 views
- 2 lungs
- 3 stretches, area, spoilt
- 4 sights
- 5 safeguarded
- 6 Conservation, areas

**Language focus: Transitive and intransitive verbs** Page 77

1

- a Transitive
- b Intransitive

2

Intransitive: flowered, becomes, fall, drop, wait, germinate, grow

Transitive: produced, carried, repeats

NB *become* can be both transitive and intransitive in some circumstances

3

Transitive	Intransitive	Both
make	look	grow
produce	happen	decrease
collect	rise	smell
sow	flow	roast
harvest	emerge	increase
lay	occur	weave
pick	disappear	become
crush		

4

- 1 the sun
- 2 cereals
- 3 tea
- 4 cotton
- 5 a butterfly
- 6 flowers

5

**Possible answers**

- 1 The sun rises and goes down every day.
- 2 Cereals are reaped/gathered to make bread.
- 3 Tea leaves are harvested to produce a hot drink from China.
- 4 Cotton is white and is utilized to create a very light cloth.
- 5 A butterfly comes out of a cocoon to become a flying insect.
- 6 Flowers are colourful, bloom in gardens and look and smell very nice.

6

become bigger, grow tall, blossom, appear, come out, fall

7

seeds: sprout, eat, disperse, sow, plant, transplant, fall  
 saplings: become bigger, grow tall, sprout, appear  
 branches: become bigger, grow, prune, sprout, bear  
 tree: become bigger, grow tall, blossom, appear, bear, grow, transplant, prune, cultivate, plant, sprout  
 buds: appear, open up

flowers: become bigger, grow tall, blossom, appear, open up, pollinate, grow, cultivate  
 fruit: become bigger, appear, bear, grow, ripen, fall, harvest, eat, cultivate

9

- 1 seeds
- 2 are planted
- 3 transplanted
- 4 pruned
- 5 trees
- 6 become bigger
- 7 leaves
- 8 pollinate
- 9 fruit
- 10 ripen
- 11 harvested

**Listening Section 2** Page 78

Questions 11–13

11 B 12 A 13 C

Questions 14–17

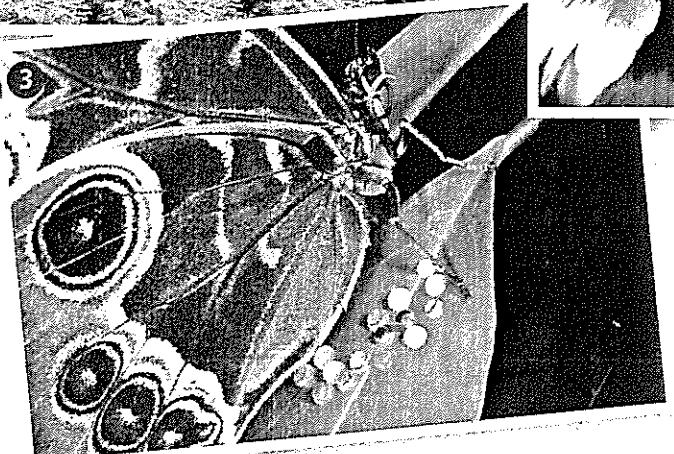
14 G 15 B 16 J 17 A

## 6

# Fruits and seeds

## Reading

1 With a partner, describe what is happening in each of the photographs below.



2 Skim each of the following short texts a–e and match them to the four processes shown in the pictures. It is not possible to match one of the texts to a picture. Decide what process it describes.

- a When it has flowered, fruit is produced which in turn becomes seeds. These either fall to the ground or are carried by birds or animals to other places, or they are carried along by the wind. When they drop to the ground they wait until the spring of the next year. Then they germinate and grow, and the process repeats itself.
- c It lays its egg on the leaves of plants. When the eggs hatch, the caterpillars eat the leaves. They then form a cocoon from which a new insect emerges.

b Once it blooms, the crop is picked by hand or machine. Then it is taken to a factory where the oil is extracted from the plant. It is then distilled to make an essence which is used in perfumes and toiletries.

d The plants produce flowers. When the flowers open, they attract insects which pollinate the plant.

e When the fruit ripens, it is collected by hand or machine and taken to a factory where it is crushed to extract the juice. Once the juice is packaged, it is sent to shops to be sold.

3 Look at each text again. Underline the words that helped you match them to the pictures.

4. Underline the words that helped you decide which process was being explained in the description that did not match any of the pictures.

## How to go about it

- Look at the picture and the title 'The Life of a Pomegranate'. What kind of information do you think the passage will contain? Decide if the passage is descriptive, factual or argumentative.

## READING PASSAGE

You should spend about 20 minutes on Questions 1–13, which are based on the reading passage below.

## The life of a pomegranate

**A** Steeped in history and romance and almost in a class by itself, the pomegranate, *Punica granatum* L, belongs to the family Punicaceae, which includes only one genus and two species, the other one, little-known, being *P. protopunica* Balf, peculiar to the island of Socotra.



**B** An attractive shrub or small tree, to 20 or 30 ft (6 or 10 m) high, the pomegranate is much-branched, more or less spiny and extremely long-lived, some specimens at Versailles known to have survived two centuries. It has a strong tendency to sucker from the base. The leaves are evergreen, opposite or in whorls of 5 or 6, short-stemmed, 3/8 to 4 in (1–10 cm) long, leathery. Showy flowers grow on the branch tips singly or as many as 5 in a cluster. They are 1 1/4 in (3 cm) wide and characterized by the thick, tubular, red calyx, having 5 to 8 fleshy, pointed sepals. Nearly round, but crowned at the base by the prominent calyx, the fruit, 2 1/2 to 5 in (6.25–12.5 cm) wide, has a tough, leathery skin or rind, basically yellow, more or less overlaid with light or deep pink or rich red.

**C** The interior is separated by membranous walls and white spongy tissue (rag) into compartments packed with transparent sacs filled with tart, flavorful, fleshy, juicy, red, pink or whitish pulp (technically the aril). In each sac, there is one white or red, angular, soft or hard seed. The seeds represent about 52% of the weight of the whole fruit.

**D** The pomegranate tree is native from Iran to the Himalayas in northern India, and has been cultivated since ancient times throughout the Mediterranean region of Asia, Africa and Europe. The fruit was used in many ways as it is today and was featured in Egyptian mythology and art, praised in ancient document and it was carried by desert caravans for the sake of its thirst-quenching juice. It traveled to central and southern India from Iran about the first century A.D. and was reported growing in Indonesia in 1416. It has been widely cultivated throughout India and drier parts of southeast Asia, Malaya, the East Indies and tropical Africa. The most important growing regions are Egypt, China, Afghanistan, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Iran, Iraq, India, Burma and Saudi Arabia.

**E** It is rather commonly planted and has become naturalized in Bermuda, where it was first recorded in 1621, but only occasionally seen in the Bahamas, West Indies and warm areas of South and Central America. Many people grow it at cool altitudes in the interior of Honduras. In Mexico it is frequently planted.

**F** The tree was introduced in California by Spanish settlers in 1769. It is grown for its fruit mostly in the dry zones of that state and Arizona. In California, commercial pomegranate cultivation is concentrated in Tulare, Fresno and Kern counties, with small plantings in Imperial and Riverside counties. There were 2,000 acres (810 ha) of fruit-bearing trees in these areas in the 1920s. Production declined from lack of demand in the 1930s, but new plantings were made when demand increased in the 1960s.

**G** The species is primarily mild-temperate to subtropical and naturally adapted to regions with cool winters and hot summers, but certain types are grown in home dooryards in tropical areas such as various islands of the Bahamas and West Indies. In southern Florida, fruit development is enhanced after a cold winter. Elsewhere in the United States, the pomegranate can be grown outdoors as far north as Washington County, Utah, and Washington D.C., though it doesn't fruit in the latter locations. It can be severely injured by temperatures below 12° F (-11.11° C). The plant favors a semi-arid climate and is extremely drought-tolerant.

**H** Rooted cuttings or seedlings are set out in pre-fertilized pits 2 ft (60 cm) deep and wide and are spaced 12 to 18 ft (3.5–5.5 m) apart, depending on the fertility of the soil. Initially, the plants are cut back to 24 to 30 in (60–75 cm) in height and after they branch out the lower branches are pruned to provide a clear main stem. In as much as fruits are borne only at the tips of new growth, it is recommended that for the first 3 years the branches be judiciously shortened annually to encourage the maximum number of new shoots on all sides, prevent straggly development and achieve a strong, well-framed plant. After the 3rd year, only suckers and dead branches are removed.



## Fruits and seeds

For questions 9–13:

Flow charts usually have a heading so use this to locate the relevant part of the text.

Treat the flow-chart like a summary. The text may be in note form so pay particular attention to the grammar.

Sometimes the information in the flow-chart may be in a different order from the reading passage.

For questions that require you to complete information, check the number of words required for each blank space.

### Questions 1–4

The reading passage has eight paragraphs A–H.

Which paragraph contains the following information?

**NB** You may use any letter more than once.

- 1 what the inside of the pomegranate looks like
- 2 domestic cultivation of the pomegranate tree
- 3 what the pomegranate tree looks like
- 4 the area where the pomegranate tree originated from

### Questions 5–8

Do the following statements agree with the information given in the reading passage?

Write:

**TRUE** if the statement agrees with the information

**FALSE** if the statement contradicts the information

**NOT GIVEN** if there is no information on this

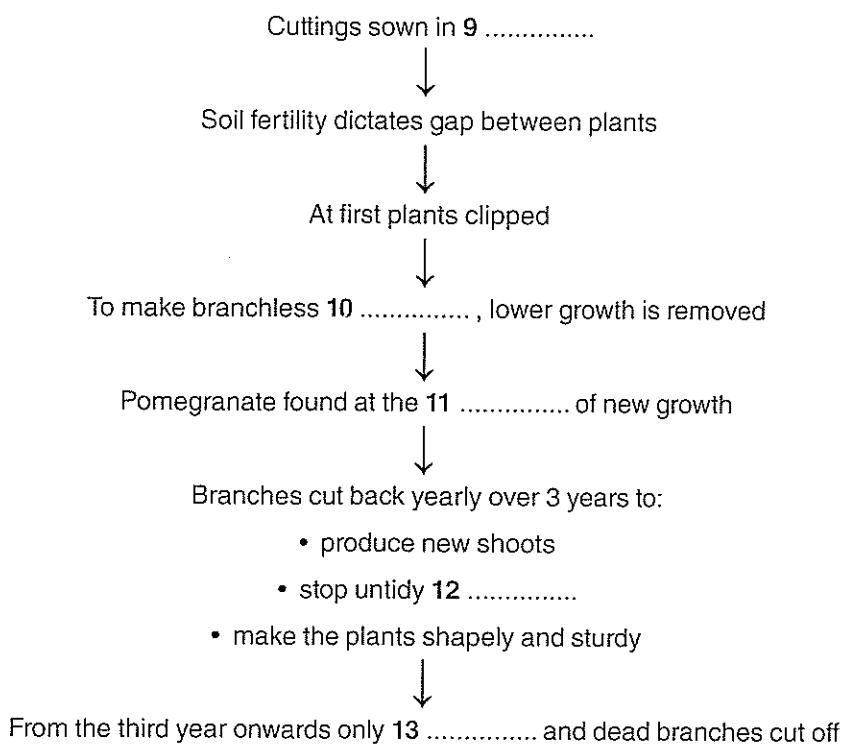
- 5 The pomegranate tree lives only for a short time.
- 6 The flowers of the pomegranate are particularly enticing to both bees and birds.
- 7 The seeds make up a small proportion of the weight of the pomegranate fruit.
- 8 The pomegranate tree can withstand very dry weather conditions.

### Questions 9–13

Complete the flow-chart below.

Choose **ONE WORD ONLY** from the passage for each answer.

#### The Reproduction of Pomegranates



## Reacting to the text

Is it important for us to know how things like trees, plants, insects and animals grow? Why/Why not?

How common is it for people in your country to grow their own produce? Is it less common now than in the past?

king

- 1 Work in pairs. Make short notes for one of the Part 2 topics below.

**Describe a park that you like.**

You should say:

where the park is  
when you first went there  
who you go there with  
and explain why you like going to this park.

### Useful expressions

*The park I'd like to describe is (spacious/quiet/calming/relaxing) ...  
I like going there because it is (an escape from work/a place to meet friends/near my home).*

**Describe something you have grown.**

You should say:

what it is  
when you grew it  
where you grew it  
and explain why you grew it.

### Useful expressions

*When I was very young, ...  
Not long ago, ...  
... in a garden on a small plot of land/on a terrace/in a window box  
... gave me great pleasure/helped me relax*



- 2 Work with a new partner. Take turns talking about the topic, using your notes to guide you. When you have finished, discuss with your partner whether you followed the notes.
- 3 Improve your notes and take turns talking about the topic again. Before you start look at the checklist on page 210 and choose one or more criteria you would like your partner to check as you speak.

## Vocabulary 1: Conservation

1 For sentences 1–8 below, choose a word from a–e to complete each of the gaps.

1 Tree \_\_\_\_\_ is crucial, because trees are the \_\_\_\_\_ of the planet; we chop them down at our peril.

- a extinction    b heart    c lungs    d preserves    e conservation

2 The countryside in my home country needs \_\_\_\_\_, because it is being \_\_\_\_\_ by more and more buildings.

- a spoilt    b a guard    c protection    d defence    e broken

3 In the \_\_\_\_\_ season the countryside is not at all \_\_\_\_\_ as it is buzzing with activity.

- a plant    b tranquil    c seed    d scenic    e planting

4 A huge factory, which is now derelict, \_\_\_\_\_ the landscape, but the scenery is still \_\_\_\_\_ with wooded hills and streams.

- a controls    b dominates    c extravagant    d spectacular    e rules

5 People come for miles to admire the \_\_\_\_\_ across the valley, because the area has some breathtaking \_\_\_\_\_.

- a scenery    b scenic    c outlook    d observation    e view

6 From the mountain top you have a \_\_\_\_\_ view of the valley, with beaches \_\_\_\_\_ into the distance.

- a stretching    b panoramic    c lengthening    d panorama    e landscape

7 People go to New York to shop and to take in the \_\_\_\_\_ like the Statue of Liberty, but they also like to visit open \_\_\_\_\_ like Central Park.

- a sightings    b spaces    c areas    d sights    e views

8 I think it is necessary to \_\_\_\_\_ the environment, because wildlife will \_\_\_\_\_ if we don't.

- a disappear    b depart    c safeguard    d uphold    e offend

2 For sentences 1–6 below, complete the gaps with a word from the a–e choices in exercise 1. Make any necessary changes.

1 The coastline has some breathtaking \_\_\_\_\_, which attract people from all over.

2 As trees produce oxygen they keep us alive, which is why they are often called the \_\_\_\_\_ of the planet.

3 The beach \_\_\_\_\_ for miles with lots of wildlife, but it is an \_\_\_\_\_ that is in danger of being \_\_\_\_\_ if we don't conserve it for future generations.

4 Tourists spend a lot of money travelling around trying to take in as many \_\_\_\_\_ as possible in a city.

5 Wildlife like lions and tigers should not be kept in zoos, but how else can they be protected from extinction and \_\_\_\_\_ forever?

6 \_\_\_\_\_ schemes that protect particular \_\_\_\_\_ of international importance like the Amazon forest are vital to all of us.

3 Work in groups. Read the sentences in exercise 1 and 2 and discuss the questions below.

1 Do you think it is important to have conservation schemes to protect the environment? Why/Why not?

2 In what ways can people safeguard the countryside?

3 Do you think the landscapes in countries around the world will be destroyed or protected in the future? Give reasons and examples.

## Useful expressions

I think ... is important/crucial/vital/essential/necessary, because ...

In order to ...

If we don't do anything, ...

One way is to ...

Another possibility is to ...

... can/could/should ... for example, ...

## Language focus: Transitive and intransitive verbs

Read explanations a and b below. Decide which describes a transitive verb and which describes an intransitive verb.

- A verb which takes an object and can be used in the passive.
- A verb which does not take an object and cannot be used in the passive.

 Read more about transitive and intransitive verbs in the Grammar reference on page 222.

Look at text a in exercise 2 on page 72 and underline the verbs. Then decide which are intransitive and which are transitive.

The verbs in the box below can all be used to describe processes and lifecycles. Some verbs can be transitive or intransitive depending on the context in which they are used. Decide whether the verbs in the box are transitive, intransitive or both and write them under the correct heading in the table.

grow make look produce decrease  
weave happen smell collect rise  
sow become harvest lay flow roast  
pick emerge occur crush disappear  
increase

Transitive	Intransitive	Both

 Work in pairs. Use your own knowledge to answer questions 1–6 below using suitable singular or plural nouns.

- What rises and sets every day?
  - What is harvested to make bread?
  - What leaves are picked to make a hot drink from China?
  - What is white and is woven to make a very light cloth?
  - What emerges from a cocoon to become a flying insect?
  - What are colourful, grown in gardens and look and smell very nice?
- 5 Write a sentence for each question 1–6 in exercise 4. Where possible, replace the verb in the question with one of the verbs in the box below or a verb of your own.

reap/gather harvest come out of bloom  
break up break produce plant cultivate  
utilize create increase exist keep in touch  
go down

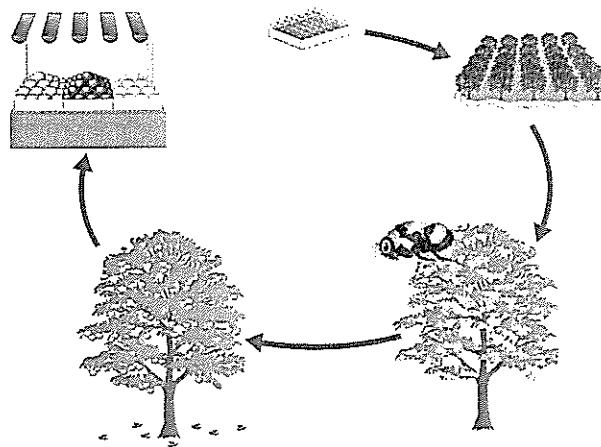
- 6 Underline the intransitive verbs and verb phrases in the box below.

plant pollinate blossom harvest grow tall  
disperse become bigger come out prune  
sprout transplant grow ripen appear  
open up cultivate bear eat fall sow

- 7 Work in pairs. Decide which verbs and verb phrases in the box in exercise 6 can be used with each of the nouns in the box below.

seeds saplings branches tree buds  
flowers fruit

- 8 Before you look at the text below, describe the lifecycle of an apple tree in your own words using the diagram below.



- 9 Complete the gaps in the text below with the verbs and nouns from exercise 6 and 7. Use the present tense and make any necessary changes to the nouns.

### The life of an apple tree

The 1 \_\_\_\_\_ of the apple tree 2 \_\_\_\_\_ in trays where they grow until they reach a certain size. Then they are 3 \_\_\_\_\_ into the fields. When they reach a certain height, the saplings are 4 \_\_\_\_\_ to increase the production of apples. As the 5 \_\_\_\_\_ grow taller, the branches 6 \_\_\_\_\_, and then the branches sprout 7 \_\_\_\_\_. The tree blossoms attract bees that in turn 8 \_\_\_\_\_ the flowers. In the autumn, the 9 \_\_\_\_\_ begins to 10 \_\_\_\_\_, and then the leaves fall. The fruit is then 11 \_\_\_\_\_ and the apples are graded, sorted and taken in special refrigerator lorries for storage or distribution to the market.

## Fruits and seeds

### Listening

(FJS Section 2)



or questions 14–17:

Study the map carefully. Do not assume that 'A' will be the first thing you hear, the description is more likely to start at the Entrance.

Think of words that are related to sequence, for example, *then*, *next* etc. as these will indicate steps in the sequence.

*North* is marked on the map, so think about the four points of the compass.

### 1.10 SECTION 2 Questions 11–20

#### Questions 11–13

Choose the correct letter, A, B or C.

- 11 The weekend scheme for teenagers was started up
  - A 15 years ago.
  - B 2 years ago.
  - C 10 years ago.
- 12 When the teenagers first arrive, they don't like it, because they can't
  - A contact people.
  - B use the Internet.
  - C watch TV.
- 13 The centre receives most of its money from
  - A donations.
  - B the nursery.
  - C courses.

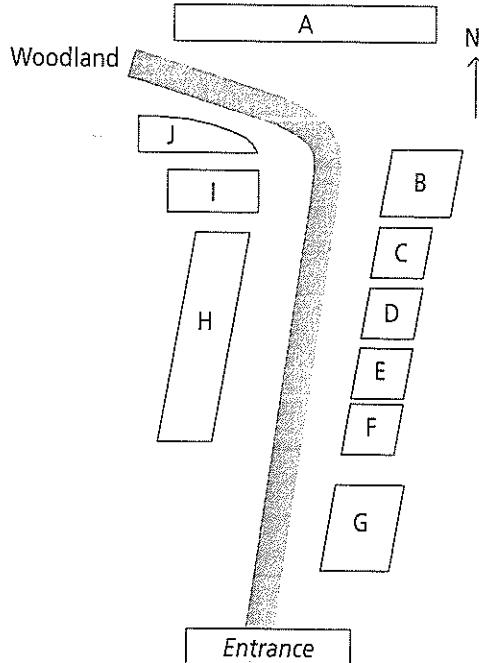
#### Questions 14–17

Label the map below.

Write the correct letter, A–K, next to the questions 14–17.

Fairbridge Countryside and Woodland Centre

- 14 Oak Lodge .....
- 15 Ash Lodge .....
- 16 Picnic Area .....
- 17 Plant Nursery .....



**Questions 18–20**

Complete the sentences below.

Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** for each answer.

- 18 As the centre is high up, there are spectacular ..... of the surrounding area.
- 19 As no trees have been cut down, the ..... has not altered for centuries.
- 20 As people walk through the woodland, people are asked not to remove ..... or .....

**Vocabulary 2: Describing sequences**

- 1 Decide which one of the following linking words or phrases in the box below cannot be used to describe sequences.

initially	first	at last	then	next	as soon as	once	after
before	following that		after that	finally	when	where	

- 2 Work in pairs. Underline the linking words in 1–7 below and find the first step in the sequence. Then decide what is being described and put the sentences in order.

- 1 If it is the latter, the broken components are mended
- 2 and the phone is then sent for sale.
- 3 Once a device is broken, it is either thrown away or sent for recycling.
- 4 These are then shipped to a different factory for assembly.
- 5 First, the various internal components like the chip are manufactured in one place.
- 6 After that they are dispatched to a central warehouse for distribution.
- 7 At the same time, the case and the SIM card are produced.

- 3 Compare this manufacturing process with the natural lifecycle described in the life of an apple tree on page 77. Decide which contains the most transitive verbs.

- 4 Match 1–6 below with a sentence or part of a sentence a–f to complete the sequence.

- 1 As soon as the wheat is fully grown,
  - 2 Before it is wrapped,
  - 3 Once the mangoes are ripe they are picked,
  - 4 The components are imported and then put together.
  - 5 When the tea bush reaches a certain height, the leaves are picked.
  - 6 Milk production goes through various stages. When the cows are milked, the milk is taken to a dairy where various products are made.
- a the chocolate is put into moulds and left to cool.
  - b It is heated to kill bacteria to make it suitable for drinking, or churned to produce butter.
  - c and sent to the market for sale, or kept in a cold refrigerator for export.
  - d it is reaped.
  - e They are then dried, sorted, blended and wrapped in packets for sale.
  - f After that the machines are put into boxes and transported to warehouses or to shops.

- 5 Match each of the words below to a sequence in exercise 4.

storage	delivery	pasteurization	harvesting	assembly	packaging
---------	----------	----------------	------------	----------	-----------

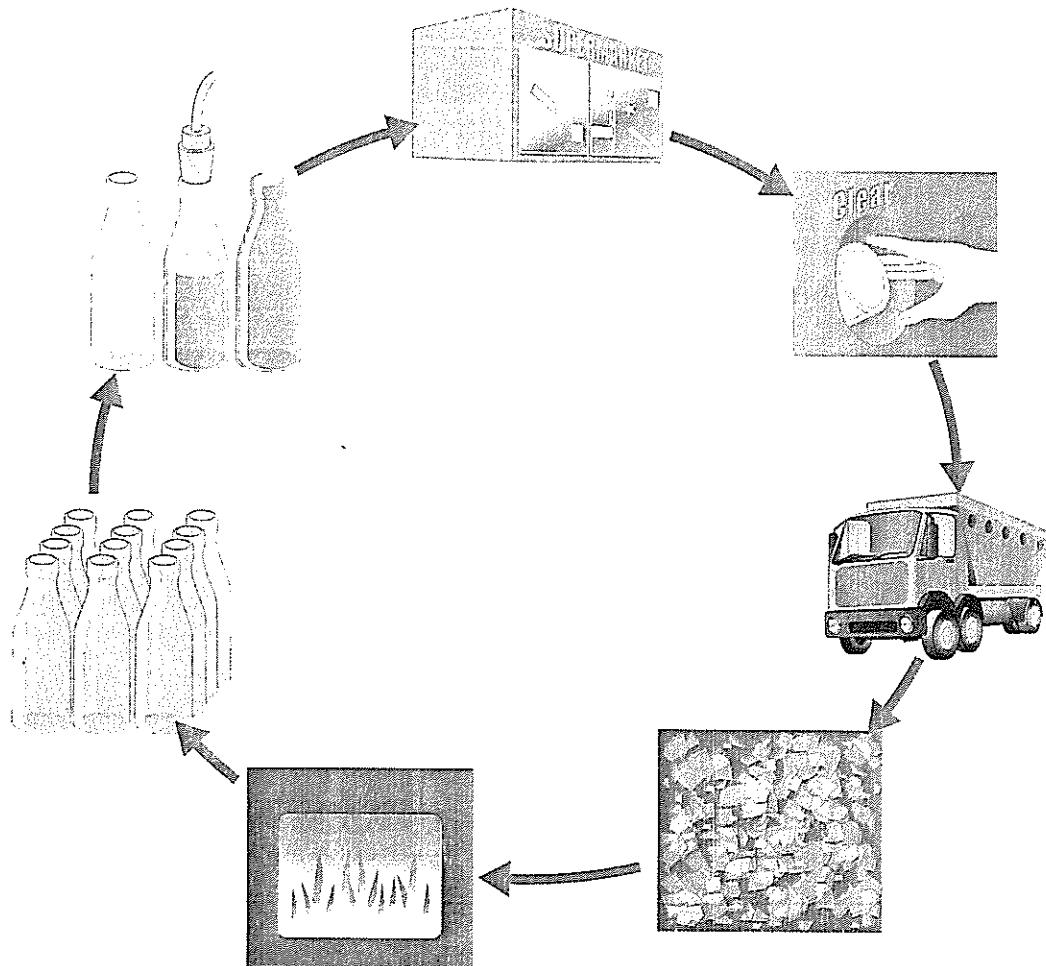
- 6 Decide what the verb is for each noun in exercise 5.

## 6 Fruits and seeds

### Writing:

- 1 Work in groups. Describe the steps in the process below. Try to use the words in the box.

throw away    recycle    crush    buy    rubbish    tip    landfill    collect  
transport    separated    colour    crush    recycled    new bottles



- 2 Complete the gaps in the text below with suitable linking words from Vocabulary 2 on page 79. Think of as many linking words as you can for each gap.

The fizzy drink is bought in the shop. 1 \_\_\_\_\_ it is drunk, it is either thrown away, in which case it is thrown into a rubbish tip, or it is put into a recycling bin. 2 \_\_\_\_\_ the recycled bottles are collected and taken to a special centre, 3 \_\_\_\_\_ the glass is sorted. After this step, the glass is crushed and 4 \_\_\_\_\_ it is used for making new glass. This glass is 5 \_\_\_\_\_ made into new bottles which are delivered to various bottling plants, 6 \_\_\_\_\_ the various drinks are added.

- 3 Find the word *step* in the text in exercise 2. Which other words can you use instead of *step*?
- 4 Write an introduction and an overview for the text in exercise 2.

- 5 Write your own answer for the Task 1 question below. When you have finished, check your answer using the checklist on page 209.

### How to do about it

- Write an overview using words to describe sequences such as stage, step and phase.
- Use the correct tense to describe the sequence. As this is a cycle that is repeated, use the present simple.
- Make sure that you use transitive and intransitive verbs correctly.
- Make sure that you use the active and passive correctly.
- Use linking words related to sequence, eg. *first, then, next, after that, subsequently, once, as soon as, when, where* ... .

### WRITING TASK 1

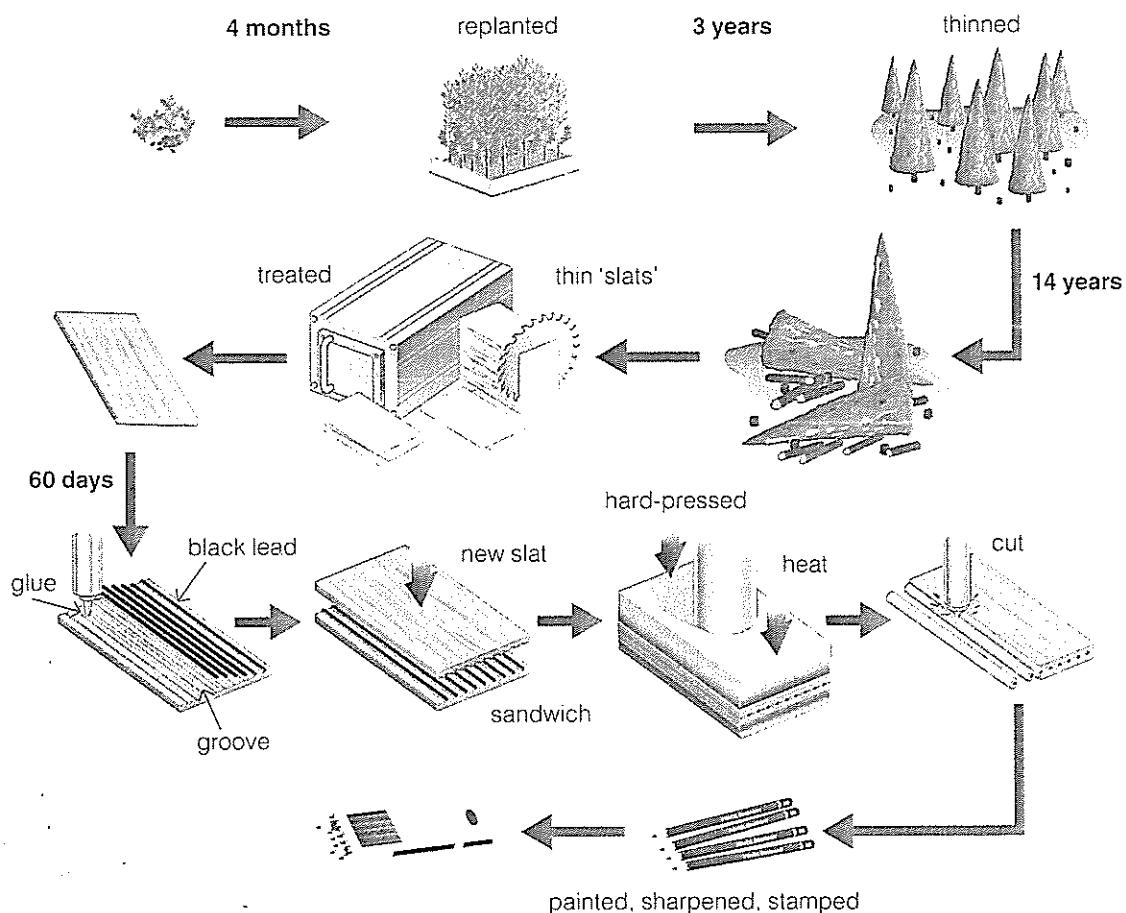
You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

*The diagram below shows the production of a lead pencil.*

*Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.*

Write at least 150 words.

The production of a pencil



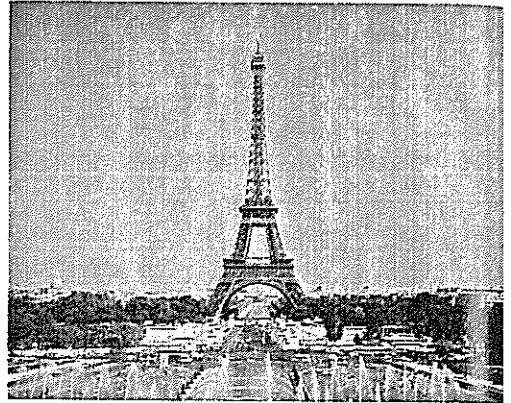
# 6 Review

## Vocabulary

Texts A and B below are short extracts from IELTS Speaking Part 2. Complete the gaps with a suitable form of the word in brackets.

### A

The countryside where I was brought up is completely 1 \_\_\_\_\_ (spoil). The area is part of a large 2 \_\_\_\_\_ (conserve) scheme, which aims to protect the trees from destruction. There are several notable landmarks which 3 \_\_\_\_\_ (domination) the landscape, but there are no factories or large motorways, which means that being there is very relaxing. The best thing is the spectacular 4 \_\_\_\_\_ (scene), and the 5 \_\_\_\_\_ (panorama) views across the valley.



### B

If you go to a city like Paris, you have to make sure you take in all the important 6 \_\_\_\_\_ (sightings) like the Eiffel Tower. Paris is a city which is famous for its open 7 \_\_\_\_\_ (spacious) as well as old houses. It is important that both aspects of the city are 8 \_\_\_\_\_ (protection), because if they 9 \_\_\_\_\_ (appear), it will be a loss for all of us.

## Transitive and intransitive verbs

- 1 In the text below, underline the verbs and decide which are transitive and which are intransitive.

*When the rain falls to earth, it is absorbed by the soil, from which it is extracted by trees and other plants. Any extra water runs off the land into streams or rivers, which are important for reducing flooding as they carry the water away down to the sea or to lakes. If there is a lot of rain, the water level in rivers rises and flooding occurs. Water is collected in dams to provide drinking water. When it is needed, it is sent to water treatment plants where it is treated and purified.*

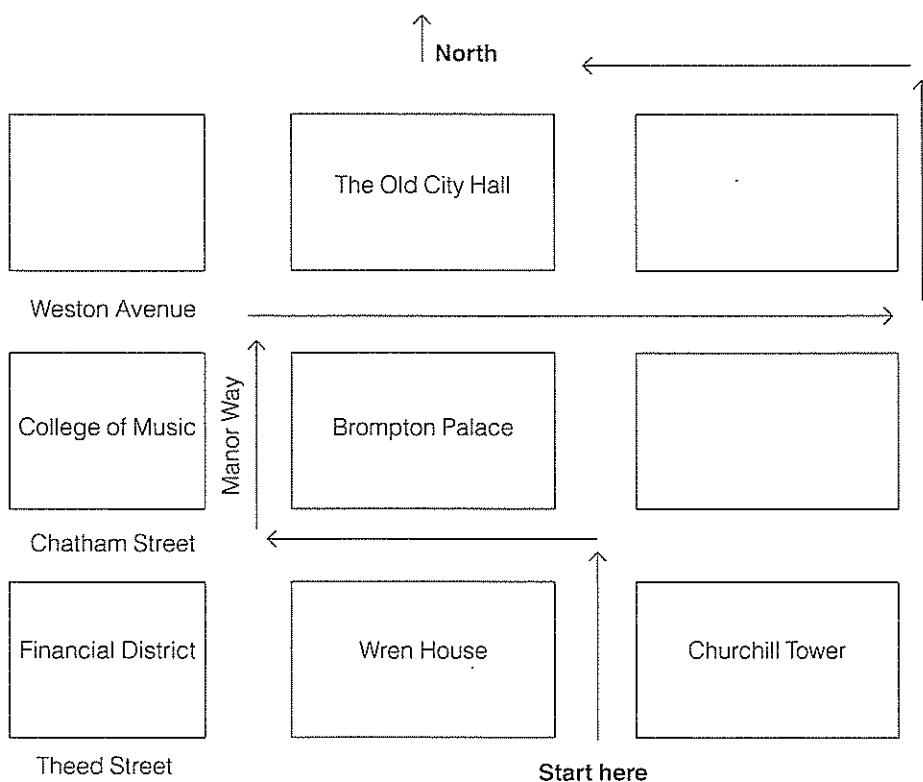
- 2 For 1–6 below, write sentences to describe a step or sequence using the words given. Add conjunctions such as *after* and adverbs such as *then*. Make sure that you use the letter *s* in the correct place.

- 1 sun/shine
- 2 rice/harvest/clean/store/sell
- 3 cotton/grow/make cloth/pick/weave/made into
- 4 fruit/pick/squeeze/dilute/concentrate/bottle
- 5 mobile/sell/use/become worn/throw away
- 6 butterfly/lay/caterpillar/eat/leaves/make cocoon/butterfly/emerge/lay/repeat

## Following directions

The following sentences take you on a tour through the map below. Follow the line and decide whether the sentences are correct or not. Correct the sentences that are wrong.

- 1 We start off here at the bottom of Theed Street.
- 2 The tour takes us past Wren House on the right.
- 3 We then turn left into Chatham Street.
- 4 We go past Brompton Palace which is on the north side of the street on our left.
- 5 Just after the palace we immediately turn right into Manor Way, where we stop and look at the building of the College of Music, which is on our left.
- 6 We then turn left into Weston Avenue to look at the Old City Hall, which is on the north side of the street.
- 7 We continue to the end of Weston Avenue where we go south.
- 8 We then turn left and finish our tour on the north side of the Old City Hall.



## Proof reading

In sentences 1–9 below, there is either a letter *s* missing or there is one too many. Find the mistakes and correct them. Try to complete the exercise in less than two minutes.

- 1 When the seed germinate, the plant begins to grow.
- 2 As soon as the wood is burnt, carbon dioxide is released into the atmospheres, which can then cause serious problems.
- 3 The diagram show how the water is purified.
- 4 Trees are the lung of the planet as they purify the air we breathe.
- 5 If the plant produces fruit, it releases the seed which are either carried away by the wind or birds.
- 6 More conservation projects need to be organized if we are to save the countrysides.
- 7 Pomegranate are now found in many countries in the world.
- 8 What are the most common fruits in your parts of the country?
- 9 It is clear that there are seven step in the process.

## Introduction

In the IELTS Academic Reading module there are three passages which are from various sources like books, journals, magazines and newspapers. The passages do not require specialist knowledge for you to understand them. At least one of the three passages contains a detailed logical argument.

The question types used are:

- choosing suitable paragraph headings from a list
- identification of information using 'True/False/Not Given' questions
- identification of writer's views/claims using 'Yes/No/Not Given' questions
- multiple-choice
- short-answer
- sentence completion
- notes/summary/flow-chart/table completion
- labelling a diagram
- classification
- matching

You will have one hour to answer 40 questions, which is about 90 seconds for each question. This means that you need to learn to move around the reading passage and the questions quickly. In the exam there is no time to 'study' the reading passages. In order to be as fast as possible there are three important strategies that you need to learn:

- scanning and skimming – these are reading skills that you need to employ at different times to answer various types of questions
- understanding the different questions types
- understanding when to leave questions you cannot do initially, move on and come back later

## Scanning a text

You can use scanning to look for words and paraphrases of words. How you find the words does not matter; and if you scan from left to right it is difficult to stop your brain from reading. Try the following methods, using a pen or pencil to guide your eye.

1 Scan from the bottom up through the text, looking left to right or right to left.

1 Text Text Text Text Text  
Text Text Text Text Text  
Text Text Text Text Text

2 Scan in a zigzag from left to right.

2 Text Text Text Text Text  
Text Text Text Text Text  
Text Text Text Text Text

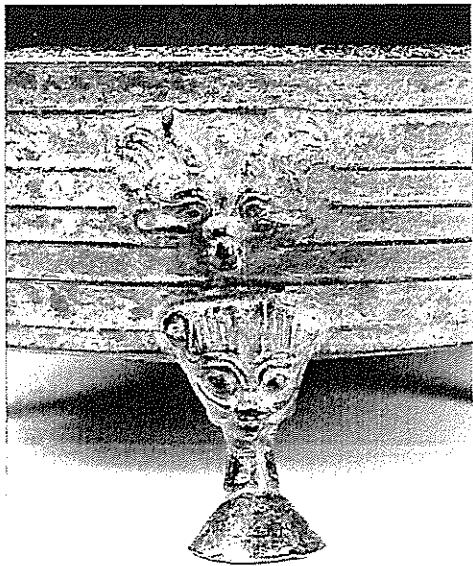
3 Scan in a zigzag from right to left.

3 Text Text Text Text Text  
Text Text Text Text Text  
Text Text Text Text Text

Below is an extract from a reading passage. Scan the paragraphs for the words below.

1 linear    2 sacred    3 elite    4 symbolic    5 complicated

## THE BRONZE AGE: XIA DYNASTY



The Bronze Age in China refers to the period between about 2000 and 771 BC, when bronze was produced on a massive scale for weapons and ritual objects used by the ruling elite. Traditional Chinese histories, written in later centuries, speak of a series of ancient rulers who invented agriculture, writing, and the arts of government. The last of these legendary rulers, Yu, is credited with controlling floods and founding the Xia dynasty. Yu also cast nine sacred bronze vessels that became symbolic of the right to rule, and these were passed on to subsequent dynasties. While the account in the traditional histories is linear, with states

following one another in a logical progression, the archaeological record reveals a more complicated picture of Bronze Age China.

Archaeological investigation has confirmed much of the legendary history of the dynasty following the Xia – the Shang – but the existence of Xia itself is still debated. Today Chinese scholars generally identify Xia with the Erlitou culture, but debate continues on whether Erlitou represents an early stage of the Shang dynasty, or whether it is entirely unique. In any event, new prototypes emerged at Erlitou – in architecture, bronze vessels, tomb structures, and weapons – that greatly influenced material culture in the Shang and subsequent Zhou dynasties.

### Skimming a text

Skimming involves moving over the text quickly without engaging deeply in order to get a general understanding. Work in pairs. Read alternate sentences in the text above only using the nouns and verbs and see how much you can understand.

### Understanding 'True/False/Not Given' statements

'True/False/Not Given' statements are used to check if statements agree with information in the reading passage.

- 1 Work in pairs. Without looking back at the extract on page 85, underline the words which you think are the most important to help you understand the meaning in the 'True/False/Not Given' sentences 1–10 below. Use the list a–j to help you identify the important words.
  - a verbs to do with cause and effect, for example, *lead to, bring about*
  - b restricting words, for example, *only*
  - c quantities, for example, *all, majority, little*
  - d adjectives that qualify, for example, *particular, inevitable, mistaken, higher*
  - e adverbs that qualify, for example, *largely, slightly*
  - f numbers
  - g 'negative' verbs, for example, *ignore, fail*
  - h verbs/phrases that indicate doubt, for example, *suggest: It is suggested ...*
  - i comparisons
  - j verbs to do with linking, for example, *connect, link*
  

  - 1 The Bronze Age in China lasted more than a thousand years.
  - 2 Bronze was used more for weapons than for ritual objects.
  - 3 According to later Chinese histories, ancient rulers were only interested in the administrative side of leadership.
  - 4 Yu is said to have established the Xia dynasty.
  - 5 Ten sacred vessels were made by Yu.
  - 6 The sacred vessels were destroyed at the end of each dynasty.
  - 7 The Chinese Bronze Age was a simpler period than discoveries show.
  - 8 All of the legendary history of the Xia has been substantiated by archaeology.
  - 9 The Xia are connected with the Erlitou culture.
  - 10 The Erlitou culture had an impact on the Zhou.

  - 2 Scan the text to locate the information in statements 1–10 and decide whether they are 'true', 'false' or 'not given'.

### Understanding 'Yes/No/Not Given' statements

'Yes/No/Not Given' statements are used to check if statements agree with the claims or views of the writer in the reading passage – i.e. does the writer make a judgement about information in the reading passage?

Checking claims is similar to checking information. Look at the 'True/False/Not Given' statements above. All of the statements can be classed as claims, but only statement 7 could be classed as an opinion or view. For example, statement 1 cannot be an opinion because it is either a statement of fact or a claim. The same applies to statement 2 and so on. You can put *It is a fact that* or *I claim that* in front of all these statements, but you cannot say *I believe that* before the statements, because it is not a matter of opinion. Can you say: *I believe that water boils at 100 degrees centigrade?* It is a claim until it is proven.



- 1 Work in pairs. Look at the extract and statements 1–9 below. The words underlined highlight the views expressed in the statements. These words can occur in statements checking the views of the writer. Decide what the function of the words underlined is in each sentence.

## THROUGH THE LIBRARY DOORS

There are different ways to encourage people, both adults and children, to read. Some adults are clearly intimidated by the environment of libraries and bookshops in a way that children are not. Therefore, making libraries more appealing by creating an inviting environment that is modern and relaxing is likely to appeal to both young people and adults, even those who would not normally use a library. Offering facilities other than books such as a coffee shop, computers, DVD lending facilities and a wide range of magazines and newspapers will also entice people through the library doors. Once in, there is then a chance that some may look at books as people have a tendency to browse just as they might do in a supermarket or other shop. So maybe there is a place for teaching library managers marketing skills. This, however, may be a step too far for some people. Nevertheless, if the aim is to encourage people to read, then any solution is worth a try.

Starting young and using the young to attract the old is the long-term approach. Bookshops and libraries in the UK organize reading groups for young children, discussion groups, lectures and chess clubs, all of which are worthwhile activities for attracting readers. Reading groups for children have the added benefit of attracting adults who may not read themselves, but who may start browsing while they are waiting for their children.



Do the following statements agree with the views of the writer in the extract above?

Write:

<b>YES</b>	if the statement agrees with the views of the writer
<b>NO</b>	if the statement contradicts the views of the writer
<b>NOT GIVEN</b>	if it is impossible to say what the writer thinks of this

- 1 It is easier for children to go into libraries than some adult members of the public.
- 2 The best way to attract people into libraries is by making them more welcoming.
- 3 Libraries should be allowed to sell books and magazines.
- 4 People tend to browse when they enter any large building.
- 5 Marketing skills could be taught to those who run libraries.
- 6 There is a chance that teaching marketing skills to managers will be unpopular.
- 7 Having reading clubs for children in libraries is an effective measure.
- 8 Discussion groups are of little use in encouraging people to visit libraries.
- 9 Reading clubs are better suited to book shops than libraries.

- 2 Answer questions 1–9.

## Ready for Reading

### READING PASSAGE

You should spend about 20 minutes on questions 1–13, which are based on the reading passage on page 89.

#### Questions 1–6

The reading passage has eight paragraphs A–H.

Choose the correct headings for paragraphs B and D–H from the list of headings below.

#### List of Headings

- i Organizations observing coastal change and their specific duties
- ii The importance of geoscientists in coastal management
- iii The link between research and funding
- iv The complexity of making decisions about coastal defences
- v Sites that are of special interest
- vi A contrast between engineered and natural defence techniques
- vii The role played by the Environment Agency in preventing flooding
- viii The methods employed to check coastal change
- ix The need for an integrated approach to coastal management
- x Factors leading to coastal erosion
- xi How management plans for the coastline operate

Example	Answer
Paragraph A	x

1                           Paragraph B

Example	Answer
Paragraph C	iii

2                           Paragraph D

3                           Paragraph E

4                           Paragraph F

5                           Paragraph G

6                           Paragraph H



## The Impact of Coastal Erosion



- A** There is little doubt that rates of coastal change will escalate with enhanced rates of sea level rise and increasing storminess, both of which are associated with global warming. These changes are likely to have a significant impact on coastal populations and infrastructure. Sea levels are expected to rise significantly over the next century, largely as a result of the melting of ice sheets and thermal expansion of the oceans. Global warming will also change ocean currents, world weather patterns, winds, coastal currents, waves and storms. The increase in the frequency and size of the latter, which have an enormous influence on coastal change and near-shore sediment transport, will have a major impact on the form of UK coasts.
- B** Geological, archaeological and historical records are used to establish the nature of past coastal change. Monitoring of coastal change is also undertaken using a broad range of techniques including airborne laser ranging technology (LIDAR) and digital aerial photogrammetry. These techniques are used to determine coastal topography, coastal erosion, and shoreline position with high accuracy. The bathymetry of offshore areas is determined by several geophysical techniques including side-scan sonar or multi-beam surveys. In the UK geoscientists are widely involved in projects that address past coastal change and monitor how coasts are changing today. The principal aim of many of these studies is to understand the natural processes that govern coastal change in order to predict the patterns and rates of future coastal evolution.
- C** A broad range of decision-makers, including coastal zone planners, government and authorities require accurate and well-researched information in managing the coastal zone. Much of the impetus and funding for such research is derived from the Department for the Environment, Food and Rural Affairs (DEFRA).
- D** Some agencies have particular responsibilities for monitoring particular aspects of coastal change. For instance, the Environment Agency has responsibilities for flooding in England and Wales. Three national agencies (English Nature, the Conservancy Council for Scotland and the Countryside Council for Wales) are responsible for preserving flora, fauna and geological features, including those along the coast. The best examples of wildlife habitats, geological features and landforms are designated as Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSI: there are about 6500 of these covering about 9% of the UK land area). Many surveys are carried out by the Ordnance Survey, the Hydrographic Office or the British Geological Survey. Other monitoring schemes are run by other government research institutes, universities and local government. Some funding for UK coastal projects is derived from the European Union.
- E** Much of this research on coastal change forms the basis for integrated coastal zone management on a local, national and international level. In the UK, Shoreline Management Plans (SMPs) are required for coastal management. Each of the SMPs is required to consider coastal change and issues such as sediment transport in the near-shore zone. Most

## Ready for Reading

SMPs consider distinct parts of the coast, such as complete estuaries or sections of coast in which near-shore sediment is largely 'contained' within a coastal cell, or behaves in a consistent manner. SMPs broadly recommend, in scientific and technical terms, where: the process of erosion can be checked; the line can be held; 'managed retreat' of the coastline is the only option. Such evaluation is important given the high costs of coastal defences, which can only escalate in future years.

- F Currently about 44% of the English and Welsh coast is protected by some form of coastal defence. Difficult decisions will need to be made to determine how this percentage will change in response to the increased rates of coastal erosion caused by sea-level rise. These decisions cannot be made without widespread consultation and will need to balance the socio-economic needs of developers, landowners and residents with coastal protection and environmental groups. Furthermore, they will need to take aspects of European legislation (e.g. the Habitats Directive) that have been incorporated into British law, into consideration.
- G Coastal managers have to consider not only which parts of the coast they should attempt to defend, but also which type of defence is most appropriate.

Locally it will be best to defend coastal areas using traditional constructions, such as sea-walls, dykes, groynes and breakwaters. Such engineered 'hard' structures are expensive and may only result in enhanced coastal erosion on adjacent coasts. The alternative approach is to work with natural processes and create 'soft' engineered solutions, e.g. by encouraging accumulation of sediments in selected areas. For example, sediments accumulating in estuarine salt marshes protect the estuaries and associated human infrastructure from erosion, storm surges and coastal flooding.

- H Whatever approach is used, no section of coast should be studied or managed in isolation. The whole picture must be understood, in regard to changes in the past, the present position and how any coastal management scheme will be affected by future changes. The best and most sustainable options probably lie in an integrated coastal zone management approach. These may contain multiple response strategies that can be modified for different socio-economic factors and environmental conditions, working with natural processes rather than against them. Geoscientists have a key role to play in providing the foundations for such management.

### Don't forget!

- Read the stem and underline any words that you think will be paraphrased, for example, *accelerate* in question 7. This will help you locate the information in the text.
- Read each alternative as a complete sentence by combining it with the stem.
- Locate the information in the text.

### Questions 7–9

Choose the correct letter **A**, **B**, **C** or **D**.

- 7 Coastal change will accelerate as
- A coastal populations increase.
  - B various events in the oceans occur.
  - C sea levels gradually fall.
  - D the oceans cool down.
- 8 Methods like LIDAR are employed to
- A confirm the shape of the coastline of the past.
  - B halt the spread of coastal erosion to neighbouring areas.
  - C provide data on off-shore areas of the coastline.
  - D establish the shape of the coastline with great precision.
- 9 Some national agencies have
- A coastal and inland responsibilities for conservation.
  - B only inland preservation responsibilities.
  - C charge of designating SSSIs.
  - D a duty to monitor coastal and inland flooding.

- ◆ Check the instructions carefully. The summary can be of the whole passage or just part of the passage. The instructions for questions 10–13 tell you that the summary only covers paragraphs F–H.
- ◆ Always check the word limit.
- ◆ Always think about the types of words that are needed, for example, nouns, verbs, adjectives, etc.
- ◆ Do not write down any words on the answer sheet that are paraphrased in the summary.

### Questions 10–13

Complete the summary of paragraphs F–H below.

Choose **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** from the passage for each answer.

It will not be easy to decide how much of the coastline will have some form of protection in years to come. Any decision will need to be taken after 10 ..... , taking into account the needs of local people and agencies. 11 ..... need to look at the parts of the coast which they ought to try and protect and the most suitable defence. Local answers will involve the use of 12 ..... , such as breakwaters, but these ‘hard’ structures are not cheap and may only cause coastal erosion on nearby areas. Alternatively, methods like encouraging the build up of sediments in certain places may be the answer. In any case, no stretch of the coastline should be dealt with in 13 .....

### Recognizing and understanding basic text relationships

Work in groups. Learning to recognize the type of texts that are contained in the reading passages can help you to find your way around the text more easily. In your groups, answer questions 1–10.

- 1 Look at the heading of the passage on page 89. What does the word ‘impact’ tell you about the passage?
- 2 Is the word ‘erosion’ related to cause or effect?
- 3 In the headings you have chosen for paragraphs A–H, do any of them contain causes, effects or solutions?
- 4 Are these words for causes, effects and solutions, or synonyms?
- 5 Look at question 7. Is the stem the cause or the effect?
- 6 Look at question 8. Is the stem the cause or the effect?
- 7 In the summary (questions 10–13), find a synonym for the word *solutions*.
- 8 Is the passage based on cause/effect and problem/solution or is it historical?
- 9 Is the passage on The Bronze Age: Xia Dynasty on page 85 based on cause/effect and problem/solution or is it historical?
- 10 What other text types do you know from your own reading?

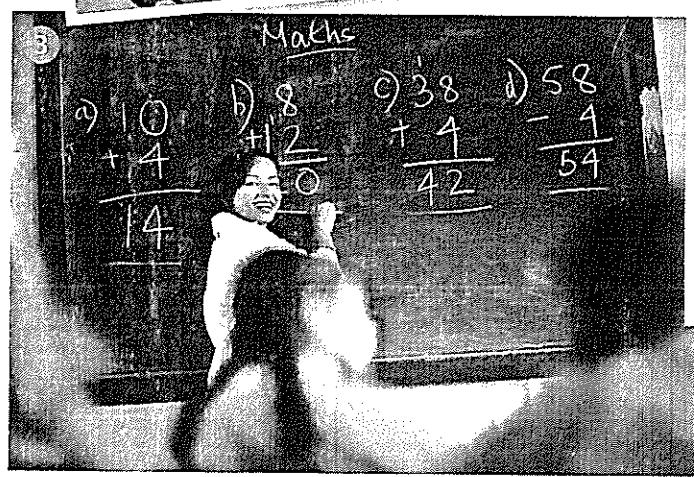
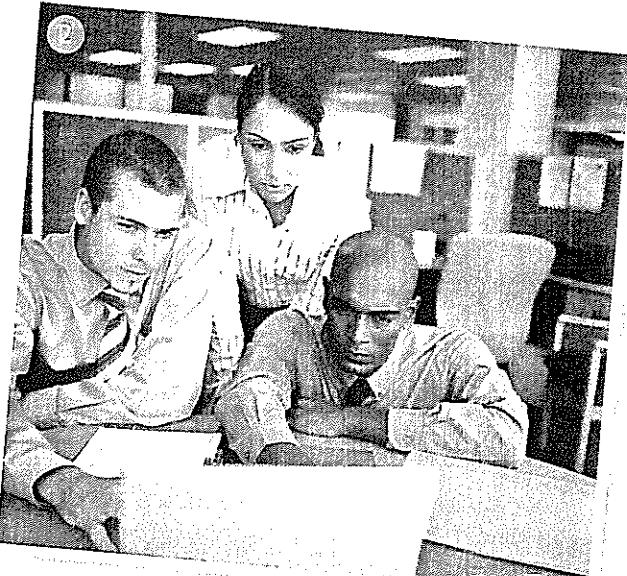
# 7

# The world of work and training

## Speaking

Part 1

- 1 With a partner, look at the photographs below and describe what kind of training is taking place and how it is being conducted.



## Don't forget!

- Talk about abstract details and avoid personal examples.
- Make sure you support your answers by giving examples and causes and effects.

- 2 Work in pairs. Take turns asking and answering the following Part 3 questions. When your partner has finished speaking, give him/her feedback using the checklist on page 210.

### Work and aspirations

Do young people today have the same aspirations as previous generations? Why/Why not?

Do you think it is good to have aims and goals in life?

In what ways can these aims and aspirations be achieved?

How different do you think the world of work and training is for young people today? Do they have more opportunities now compared to the past?

Is the way that students learn nowadays different from the past?



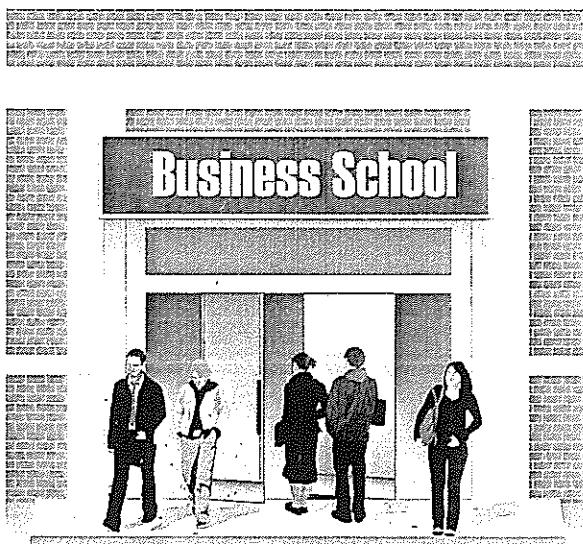
## Vocabulary 1: Work

- 1 Work in pairs. For sentences 1–8 below, underline the correct word in *italics*.
- 1 I want to be independent, so I'd like to earn my own *profession/qualifications/livelihood*.
  - 2 The *job/work/profession* ethic varies from country to country and from one profession to another.
  - 3 I would really like to have a good *job/work/livelihood*, which allows me to achieve my aims.
  - 4 It isn't easy holding down a *job/work/livelihood*, especially with children to look after.
  - 5 Is your idea of a *profession/qualifications/job* based on a 9 to 5 job?
  - 6 I am a teacher by *career/profession/qualifications*.
  - 7 In order to improve their *qualifications/job/work* prospects, and thus to climb the *career/profession/qualifications* ladder, students need to study hard.
  - 8 Being up-to-date is essential; otherwise, it is possible to miss out on the best *job/work/livelihood* opportunities.
- 2 Look at the sentences in exercise 1. Decide if you can use the word *occupation* instead of any of the alternatives.
- 3  Work in pairs. Use the list of skills below and your own ideas to decide which three skills are most important for your work life and your social life. Give examples and reasons for your choices.
- |                                |                            |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| • using the computer           | • calculating in your head |
| • writing longhand             | • socializing              |
| • playing a musical instrument |                            |

-  **TOP TIP**
- If there is no title, look at the last question and the illustration, then skim the questions and the text.

## READING PASSAGE

You should spend about 20 minutes on Questions 1–13, which are based on the reading passage below.



Few students taking a Masters in Business Administration (MBA) are there through sheer love of learning. Most want to learn in order to apply their knowledge once the course is over. On the other hand, the MBA is an academic course. How do you take account of these conflicting needs when it comes to assessment? 'In education generally – not just in the MBA world – there is a move away from traditional exams towards people looking for ways to make assessment more relevant,' says Jeannette Purcell, chief executive of the Association of MBAs (AMBA). She says that exams will always exist because so much of an MBA involves acquiring knowledge best tested through a written paper, but 'business schools are developing programmes to become more practical, more applied, using real life situations and assessment has to reflect that change.'



## The world of work and training

One reason for this is the rise in the executive over the full-time MBA, which means most students are studying while working for a company. Another is a changing approach towards learning. Oliver Westall, Lancaster University Management School's MBA director, says: 'When I began teaching many years ago, there was an attitude that we decided what ought to be taught, because we knew what students needed to know. Now, increasingly, especially when students come to our MBA programme with an average of seven years' experience, sensible faculties realise that students can bring a lot more to the table when they share their experience.'

Business schools therefore now often assess students on their ability to work as part of a team, while some even include an element of peer assessment in which students mark each other's contributions. Dublin City University assesses its MBA students through team presentations, team-written assignments, case study analyses, individual work-based projects, strategic organisational analyses and business plans. Exams account for less than 50 per cent of the total marks awarded, while teamwork accounts for around 30 per cent. Melrona Kirrane, academic director of the MBA programme, says team-based assessment raises issues every year. 'MBA students are enormously competitive and quite aggressive and hostile,' she says. 'They are there for their own purposes and they aren't impressed when other team members don't play their part.' But she says it remains a key part of assessment, because being able to function well in a team is vital in any business organisation.

Teamwork is also tested in consultancies for real companies, which is also playing an increasingly important role in assessment for many institutions. Full-time MBAs at Ashridge complete their written exams within three months of starting the programme, to provide a foundation of knowledge, and the rest of the course focuses on practical work. They can choose to take a consulting project for up to eight weeks or submit a 10,000 word dissertation. For the past two years, Coventry University has allowed students to do a company internship rather than a dissertation in their final semester. Three quarters of their mark in this is based on a report they present to the company, a further 10 per cent on the employer's assessment, and 15 per cent on a piece reflecting on their own learning.

Gareth Griffiths, MBA programme director at Aston University, where students undertake a consultancy project at the end of the course worth a third of the overall mark, says that while employers' opinions are important they have to be treated with caution because they can expect far too much or too little. Sometimes they cannot be objective because they hope to employ the student in future. This struggle to be objective is a common concern when it comes to alternative methods of assessment. 'I think any alternative to assessment by exams is not going to be as rigorous or as accurate,' says Purcell. But she argues that the more these alternative assessment methods are used, the better business schools will get at using them effectively. And there are ways of ensuring rigour, such as benchmarking across different courses and assessors, and making sure that assessments are based on more than one person's opinion, and on fixed criteria.

While AMBA (the Association of MBAs) would expect a course to involve some exams before it gave accreditation, Purcell says, it would be concerned if exams were the only assessment method. Meanwhile, few would suggest that alternative assessment methods are an easy option for the student. Marie Hardie, postgraduate internship manager in Coventry University's business school, says students find they not only have to get used to a company's culture in a few weeks, they often have to persuade them to part with money - 'Not an easy thing to do'. Overseas students can find non-exam assessments particularly stressful. While exams can be challenging for those whose first language isn't English, so can verbal presentations.

Dan Gray, an Ashridge MBA student, says that while he appreciates his course's practical focus, exams are still important. 'After all,' he says, 'exams test your ability to perform under pressure, and that's a critical skill for any senior manager.' But it is not the only skill. 'If you think about what employers want from MBA students, they want well rounded people who have demonstrated skills in all areas and have been assessed in many different ways,' says Purcell. Marco Romero's assessment for consultancy work he carried out for the Birmingham Chamber of Commerce during his MBA was so positive that he is still working for them.

### Questions 1–5

Look at the following people (Questions 1–5) and the list of statements below.

Match each person with the correct statement, **A–H**.

- 1 Jeannette Purcell
- 2 Oliver Westall
- 3 Melrona Kirrane
- 4 Gareth Griffiths
- 5 Dan Gray

#### List of Statements

- A** concedes that practical skills are important, but maintains that exams are a valuable assessment tool
- B** feels that testing by exams is more thorough and precise than other methods
- C** says that written exams are becoming more and more critical
- D** suggests the views of employers are not always impartial
- E** thinks that MBA students have more practical know-how nowadays
- F** states that evaluation by peers should be included in any course assessment
- G** thinks persuading companies to pay for courses is difficult
- H** believes team-based assessment to be essential in evaluation of MBA students

### Questions 6–12

Complete the sentences below.

Choose **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** from the passage for each answer.

- 6 Purcell believes that other methods of assessment are replacing .....
- 7 Business students are now tested on being able to function in a .....
- 8 At Dublin City University ..... still makes up less of the total marks than exams.
- 9 On full-time MBAs at Ashridge written exams are done early so students can concentrate on .....
- 10 One way to ensure the thoroughness of testing is not to rely on just one individual's .....
- 11 To students from outside the UK the testing that is not based on exams is sometimes especially .....
- 12 One form of assessment that is sometimes demanding for students who are not native speakers of English is .....

### Question 13

Choose the correct letter **A**, **B**, **C** or **D**.

- 13 Which of the following is the most suitable title for the reading passage?

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <b>A</b> The end of written exams? | <b>C</b> Practical assessment in decline?    |
| <b>B</b> The importance of MBAs    | <b>D</b> Teamwork and written exams compared |

### Reacting to the text

Do you think that written exams are old-fashioned? Why/Why not?

What kind of tests do you like or dislike. Why?

If you were able to create your ideal course, what would it be like?

## The world of work and training

### Listening

Part Section 3

- 1 Work in pairs. Make a list of points that you need to consider when you are doing a presentation. Then discuss which would be the most important for you and why.

#### TOP TIP

- Skim the questions to see what the topic is and underline words that will help you listen for the answer.

### 1.11 SECTION 3 Questions 21–30

#### Questions 21–25

Choose **FIVE** letters, **A–H**.

Which **FIVE** improvements does Olivia suggest?

- A check the equipment
- B reduce the pace
- C include more data
- D distribute the handouts
- E make the talk longer
- F improve the organization
- G make the talk shorter
- H check the room layout



#### Questions 26–28

Complete the sentences below.

Write **NO MORE THAN ONE WORD** for each answer.

#### JACK'S FEEDBACK

- 26 He thinks that he used an excessive amount of ..... in his talk.
- 27 He was frightened that they would appear .....
- 28 He feels the main thing for him is to control his .....

#### Questions 29 and 30

Answer the questions below.

Write **ONE WORD ONLY** for each answer.

- 29 What did the students and the tutor say the presentation was?

.....

- 30 What is the tutor going to photocopy for them to take away?

.....

- 2 Have you ever given a presentation? What kind of presentation was it?

Did you feel it went well? Why/Why not? What would you do differently if you had to do it again?

## Language focus: Conditionals 1

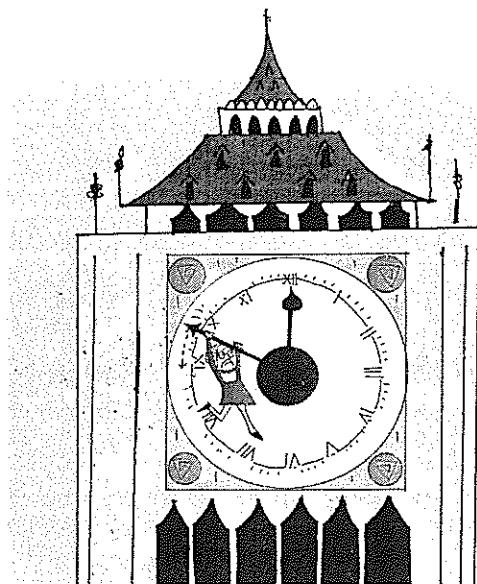
Look at the statements below from the listening practice on page 96. Identify the tenses and number the boxes as follows:

- 1 1st conditional
  - 2 2nd conditional
  - 3 3rd conditional
- If we had given ourselves more time, it would have flowed better.*
- ... but if I had to do it again, I'd change a few things.*
- If I do it again, I'll spend more time practising to make it run more smoothly.*

(6) Read more about conditionals in the Grammar reference on page 223.

For sentences 1–8 below, put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- 1 If young people \_\_\_\_\_ (give) opportunities to prepare for the changes affecting the world, finding a job will prove easier for them in the future.
- 2 If time and effort \_\_\_\_\_ (devote) to creating closer economic ties in the past, countries would have come closer together.
- 3 Unless young people invest time in acquiring new skills, they \_\_\_\_\_ (find) life harder in the future.
- 4 I would not have achieved the results unless I \_\_\_\_\_ (work) hard.
- 5 Going to university \_\_\_\_\_ (turn out to be) an enjoyable experience if students balance studying time with making new friends.
- 6 I think more money needs to be put into education; otherwise, the high standards we have reached \_\_\_\_\_ (decline).
- 7 If people pursued their goals, they \_\_\_\_\_ (succeed) whatever happened.
- 8 Many people would love to turn the clock back and lead the same life again if they \_\_\_\_\_ (have) the chance.



- 3 (O) Work in pairs. Each person should choose one of the statements in exercise 2. Discuss each statement by explaining why you agree or disagree with it. Give reasons and examples.
- 4 Complete sentences 1–6 below with your own words.
  - 1 Were the government to take more responsibility for people's training needs, then ...
  - 2 Had I been able to choose ...
  - 3 If the change in the pace of life continues at its current rate, ...
  - 4 If people are not adaptable and prepared to change jobs, then ...
  - 5 It is important for everyone nowadays to aim to have some kind of profession; otherwise, ...
  - 6 Unless my parents had been prepared to sacrifice a lot to educate me, ...
- 5 For 1–6 below decide which word is missing in each sentence.
  - 1 The educational process for children is free of unnecessary stress, they won't develop properly.
  - 2 Had there been skills shortages in rich countries, workers from poorer countries would not have moved there.
  - 3 If my father had not migrated to Australia, I have been born in Japan.
  - 4 If people did have qualifications, it would be more difficult to assess their suitability for a job.
  - 5 Some adults had better literacy and numeracy skills, they would access the job market more easily.
  - 6 Had universities permitted to expand faster, there would have been a more skilled workforce now.
- 6 (O) Work in pairs. Take turns asking and answering the following questions. You will need to decide which questions are relevant to your partner.
  - 1 What would happen if you didn't go to university?
  - 2 What would have happened if you hadn't learnt English?
  - 3 What will you do if you get through university?
  - 4 If you had another chance, would you follow a different career path?
  - 5 Were you to go to university, how would it change your life?
- 7 (O) Do you think success as a student and in life in general is a matter of luck or a result of planning? Give reasons and examples.



## The world of work and training

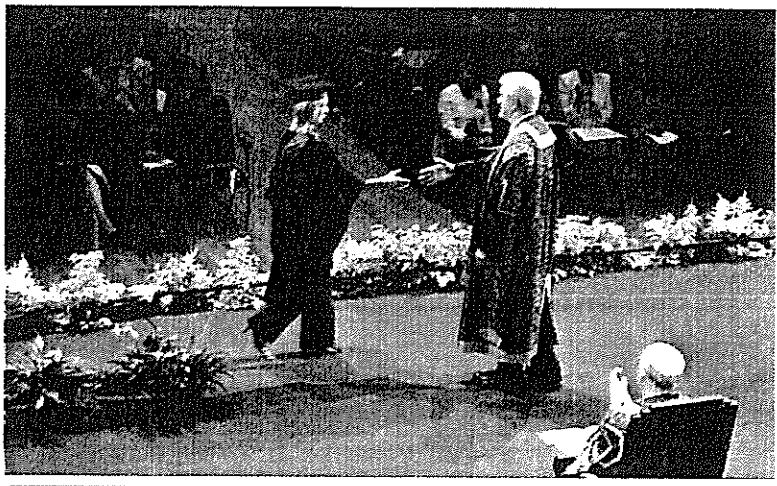
### Vocabulary 2: Collocations

- 1 Work in pairs. For 1–10 below, underline the word or phrase in each list which cannot be used with the noun in *italics*.

1 <i>benefit</i>	considerable / enjoy / make / derive / accrue / gain / financial
2 <i>advantage</i>	huge / considerable / education / enjoy / gain / outweigh / take
3 <i>opportunity</i>	ample / once in a lifetime / silver / career / provide / seize / squander
4 <i>success</i>	enormous / large / enjoy / achieve / guarantee / depends on
5 <i>prospects</i>	excellent / get / offer / boost / damage / long-term / employment / career
6 <i>disadvantage</i>	distinct / obvious / suffer / have / enjoy / offset
7 <i>failure</i>	total / complete / achieve / result in / end in / expect
8 <i>achievement</i>	outstanding / accrue / impressive / proudest / represent / a lack of
9 <i>improvement</i>	huge / massive / show / make / take up / scope / room
10 <i>chance</i>	good / deserve / give somebody / throw away / possess / arise / take

- 2 Complete the gaps in 1–8 below with a word or phrase from exercise 1. There may be more than one possible answer.

- 1 Achieving \_\_\_\_\_ in life depends on many factors like qualifications, but it cannot always be \_\_\_\_\_ by having them.
- 2 Even if an academic career ends in \_\_\_\_\_, it does not mean that someone's \_\_\_\_\_ career \_\_\_\_\_ are seriously \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ a fair \_\_\_\_\_ at succeeding in life, but all too often people squander the opportunity.
- 4 I made a huge \_\_\_\_\_ in my last years at school, but looking back there was certainly \_\_\_\_\_ for more.
- 5 A person who has a vocational education in plumbing or engineering does not suffer any \_\_\_\_\_ in life. On the contrary, having such an education is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 The financial \_\_\_\_\_ that \_\_\_\_\_ from acquiring training and skills mean that one can enjoy the fruits of one's labours.
- 7 Finding my first job \_\_\_\_\_ the proudest \_\_\_\_\_ in my life so far.
- 8 Going to university in my country is a \_\_\_\_\_ that needs to be \_\_\_\_\_ once it comes.



- 3 With a partner; discuss what advantages, opportunities and achievements you have had in your lives so far. Are there any opportunities that you have thrown away?

**Speaking**

- 1 Prepare brief notes for one of the following Part 2 task cards. Limit yourself to no more than ten words. Use words and phrases from Vocabulary 2 on page 98.

Describe a school that you liked.

You should say:

where the school was

when you attended it

what it was like

and explain why you liked this school.



Describe an achievement that you will never forget.

You should say:

what the achievement is

when it happened

what it means to you

and explain why you will never forget this achievement.

- 2 With a partner, take turns talking about the topic. When your partner has finished speaking, give him/her feedback using the checklist on page 210.

- 1 Work in groups. Discuss the structure and content of the answer required for the following Task 2 question, using questions 1–4 below to help you. Before you discuss the question you may want to skim the reading passage on page 93 again and look at Vocabulary 1 on page 93 and Vocabulary 2 on page 98.

### WRITING TASK 2

You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

Write about the following topic:

*In the modern world there is a movement away from written exams to more practical assessment.*

*Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of this trend.*

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge and experience.

Write at least 250 words.

- 1 Do you have to write about both the advantages and the disadvantages?
- 2 Do you have to devote equal space to each?
- 3 How many advantages/disadvantages do you need to write about?
- 4 Do you have to use as many connecting devices as possible?



## The world of work and training

- 2 Read the model answer below and underline the words from Vocabulary 2 exercise 1 on page 98.

Testing students and workers takes various forms including written, oral and practical assessment. However, although written tests are still the most popular way to check achievement at work and university, a range of alternative methods like problem-solving, role-play, oral presentation and work-based assessment are becoming more common. Both approaches of evaluating student attainment are valid, but each tests different things.

Some people believe that there is considerable benefit to be gained from using written exams compared to more practical testing methods. For example, from an administrative point of view, the former are generally easier to deal with. Moreover, if factual knowledge is being tested, then it is easier to check it on a written paper than in a group problem-solving exercise. However, the obvious disadvantage of written tests is that they do not suit everyone. Take students in Italy where oral exams are used as a means of checking knowledge. Switching to written tests could then be problematic. Conversely, students used only to written tests would be at a distinct disadvantage, if they were asked to take a more practical exam.

Other people feel that written tests are of little benefit, as they do not always assess students or workers fitness for the vast array of opportunities that the real world of work provides. Functioning in the real world involves making quick decisions, working with other people and using different types of intelligence like emotional and social intelligence. Therefore, it makes sense to test in the same way. Those people who will enjoy success in the future will be those who are able to operate efficiently within systems and find their way around, i.e. the ones who can manipulate knowledge and use experience rather than possess knowledge.





- 3 Find words and phrases in the model answer that have the same meaning as each of the words and phrases in the box below. There may be more than one possible answer.

assessing/examining	preferred	various means	while	methods
enormous	derived	angle	on the other hand	be appropriate for
				use

- 4 Work in pairs. Find examples of the following in the second paragraph of the model answer. Underline the linking words that identify these functions.

- a result
- a condition
- a contrast
- an example

- 5 Work in pairs. For sentences 1–5 below, add punctuation to connect the information.

- 1 Learning skills as opposed to knowledge makes people more practical moreover it gives them greater flexibility as skills are often transferable.
- 2 Skills are very much in vogue however knowledge is also essential.
- 3 There are many skills that young people have acquired take texting for example this is sometimes criticized but it teaches language skills in a different way.
- 4 It is difficult to distinguish knowledge from experience furthermore skills are also linked to both.
- 5 If skills like manipulating knowledge are learnt then it will benefit both the individual and the economy.

- 6  Work in groups. Discuss the following Task 2 question. Then write your own answer. When you have finished, check your answer using the checklist on page 209.

#### **Don't forget!**

- Make a list of any words or ideas that come into your head related to both sides.
- Sometimes writing a full idea might take too long. 1–3 words are enough to remind you.
- As you make your list, do not exclude any ideas.

#### **WRITING TASK 2**

You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

Write about the following topic:

*In the modern world, more and more emphasis is being placed on the acquisition of practical skills rather than knowledge from text books or other sources.*

*Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of this trend.*

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge and experience.

- Write at least 250 words.

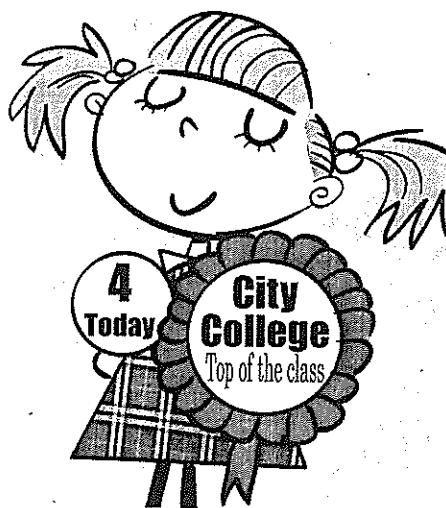


# Review

## Vocabulary

- 1 Match each sentence beginning 1–8 with an ending a–h.

1 He is a policeman	a work ethic always helps.
2 She earns her	b living working in a chemist shop.
3 I don't really like the idea of	c jobs is difficult if you have a family.
4 Holding down several	d career prospects.
5 I would like to improve my	e by profession.
6 I gained new qualifications to	f climb the career ladder.
7 I wouldn't change my	g occupation.
8 Having a very strong	h a 9 to 5 job.
- 2 For 1–8 below, unjumble the words to make a sentence and find the unnecessary word.
  - 1 qualifications needed for the job livelihood what are
  - 2 both and work is good for job you physically mentally
  - 3 in wood profession by making earns his carvings he living delicate very
  - 4 as profession a very noble working farmer is qualification a
  - 5 the future profession will have social work I'd like to do be connected the job with in
  - 6 is demanding career an like very occupation teaching but also having rewarding
  - 7 a engineering have possible work career in if I like would to
  - 8 in especially interested banking I'm in a occupation finance career
- 3 For sentences 1–8 below, replace each of the underlined words with a word of your own.
  - 1 They achieved considerable success in their working lives.
  - 2 I derived real benefit from a university education.
  - 3 My qualifications gave me a huge advantage at the interview.
  - 4 His employment prospects are enhanced by the opening of the new bank.
  - 5 Many opportunities have been wasted here.
  - 6 There is an obvious disadvantage to concentrating on only one learning mechanism.
  - 7 There is always scope for improvement, no matter who you are.
  - 8 It was such an outstanding achievement to come top in the exams.



## Conditionals 1

- 1 For each sentence 1–7 below, complete the first gap with *if*, *unless* or *otherwise*; some sentences may not require a word. For the second gap, put the verb in brackets into the correct tense.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ they had followed the guidelines, they \_\_\_\_\_ (succeed).
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ the country is to progress, then new technologies \_\_\_\_\_ (need) to be embraced with open arms.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ they don't put more effort into the scheme, it \_\_\_\_\_ (not succeed).
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ the government \_\_\_\_\_ (encourage) more people to take up training, it would benefit us all.
- 5 I think that more houses need to be built; \_\_\_\_\_ there \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a crisis.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ were we ever to inhabit the moon, I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) very surprised.
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ written exams are removed from the education system, it \_\_\_\_\_ (cause) enormous upset.

- 2 Rewrite sentences 1–7 in exercise 1 using the words below.

- 1 had
- 2 otherwise
- 3 unless
- 4 were
- 5 if not
- 6 if
- 7 otherwise

## Proof reading

- 1 Find and correct the mistakes in the following extract from an IELTS Writing Task 2 answer.

*If people feel that they are not given the same oportunities as their colleagues in the work place, they will then begin to feel disatisfied. That's when the problems set in. For the work environment to be relaxe, people need to work as a team. This can reduce quiet a lot of tension. Morover, by working with people rather than against them, the work enviroment will be much more comfortable ...*

- 2 Look at the following list of words and decide whether the spelling is correct. When you have finished, check your answers with a dictionary.

- 1 thoroughness
- 2 acheivement
- 3 enhanced
- 4 improvmment
- 5 profession
- 6 carier
- 7 qualfications
- 8 flexibility
- 9 conversly
- 10 assessment
- 11 memorable
- 12 excesive

# The history of geography

## Vocabulary 1: Nouns relating to places

Work in groups. Describe the similarities and the differences between the maps. Then discuss the questions below.

1



2



3



- What do you think the purpose is of each map?
- When was the last time you consulted a map of some kind? Why did you use it?
- How has technology changed the way we prepare maps?
- Do you think satellite maps invade our privacy?

## The history of geography

For 1–8 below, decide which of the nouns in brackets go in each gap. Some nouns are interchangeable. Make any necessary changes.

- 1 The poor \_\_\_\_\_ I grew up in is very different now. It used be a very rough \_\_\_\_\_, but now it is a quiet residential street. (area/neighbourhood)
- 2 Yes I had a favourite \_\_\_\_\_ I liked to visit, but it has become a real tourist \_\_\_\_\_. so I don't go there anymore. (place/spot)
- 3 The park in the business \_\_\_\_\_ is surrounded by a pedestrian\_\_\_\_\_, which makes it a real haven of peace. (zone/district)
- 4 My family home is in a magnificent \_\_\_\_\_ overlooking the sea. It's a \_\_\_\_\_ famed for its views. (region/location)
- 5 The \_\_\_\_\_ I now live in is quite built-up, but it still has quite a lot of big open \_\_\_\_\_. (area/space)
- 6 There have been a few burglaries in the \_\_\_\_\_ recently, but by and large it is a very safe \_\_\_\_\_. (vicinity/neighbourhood)
- 7 India has some beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ to visit, especially in the northern \_\_\_\_\_. of the country, where you can avoid most of the tourist hot \_\_\_\_\_. (regions/spots/places)
- 8 The house was built in a beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ on a hillside with a stream and surrounded by trees. This whole \_\_\_\_\_ is spectacular at any time of the year but especially in the autumn. (region/setting)

Work in pairs. You can build up a description of a place by adding phrases after the noun. Decide which phrases 1–10 you associate most with phrases a–j. There may be more than one possible answer.

- |                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| 1 on a cliff top        | a surrounded by trees   |
| 2 on a hillside         | b overlooking the sea   |
| 3 a wooded hillside     | c with no houses, just endless fields                           |
| 4 an open space         | d covered with trees  |
| 5 an empty desert       | e with lots of cars and people                                  |
| 6 a noisy neighbourhood | f covered with rock and crags                                   |
| 7 a temperate zone      | g fed by a high waterfall and disturbed only by birdsong        |
| 8 a sandy beach         | h with huge sand dunes and no people                            |
| 9 a secluded lake       | i teeming with wildlife   |
| 10 a rugged mountain    | j stretching into the distance and pounded by the Pacific Ocean |

For 1–4 below, put the words in *italics* into the correct order:

- 1 I live in a block of flats, *small* a *overlooking* garden. It's in a really beautiful and quiet *old buildings* *neighbourhood* *with*. And though it's in the heart of the city, it is a peaceful area, *sound* *only* *the odd* *by* *the* *of* *birds* *and* *disturbed* *car*.
- 2 My family home is on a beach *seashore* *miles along the stretching* *for*. It's an ideal place for sports enthusiasts *opportunity* *of boating* *with* *for lots of plenty* *and swimming*. The house, though *two built* *years ago hundred*, is still in good condition.
- 3 My family come from a village *by mountains* *beautiful* *surrounded*. In summer the *mountainside*, *purple* *its* *with flowers*, is a blaze of colour.
- 4 My dream location for a house would be a secluded lake with a *height falling* *by* *trees* *great waterfall* *from a surrounded* or even a hillside *with covered* *views out but with* *looking* *trees* *over* the countryside.

## The history of geography

### Speaking

Part 1

Work in pairs. Make questions with the phrases below.

- a region of your country*
- the neighbourhood you live in*
- a place with fond memories*
- a square you like*
- a seaside town you like*

### Useful expressions

- Can you describe ... ?
- Where ... ?
- When ... ?
- How often ... ?
- Why do you ... ?

Work with a new partner. Take turns asking and answering the questions you made in exercise 1.

Work in pairs. It is important to try to control the rhythm of your speech. Mark the stress in the words in the sentence beginnings 1–5 below. Put *o* above the syllables which have a secondary stress and *O* above the syllables which have the main stress.

**Example:**

o o o o

We went to a nice place by the sea yesterday.

- 1 I was living in a small flat when I first came here, but then I ...
- 2 We stayed in a nice hotel overlooking the sea, because ...
- 3 The place is very special to me, because it ...
- 4 The place I'm going to describe for you is ...
- 5 I like the area very much, because it's ...

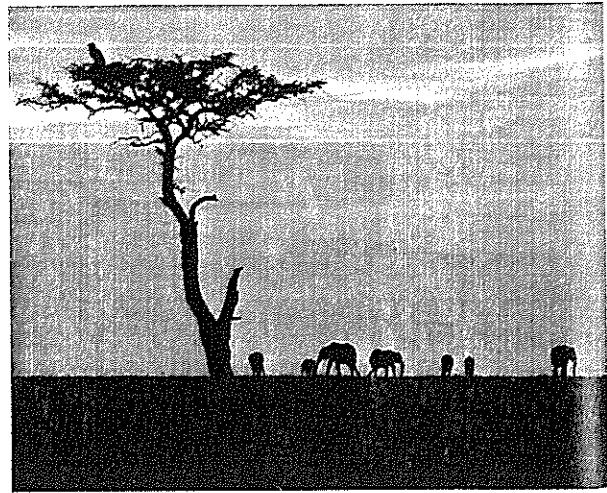
Work in pairs. Practise saying the phrases in exercise 3. First say the words with the stressed syllables (*went nice place sea yesterday*). Then say the sentence (*We went to a nice place by the sea yesterday*).

Work in pairs. Make notes for the following Part 2 task card. Where possible, use words from Vocabulary 1 on page 104 and the sentence beginnings in exercise 3.

Describe a place which is special for you.

You should say:

- where it is
- when you first went there
- what appeals to you about it
- and explain why this place is special to you.



Take turns talking about the topic. When your partner has finished speaking, give him/her feedback using the checklist on page 210. Then practise talking about the topic again.

### Don't forget!

- Time yourselves. You should speak for up to two minutes

# The history of geography

ning  
Section 1

How are lectures usually organized? How can you understand the main ideas in a lecture?

Read the notes in questions 31–40 below. Decide what the subject of the lecture you will hear is. Then decide how many major sections there are.

Look at each gap in the notes and answer questions 1–6 below.

- 1 What kind of information is missing? Is it a noun, adjective, verb, adverb or number?
- 2 If it is a noun, is the noun singular or plural?
- 3 Which answers relate to time?
- 4 Which answers relate to a reason for something?
- 5 Which is an idea suggested by the other words in the notes?
- 6 Which is a number or a percentage?

## 2.1 SECTION 4 Questions 31–40

### Questions 31–40

Complete the notes below.

Write NO MORE THAN THREE WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER for each answer.

#### Migration of early humans

Human migration has occurred throughout history

First significant migration occurred approximately 31 ..... years ago

Early pioneers did not survive

Earth experienced changes in 32 ..... about 70,000 years ago

New band of modern humans left Africa

#### Colonization

- China about 50,000 years ago and Europe about 33 ..... years ago

- the open steppes of Siberia some 40,000 years ago

- roughly 20,000 years ago arriving in Japan, then linked to the main 34 .....

- Australia was reached across the sea on 35 ..... 50,000 years ago

- America via Alaska some time between 15 and 13,000 years ago

#### Migration within Africa

Bantu occupied around 36 ..... of the African continent by 1,000 AD

Stimulus for the Bantu migration was perhaps the farming of the 37 .....

Population expansion led to movement into surrounding areas that were not heavily populated

Iron production introduced from 38 .....

The Bantu used iron tools to fell trees, clear forests and 39 .....

Iron meant they had a 40 ..... over their neighbours

# The history of geography

## Language focus: Referring in a text

- 1 Look at the following extracts from the listening practice on page 107. Decide what the words in **bold** refer to.

*If we look at the first slide here, we can see the route **this** first group of modern humans took as they made their way across the Red Sea here, which was then a dry bed. Then through Arabia and into what is now the Middle East. But **these** early pioneers soon died out.*

*But at that time, just like today, the earth was subject to shifts in temperature. About 70,000 years ago, **the** planet became warmer and another group ...*

- 2 Look at sentences 1–3 below. What does the word in **bold** refer to in each sentence?

- 1 The neighbourhood is very noisy because **it** is full of shops and restaurants.
  - 2 As the region is full of large farms, **it** is very rich.
  - 3 The cost of farming has increased dramatically over the period. **This** (rise)has led to inflation.
- 3 Why is it not possible to use *this* instead of *it* in sentences 1 and 2?
- 4 It is not possible to use *it* instead of *this* in sentence 3, although you can leave out the word *rise*. Decide why.

 Read more about referring in a text in the Grammar reference on page 223.

- 5 Underline the correct alternative in *italics* in 1–8 below.

- 1 The poor neighbourhood where I live now was very different a few years ago. *The neighbourhood/It/This* used to be much more pleasant then.
- 2 The region is full of many places to see. *That/This/It* is what makes *this/it/that* such a fantastic place to live.
- 3 The location for the new airport has been changed to somewhere completely different. *This new development/It/They* will cost a lot of money.
- 4 When I first discovered the woodland *it/this/that* was not known by many people, but now *it/this/that* is visited by dozens of people everyday.

- 5 The area has been transformed by the building of new factories and a business park. *This/It/That* has unfortunately made the place less attractive.
  - 6 Various industrial sites are for sale at the moment, but *they/it/these* are too expensive. *This/That/It* will stop the area from developing.
  - 7 The neighbourhoods in the north of the city are industrialized, while *these/they/those* in the south are more residential.
  - 8 More people have moved away from the city centre to the suburbs. As a result, *these/they/these* areas are becoming more crowded and expensive.
- 6 For 1–7 below, remove the repetition in each sentence by using a suitable reference.
- 1 The price of property in this region is increasing, and the increase in the price of property in this region is set to continue.
  - 2 The neighbourhood was poor once but the neighbourhood is rich now.
  - 3 I like visiting the seaside when nobody is around; visiting the seaside when nobody is around is very relaxing.
  - 4 If people make an effort to clean up after themselves when people visit parks, then parks will be much more inviting for the public in general.
  - 5 He suggested I should go away for a couple of days. The suggestion that I should go away for a few days is okay, but the suggestion that I should go away for a couple of days is an expensive solution.
  - 6 The government should pass laws to protect more areas of great natural beauty. Passing laws to protect more areas of great natural beauty would benefit all of us.
  - 7 Progress cannot be stopped. Progress is inevitable, even if the progress is very slow and the progress stops altogether for a while. But progress stopping altogether for a while is unlikely to happen.
- 7  Work in groups. Discuss the idea in sentence 7 in exercise 6. To what extent do you agree or disagree?

### Reading

*IELTS Reading Passage*

- 1 Work in pairs. As quickly as you can, find words in the reading passage which have the same meaning as words 1–10 below.

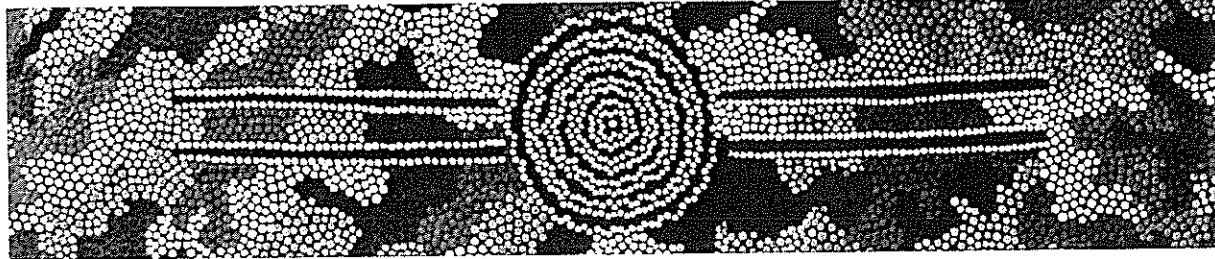
- |                   |                    |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1 intricate       | 6 future           |
| 2 intangible      | 7 non-spiritual    |
| 3 representations | 8 man-made objects |
| 4 associations    | 9 deep             |
| 5 local           | 10 assemble        |

- 2 Work in groups. Bring together the information you have about the text so far.

## READING PASSAGE

You should spend about 20 minutes on Questions 1–13, which are based on the reading passage below.

# Cartography



The history and study of cartography or map

- making shows how maps have influenced human affairs in the past. It necessarily involves not only the technical process used to make maps, but also observes the motives for their making and their role in forming society's views of space and place.
- All humans possess a complex spatial knowledge of their environment. This 'cognitive mapping' is created through direct experience and by communication with others. However, the more formal activity of map making usually arises from the social needs of complex, extensive, and often highly bureaucratic societies. For societies in which humans live and communicate within small groups, there is little need to make maps of the terrestrial environment. Thus, it is probable that the function of a few petroglyphs that can broadly be identified as maps from the Upper Palaeolithic period, c. 30,000 BC, was probably magical
- and cosmographical (perhaps associated with agricultural fertility rites), and most of the images
- are in abstract as if viewed from above. Important Neolithic examples include a representation of the Anatolian town Çatal Hüyük (in present-day Turkey) from about 6200 BC, and a series of complex topographical images from the foothills of the Italian Alps in Valcamonica dating from around 1500 BC.

The very terms 'map' and 'cartography', with their strong Western overtones, are unsatisfactory

- for small indigenous local cultures, even though iconic representations of territory that approach the European functions of maps have existed. The form of these spatial expressions may be in an oral or kinaesthetic ritual performance rather than an inscription industrial societies normally regard as a map.

There are several characteristics that indigenous maps share cross-culturally. One is to serve as a record of a creation story or genealogical lineage of a people, as in many Ojibwa migration charts. Here, where migrations, astronomical events, battles, and other events are recorded for posterity, the representation of time and space is conflated in the form of the map, so that events separated by many centuries may appear side by side. In Australia, reconstructions of the legendary tracks of ancestors, the Dreamings, are recorded in bark paintings and other media of Aboriginal art. Sacred and secular uses are often merged, so that a representation of the cardinal directions in the cosmos may be embodied in the plan of a village or house, as in the Dogon peoples of the Sahara.

There are also didactic or mnemonic uses of maps in local indigenous cultures. For example, the stick charts of the people of the Marshall Islands (the only group that made these forms of map) are a training aid for navigators for understanding the location and pattern of ocean swells. In Africa, memory boards are used in initiation rites establishing lineage of kingships and recalling the location of famous events. Among the Apache, notched sticks were used to remember landmarks for expeditions.

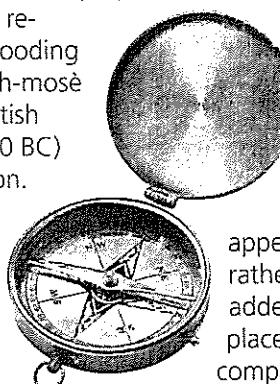
Surviving artefacts from the civilizations of Mesopotamia show a profound knowledge of astronomy for astrological purposes, as well as a practical knowledge of geometry and surveying in field surveys for taxation and irrigation purposes. These are mainly in the form of hundreds of clay tablets recording cadastral (landownership) information, mostly dating from the 1st millennium BC. Fewer map artefacts survive from ancient Egypt, but there is graphic evidence in wall

## The history of geography

paintings, inscriptions, and manuscripts of surveying instruments used to survey buildings and re-establish field markers after the annual flooding of the Nile had swept them away. The A'h-mosè or Rhind mathematical papyrus in the British Museum (dating between 1750 and 1580 BC) is an important source of such information.

Different types of maps were made in the European Middle Ages. The first of these are manuscript sea charts, mainly of the Mediterranean (the so-called portolan charts), originating from the 13th century. From the earliest

known chart, the Carte Pisane (c 1275), to charts of the 17th century, the method of construction appears to have been the same: they seem to have been compiled from bearings and rough distances gleaned from repeated voyages, written itineraries, or other charts. The radiating lines of constant direction commonly found on these charts appear to have been used for navigation purposes rather than in their compilation, for they are usually added later, and are rarely found in the same place on two charts. The mention of the magnetic compass on board ship in the 13th century has led some to associate it with these lines.



### How to go about it

For questions 1–5:

- First read the sentence beginnings and then the endings.
- Check for beginnings and endings that don't fit together.
- Scan the reading passage for words or paraphrases of words in the sentence beginnings. Put a box around the words in the text to help you refer to them.
- Match the endings to the words you have located in the text.

Complete each sentence with the correct ending, A–G, below.

- 1 The analysis of a map
- 2 Awareness of one's surroundings
- 3 A land map
- 4 A Neolithic example
- 5 The term cartography

- |  |
|--|
| A teaches us about the trade and commerce.   |
| B indicates the main settlements in antiquity.   |
| C reveals its impact on human development.   |
| D conjures up images that are related to developed, as opposed to traditional societies. |
| E develops through practice and contact with different people.                           |
| F serves very little purpose for isolated communities.                                   |
| G contains an image of a town.   |

### Questions 6–11

Complete the table below.

Choose **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** from the passage for each answer.

### The ways different groups used maps

People	Use
Ojibwa	employed maps where 6..... and ..... were brought together
Australian Aborigines	recorded information on various materials including 7 .....
Dogon	combined bearings in the 8 ..... with the 9 ..... of their living spaces

Apache	marked sticks as a memory aid for 10 .....
Mesopotamians	used geometry and surveying for various reasons with details recorded on 11 .....

**Questions 12 and 13**Choose **TWO** letters, A–E.Which **TWO** features of the creating of manuscript sea charts are mentioned by the writer in the passage?

- A The lines on the maps were drawn as the maps were made.
- B The lines on the maps seem to be used for map reading at sea.
- C The lines are always located in the same place on sea charts.
- D Other charts were not used in the creation of sea charts.
- E The process of making the maps is apparently identical in each case.

 **Reacting to the text**

Is modern technology like satnavs lessening our ability to interact with the environment first-hand and reducing spatial awareness in people?

**Vocabulary 2: Verbs relating to changes in maps**

Work in pairs. Match each sentence beginning 1–7 with an ending a–g. There may be more than one possible answer.

- |                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1 The centre of the town      | a replaced the old hospital.   |
| 2 Several old buildings       | b were knocked down to make way for a new supermarket.                       |
| 3 A new school                | c were pulled down, with a new multi-storey car park taking their place.     |
| 4 The old houses              | d were demolished to create a large open space which was turned into a park. |
| 5 Some old derelict factories | e was chopped down to widen the road.  |
| 6 A line of old trees         | f was converted into a restaurant and the cinema was torn down.              |
| 7 The bank                    | g was completely transformed over the ten year period.                       |

Underline the most suitable verb in *italics* in sentences 1–8 below. Then put it into the correct tense.

- 1 The railway *extend/expand* to the centre of town, and three new stations were built.
- 2 As the town *extend/expand*, all the open spaces were used up for housing.
- 3 An airport *construct/become* on a greenfield site on the edge of the town.
- 4 The neighbourhood completely *change/demolish* with the building of new apartments.
- 5 The area around the town *turn into/become* more built-up.
- 6 A number of dramatic developments *take place/convert*, which *alter/expand* the character of the town completely.
- 7 The area *turn into/become* less rural and leafy with the building of new offices.
- 8 The empty space near the university *develop/become* into a park.

## The history of geography

Work in pairs. Decide which verbs in exercise 2 can be turned into nouns with the endings below.

-ation    -ition    -sion    -tion    -ment

For 1–8 in exercise 2, decide if it is possible to rewrite the sentences using a noun and adding the verbs below. Rewrite the sentences where possible.

be    happen    occur    take place

In the following sentence, underline the phrase which would give a good overview.

The area *underwent a complete transformation/became different/turned into something new* over the period.

### Writing:

[IELTS Task 1]

Work in pairs. Underline the adverbs in each sentence 1–5 below which relate to the map on page 206 and decide if they are in the correct position. If they need to be moved, decide if you need to make any other changes to the sentence.

- 1 A residential area is located in the north-west of the town.
- 2 To the north - east of the residential area there are several derelict warehouses.
- 3 South of the warehouses in the north are located some offices.
- 4 West of the river and south of the residential area is situated the Arts Centre.
- 5 The university is sited in the north-east, west of the woodland.

Work in pairs. Write sentences to describe where the remaining places 6–11 are on the map.

Work in pairs.

**Student A:** Look at the map of the town of Sandring in the year 2009 on page 206, which has the names of places 1–11 missing. Listen to Student B's description and write down the name of each place.

**Student B:** Look at the map of the town of Sandring in the year 2009 on page 208, which has the names of the places marked. Describe to Student A where each place is located. When you have finished, show Student A your map to check their answers.

### Useful expressions

*in the north/south/east/west of ...  
north/south/east/west of ...  
to the north/south/east/west of ...  
there is ...,  
... lies, is situated, is sited, is located,  
stands, runs/flows*

Look at the map of the town of Sandring in 2000 on page 206 and the Student B map of Sandring in 2009. Decide if sentences 1–10 below about Sandring in 2009 are true or false.

- 1 The hospital in the west of the town was converted into a hotel.
- 2 Where the park stands there used to be a university.
- 3 The public gardens in the south-east of the town were destroyed to make way for an entertainment area.
- 4 The school was still in the same place in the west of the town.
- 5 In place of the park there is an industrial wasteland.
- 6 The fields on the south-west border of the town have become an industrial zone.

Do  
Yol  
ow  
Av  
inf  
Yol  
sur  
bu  
sur  
ch;

- 7 The quarry just south of the centre of the town has been transformed into a lake.
- 8 The coach station in the centre of the town was converted into a railway station.
- 9 A shopping centre was built in the north of the town, replacing part of the residential area.
- 10 Overall, the town has become much less rural with more buildings being constructed.

Words and phrases 1–10 below can all be used to describe change. Rewrite each sentence 1–10 in exercise 4 using the words below. There may be more than one possible answer:

- |                        |                         |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 build in place of    | 5 turn into             | 9 replace/build         |
| 2 give way to          | 6 give over to          | 10 urban transformation |
| 3 build on the site of | 7 become                |                         |
| 4 not change           | 8 reconstruct to become |                         |

Write an answer for the Task 1 question below. When you have finished, check your answer using the checklist on page 209.

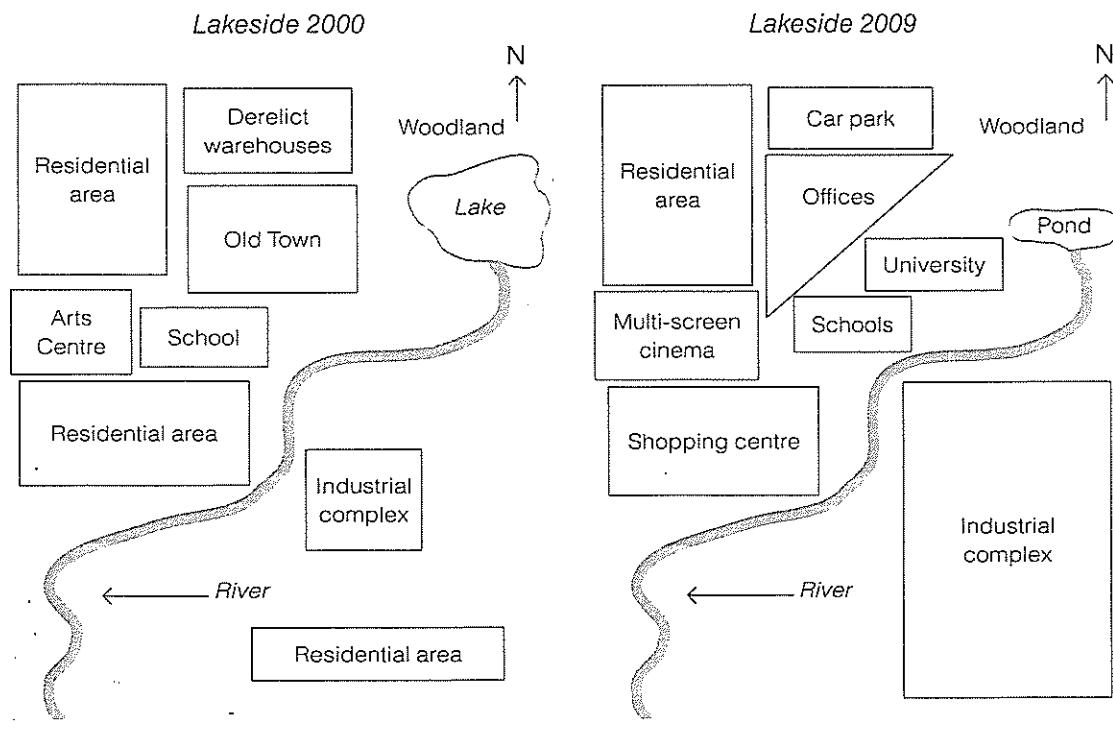
### WRITING TASK 1

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

*The maps below show the changes experienced by the town of Lakeside at the beginning of the 21st Century.*

*Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where necessary.*

Write at least 150 words.



# Review

## Vocabulary

Some of the underlined nouns in sentences 1–8 below have been moved between the sentences. Decide which sentences are correct.

- 1 The world is a wonderful region teeming with life of all kinds.
- 2 The mountainside provided a perfect location for the end of the film.
- 3 This animal is only found in the southern place of Africa and nowhere else.
- 4 The world is divided into different climate spaces.
- 5 There are very few open zones in the centres of major cities.
- 6 This is the exact spot on the river where I first learnt to swim.
- 7 There are very few empty houses in the district as there is a shortage of housing.
- 8 The financial vicinity of the city stretches along the river bank for miles.

## Speaking

In the extract from IELTS Speaking Part 2, the candidate is describing a special place. Complete gaps 1–5 with a phrase a–e.

- a If I remember rightly, the first time
- b What I particularly like about it is the
- c And why do I like it so much?
- d it would have to be
- e breathtaking setting of any place

In the extract below the candidate is talking about the same topic. There are seven words which should not be there. Underline the extra words.

And why

it is this place so special for me? Well, I think it's because it is really peaceful over there. I can sit for hours without seeing anyone, just gazing into the distance space; it is so relaxing. There are no any noisy streets with the car radios and people, only a peaceful riverbank surrounded by trees and flowers with the only sounds be those of the birds and the river flowing down through the wood. I am often wonder how long it will stay like that.

I think

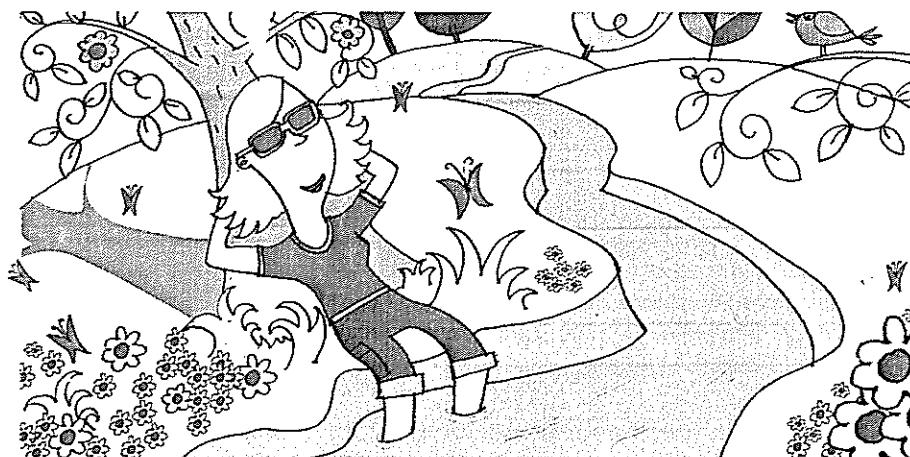
1 \_\_\_\_\_ a sandy

beach near where I was born. It has the most 2 \_\_\_\_\_ I have seen in the world. I don't believe it can be beaten.

3 \_\_\_\_\_ I laid eyes on it I was about 15 years of age. 4 \_\_\_\_\_ sand seems to stretch as far as the eye can see. On the other side of the bay there are mountains sweeping gently down to the sea.

5 \_\_\_\_\_

Well, it's ....





Mark the stress in the words in phrases 1–5 below. When you have finished, practise saying the phrases. First read the words with the stressed syllable. Then practise saying the whole phrase.

- 1 The place I'd like to describe is a hillside covered ...
- 2 A place that's special for me is a mountain with ...
- 3 The place I like the best is a park stretching ...
- 4 It has to be a forest teeming ...
- 5 I'd like to tell you about a valley surrounded ...

Complete the sentence beginnings 1–5 in exercise 4.

### Referring in a text

For 1–6 below, complete the gaps with *it*, *this*, *that* or *these*.

- 1 My neighbourhood is improving gradually. \_\_\_\_\_ is now a safer place to walk around at night.
- 2 The map was created by craftsmen of the highest standard. It is clear \_\_\_\_\_ were highly trained.
- 3 The Bantu migrated through huge areas of central and southern Africa. \_\_\_\_\_ led to the spread of the language from its origins in West Africa.
- 4 The government should try to improve facilities for people in your area, as \_\_\_\_\_ would surely help reduce crime.
- 5 And what can be done about the problem of the rubbish in scenic areas? \_\_\_\_\_ can be cleared away, but \_\_\_\_\_ is not the best solution to the problem. \_\_\_\_\_ needs more drastic measures. \_\_\_\_\_ can take the form of fines for people who dump their waste wherever they want rather than taking \_\_\_\_\_ to special rubbish dumps.
- 6 It is surely the government's responsibility to protect animals in the wild. \_\_\_\_\_ could be done by making the smuggling of endangered species from one region of the world to another more difficult by increasing checks on animal imports. \_\_\_\_\_ in turn would make ...

### Proof reading

As quickly as you can, underline the ten mistakes in the following model answer for an IELTS Writing Task 1 question.

The maps illustrates how the town of Marsden underwent a total tranformation in the twenty years between 1988 and 2008, changing from a small to a large town.

First, it lost the park in the north of the town, which was substituted by a supermarket. The hospital was chopped down and instead a five-star hotel was built surrounding by trees and a huge car park. The centre of the town also saw a number of change. Moreover, several skyscrapers erected on the site of the old factories and the university halls of residence were turned offices. The territory is also less green than it used to be with the main park east of the shopping complex being converted into a car park.

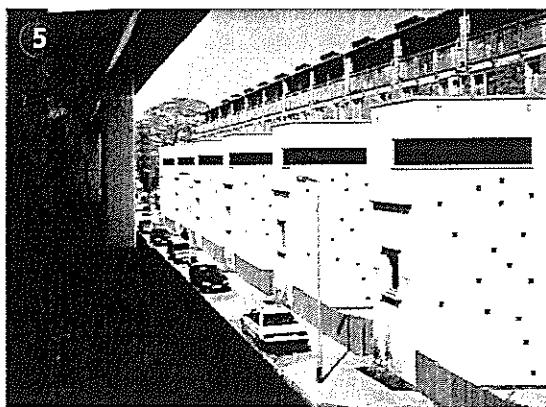
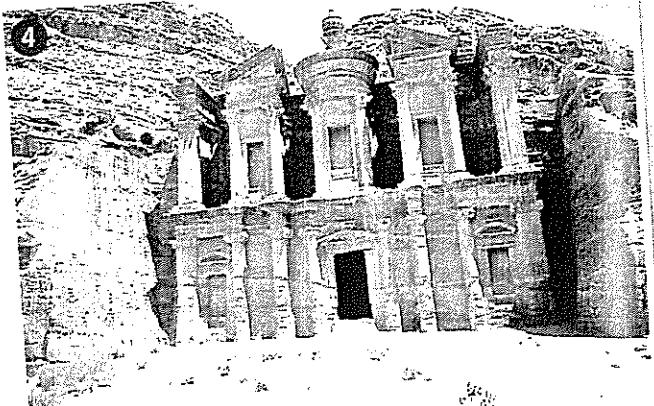
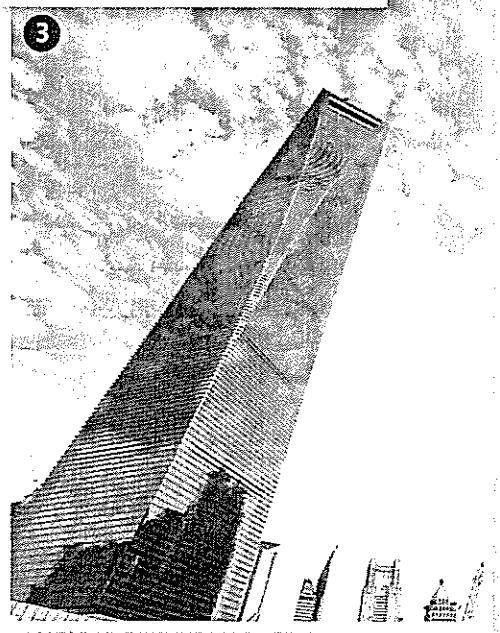
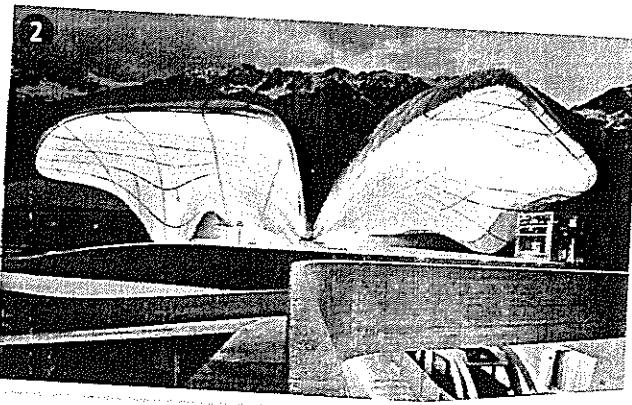
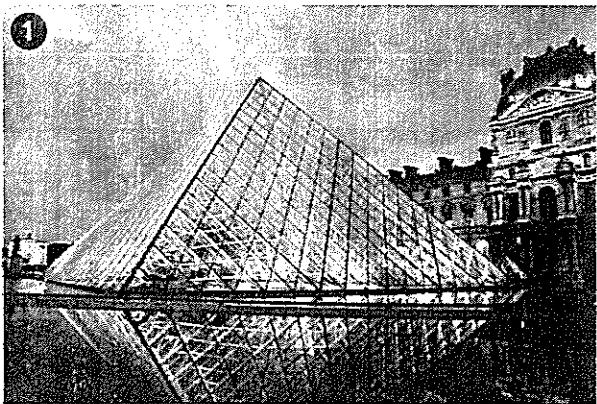
As the population increase there was a greater demand for housing. So the fields on the edge of the town were given over to housing estates, further increasing the urbanization of the area.

## 9

# What is beauty?

## Vocabulary: Beauty

- 1  Work in groups. Describe the buildings in each of the photographs. Name them if you can. Then discuss the questions below.



- What is your reaction to the buildings in the photographs? Do you think they are beautiful? Why/Why not?
- What is your favourite building or monument?
- Is it important to live in beautiful surroundings? Why/Why not?

- 2  In your groups, evaluate each of the buildings in the photographs in exercise 1. Rank the buildings according to how beautiful you think they are: 1 = the most beautiful, 5 = the least beautiful. Give reasons.

- 3 For 1–6 below, complete the gaps with a building from exercise 1 so that the statement is true for you. Then complete the statement using your own ideas.

**Example:**

I think building \_\_\_\_\_ is breathtaking, as ...

*I think building 1 is breathtaking, as it combines the old and the new and fits perfectly into the space it is in.*

- 1 I find building \_\_\_\_\_ very old-fashioned, because ...
  - 2 Building \_\_\_\_\_ says nothing to me at all, because ...
  - 3 Building \_\_\_\_\_ is not as beautiful as Petra, because ...
  - 4 I find structures like building \_\_\_\_\_ very depressing, as they ...
  - 5 Building \_\_\_\_\_ is very charming, but building \_\_\_\_\_ is very alluring; it makes me want to ...
  - 6 When I look at the photograph of building \_\_\_\_\_ it makes me feel nostalgic, because ...
- 4 Work in pairs. When you evaluate a building you can: A describe it physically; B say what effect it has on you. Look at the adjectives in the box below and decide which category they fit in, A or B.

evocative	overawed	tall	melancholic	thoughtful	ancient
spacious	dazzling	humbling	beautiful	magnificent	impressive
overwhelmed	emotional	ecstatic	high	overjoyed	stone
nostalgic		majestic			

- 5 Complete the gaps in 1–6 below with a word made from an adjective in exercise 4.

**Example:**

*When I saw the Taj Mahal for the first time it made a huge impression on me.*

- 1 They tried to \_\_\_\_\_ the town centre by putting flowers in baskets and painting and renovating the buildings, but it didn't work.
  - 2 Standing next to the Sphinx made me feel very \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 3 I was filled with \_\_\_\_\_ at the sight of the Himalayas. I was taken aback by their majesty.
  - 4 Thinking of places that I love sometimes fills me with \_\_\_\_\_, but this is not a negative feeling.
  - 5 When I look at photographs of my home country they \_\_\_\_\_ so many memories and usually make me feel homesick.
  - 6 The sight of the old people wandering through the ruins made me \_\_\_\_\_ about life and how things can change very suddenly.
- 6 Work in groups. Transform at least three sentences from exercise 5 by changing the noun to a verb or an adjective where possible.

**Example:**

*When I saw the Taj Mahal for the first time it made a huge impression on me.*

*When I saw the Taj Mahal for the first time it impressed me enormously.*

- 7  Work in pairs. Choose at least three monuments that you think represent important times in your country's development or are symbolic of your country. Describe each structure to your partner and explain why it is of importance. Try to use the vocabulary from this section.

**Listening**

INTERVIEW

- You are going to listen to a conversation between a tutor and a student about a film project. Look at questions 21–30 below and decide what the project is about.
- Work in pairs. You will hear words 1–10 below during the conversation. Check the meaning of the words. Use a dictionary to check the meaning of any words you don't know.

1 perception	3 take in	5 digital stills	7 access	9 fade
2 collage	4 grandeur	6 narrow down	8 discipline	10 click

**EVERYTHING**

- Underline the words in the questions that warn you that the answer is coming soon.

**2.2 SECTION 3 Questions 21–30****Questions 21–25**

Choose the correct letter A, B or C.

- 21 Malcolm thinks the subject of his project may not be

- A concrete enough.  
B interesting enough.  
C very academic.

- 22 Malcolm's reaction to India was one of

- A indifference.  
B dislike.  
C awe.

- 23 Malcolm feels the pictures he took of the Ganges etc. are

- A breathtaking.  
B interesting.  
C uninspiring.

- 24 The tutor suggests Malcolm should

- A concentrate on photos of buildings only.  
B reduce the number of photographic stills to ten.  
C use only photos of famous places.

- 25 Malcolm intends to make a film that is similar to a

- A movie preview.  
B TV advert.  
C music video.

**Questions 26–30**

Complete the sentences below.

Write NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER for each answer.

- 26 Malcolm's tutor thinks it would be a useful discipline to stick to a ..... .
- 27 The tutor reminds Malcolm about the shortness of people's ..... .
- 28 The details about submitting the project can be found on the ..... .
- 29 The submission form needs to contain details about the ..... .
- 30 With the submission form, ..... copies of the DVD need to be handed in.

- 3 **O** Would you like to make a film about a place you have visited? Which place would you choose? Why?

### Word building: Prefixes *under-* and *over-*

When Malcolm is describing the buildings in New Delhi during the conversation with his tutor he says: 'I think they are really *underrated*'. You can add the prefixes *under-* and *over-* to change the meaning of words.

- 1 Complete the gaps in sentences 1–10 below using a word made from a verb in the box by adding the prefix *under* or *over*.

fund value price run state come estimate awe rate (x 2) take

**Example:**

However stunning the tourist attraction is, the entrance fee is definitely overpriced.

- 1 Many scientists have \_\_\_\_\_ the importance of early archaeological discoveries. They are much more significant than was once thought.
- 2 The monuments were totally \_\_\_\_\_ by tourists. I couldn't take any pictures.
- 3 The museum is really \_\_\_\_\_. It's a very boring building.
- 4 Artefacts from a long time ago are frequently \_\_\_\_\_. At auctions they may only sell for a fraction of the price of modern art.
- 5 Some people are completely \_\_\_\_\_ with emotion when they visit Florence. It's a syndrome called the Stendhal effect.
- 6 The museum \_\_\_\_\_ the theme park as the most popular attraction last year.
- 7 Many buildings and monuments of international significance are crumbling, because government repair schemes are \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 The ruins of Greater Zimbabwe are seriously \_\_\_\_\_. I think they are more important than they are thought to be.
- 9 The architecture of the building is very \_\_\_\_\_. It is this simplicity which makes it magnificent.
- 10 I was completely \_\_\_\_\_ by the carvings. I've never seen anything like them.



- 2 Write a sentence about each of the following:
  - a place, country, monument or film etc. which you think is important, but which other people do not value
  - a place, country, monument or film etc. which you do not rate highly, but which other people do

## P What is beauty?

### Speaking

- 1 You can emphasize your own opinion by contrasting it using linking words such as *but*, *though*, *although*, *however*, *nevertheless*, *even so*, *even though*, etc.

*Even though it leaves some people cold, I have a sentimental attachment to it.*

Write sentences about buildings that are important, or have been important, in your life. Use at least five of the words and phrases 1–6 below and the linking words above.

**Example:**

*Even though the building where I went to secondary school leaves some people cold, I have a sentimental attachment to it.*

- 1 leave me cold
- 2 bring back memories
- 3 bleak but my home
- 4 ugly/unattractive/unsightly/unpleasant
- 5 in a rundown area
- 6 beautiful to see/to look at/to visit

- 2 Choose one of the sentences you have written and practise the rhythm by reading it out loud. Read the secondary stresses first and then the whole sentence. Then, decide which syllable has the main stress in each clause.

o o o o o o o o o o

*Even though the building where I went to secondary school leaves some people cold, I have  
a sentimental attachment to it.*

- 3  Think of at least two buildings that have had an impact on you or reflect your life or personality. With a partner, explain the effect these buildings have had on you. Use the sentences in exercise 1.

### Useful expressions

*What made (the building) important to me is ...*

*The reason I chose (the building) is ...*

*(The building) makes me ...*

*When I see (the building) or photographs of (the building), it makes me feel ...*

*(The building) is underrated, but ...*

- 4 Look at the following Part 2 task card. Choose ten verbs and/or adjectives from this unit so far, which will help you explain why the building is important to you. Write a note for each heading on the task card. Then narrow your verbs and adjectives down to three or four. Use the useful expressions in the box to help organize your answer.

Describe your favourite building.

You should say:

what the building is

where it is

what it is like

and explain why it is your favourite building.

### Don't forget!

- In the exam you will only have one minute to prepare.

- 5  Work in pairs. Take turns talking about the topic. Use your notes to guide you. You should speak for up to two minutes; time each other using a stopwatch. When you have finished, give each other feedback using the checklist on page 210.



adjectives to  
luate. Then  
reasons and  
mples.

linking words  
*but, although,  
never etc.*  
op your ideas  
tract.

Work in pairs. Discuss the following questions. Try to include the verbs and adjectives that you have used in this unit so far.

### Beautiful surroundings

Do people need to have beautiful surroundings? Why?

What is the effect of living and working in attractive buildings?

Which is more important, the design or the function of a building? Why?

Is it important to try to make cities pleasing to the eye?

### Concepts of beauty

What does beauty mean? Does it mean the same for everyone?

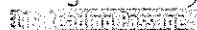
Do you think the desire to acquire beautiful objects drives consumerism?

How?

Are there differences in the concepts of beauty and taste between cultures?

What are they?

### Reading



- 1 Work in groups. Look quickly at the title of the reading passage and skim the passage and the questions. Close your books and share as much information about the passage as possible.
- 2 In your groups, make a list of three or four things that you would expect to read in a passage about an architect.
- 3 Scan the passage and find words and phrases that have the opposite meaning to 1–7 below.

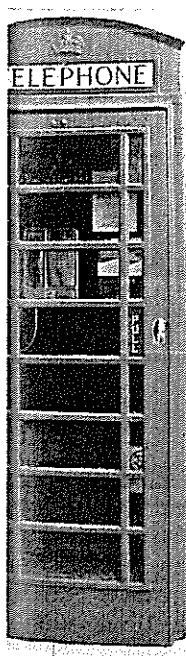
1 separated	3 hated	5 revealing	7 unoriginal
2 alien/strange	4 attacked	6 talentless	

### How to go about it

- As some of the questions relate to dates, put boxes around the dates in the passage.

## READING PASSAGE

You should spend about 20 minutes on Questions 1–13, which are based on the reading passage below.



### Giles Gilbert Scott Architect (1880–1960)

A bastion of the architectural establishment in early 20th century Britain, Giles Gilbert Scott (1880–1960) fused tradition with modernity by applying historic styles to industrial structures in his designs from the Battersea and Bankside power stations in London, to Liverpool Anglican Cathedral, and to the K2 telephone kiosk.

At the top of the splendid Portland stone tomb of the 19th century architect John Soane and his wife and son, in St Pancras Old Church Gardens, north London, is a dome in a surprisingly familiar shape. Designed by Soane in 1815 as a monument to his beloved wife, the tomb is one of his most romantic designs, ornate in form and decorated by stone carvings of snakes and pineapples. It is familiar not because of its association with Soane's family tomb, but because of its influence on the design of the red K2 telephone kiosks, which were once a common sight throughout Britain.

The architect who designed the K2, Giles Gilbert Scott, admired Soane's work and had recently become a trustee of the Sir John Soane Museum in London when invited in 1924 to enter a competition to design a public telephone kiosk. The shape of his design was inspired by the central domed structure of Soane's tomb. By rooting his design in Britain's architectural heritage, Scott transformed the telephone kiosk from what was then seen as an intimidating

symbol of modernity into something that seemed reassuringly familiar. When the wooden models of the competing designs were exhibited outside the National Gallery, Giles Gilbert Scott's was chosen as the winner.

Scott continued to package modernity in British traditionalism throughout his career. In his inaugural address as president of the Royal Institute of British Architects in 1933, when Britain was finally succumbing to modernism and the architectural profession was split by battling 'trads v. rads', he advocated a 'middle line' of both embracing technological progress and the human qualities of architecture. The 'middle line' was illustrated by Scott's best known London buildings, the power stations at Battersea (1929–1935) and Bankside (1947–1960), where he disguised their industrial purpose behind Gothic facades. Battersea, in particular, became a popular London landmark. Yet in an age when progressive architects such as Le Corbusier and Jean Prouvé romanticised technology, Scott's attempts to popularise industrial buildings by obfuscating their function seemed, at best, conservative.

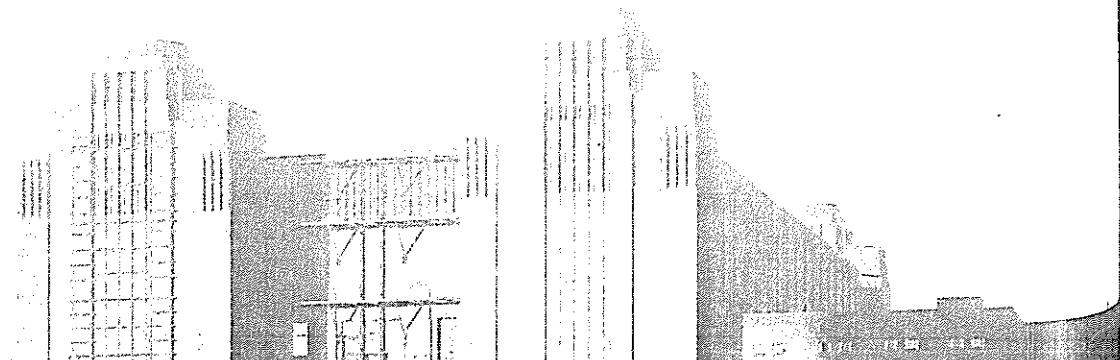
It is not surprising that Giles Gilbert Scott appeared unable to escape Britain's architectural tradition as he was born into it. His grandfather George Gilbert Scott (1811–1878) was the eminent High Victorian Gothic architect of the Albert Memorial, the Foreign Office and the Midland Railways Terminus Hotel at St Pancras station. His uncle John Oldrid Scott was also an architect, as was his father, the second George Gilbert Scott, who was nicknamed Scott Jnr. A gifted yet tragic figure, Scott Jnr showed youthful promise by designing a series of churches in London and Yorkshire that bridged Victorian gothic and the arts and crafts movement, only to succumb to alcoholism and, eventually, to be committed to a mental asylum.

In 1923, Giles Gilbert Scott was commissioned to design Memorial Court, a hall of residence at Clare College, Cambridge (begun in 1923), which he completed in a Georgian-inspired style. The following year he won the telephone kiosk competition. Traditional though his kiosk was in style, functionally it was very advanced. An ingenious ventilation system was installed using perforations in the dome, and the glass was divided into small panels for speedy replacement in case of breakages. Scott's original proposal was for a mild steel structure, but the Post Office insisted on changing it to cast iron. It also insisted on painting the kiosks bright red for maximum visibility in emergencies rather than Scott's suggested shade of duck egg blue. Following protests in rural areas, where people complained that the bright red kiosks looked overbearing in the open countryside, the Post Office agreed to repaint them in green.

Despite the rural complaints, the K2 kiosk was a popular success, and Scott was invited by the Post Office to modify his design in 1930 for the concrete K3, intended principally for country use. He was recalled again to design the K6 in 1935 to commemorate King George V's silver jubilee. This became the most widely used version of the kiosk with thousands being installed.

As well as these landmark commissions, Scott designed dozens of churches throughout his career, as well as more modest public projects such as monuments and extensions to existing buildings. One of his most conspicuous commissions was as a consultant, rather than an architect, to Battersea Power Station in south London. Charged with making the enormous electricity generating station more appealing, Scott suggested brick as the main material for the central structure and turned the four chimneys – one on each corner – into reassuringly familiar neo-classical columns. The result is surprisingly engaging for such a vast structure, but with the showiness of the Art Deco cinemas then being constructed across Britain.

His most significant post-war commission came in 1947 when Scott was invited to design a second London power station at Bankside beside the Thames in Southwark. More austere in style than Battersea, Bankside did not match its popularity until its conversion in 2000 by the Swiss architects Herzog and De Meuron into the Tate Modern museum. Yet formally and functionally it is the more sophisticated of the two buildings, not least as Scott combined all of Bankside's chimneys into a single central tower.



**Questions 1–6**

Complete the sentences below.

Choose **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** from the passage for each answer.

- 1 Scott combined the old with the new in the ..... he designed.
- 2 Scott's design for the K2 phone box was based on the ..... of Britain.
- 3 Scott's desire to make industrial buildings more appealing to the public appeared .....
- 4 Despite not being innovative style-wise, from a practical point of view Scott's telephone box was .....
- 5 When people in the countryside complained about the colour of the telephone boxes, the colour was changed to .....
- 6 Although people objected to the K2 phone boxes, they were generally a .....

**Questions 7–11**

Classify the following events as occurring in Scott's life

- A between 1920 and 1930
  - B between 1930 and 1940
  - C after 1940
- 7 a modification in telephone design to mark a special occasion
  - 8 a request to design a power station
  - 9 success in the contest to design a telephone box
  - 10 an invitation to design accommodation for students
  - 11 Scott's support for architectural progress with a human face

**Questions 12 and 13**

Choose **TWO** letters, A–E.

Which **TWO** features of Bankside Power Station make it different from Battersea Power Station?

- A It was a more severe structure.
- B It was more popular.
- C It was much bigger.
- D It had only one chimney.
- E It is a less complex building.

**Reacting to the text**

Do architects have more influence on our lives than we realize? Should there be more or less control over the work of architects? Give reasons and examples.

## Language focus: Modal verbs for evaluating

In addition to using adjectives and verbs to give evaluations, we can also use modal verbs. Look at the following statement from the listening practice on page 118.

*I should have been halfway through by now.*

Malcolm is criticizing himself for something he did. He is reflecting on and evaluating his own actions.

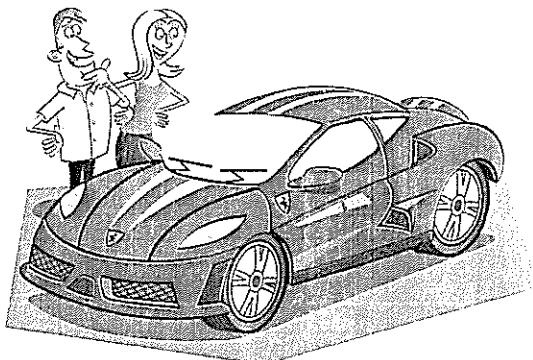
(G) Read more about using modal verbs for evaluating in the Grammar reference on page 224.

1 Work in pairs. Think of three things that you did recently which you shouldn't have done, or you should have done but didn't. Tell your partner about the events.

2 For 1–9 below, underline the correct word in *italics*.

- 1 They *should/shouldn't* have knocked that building down ages ago; it was rather hideous.
- 2 The government *could have/could* dealt with this more diplomatically.
- 3 He *might have/should* have told me; I'm not sure.
- 4 She *might/couldn't* have told me! I really wish she had.
- 5 Something *must/should* have happened, because suddenly everyone seems happier.
- 6 Fines *could be/must have been* imposed on those who make the environment ugly.
- 7 With the involvement of UNESCO, more and more places of great natural beauty *should be/shouldn't have been* protected in future.
- 8 The government definitely *ought to/might* control advertising on TV to stop people becoming addicted to buying consumer goods.

9 The car *could/must* be incredibly expensive, because it's stunning to look at.



3 Which of the sentences 1–9 in exercise 2 show that something 'didn't happen' in the past?

4 Which of the sentences 1–9 in exercise 2 express the following:

- |                |                  |                                 |
|----------------|------------------|---------------------------------|
| • a conclusion | • a regret       | • a suggestion                  |
| • a criticism  | • an expectation | • a possibility/weak suggestion |

5 Work in groups. You have been asked by the local council to come up with ways to make the city or town you live or study in more attractive for the general public. Make a list of the following things in order to improve the area. Use other modal verbs where appropriate and the words from the Vocabulary and Wordbuilding sections in this unit.

Things that should not have been done.

Things that should have been done.

Things that should be done.

## Writing:

IELTS Task 2

1 You can use particular words and phrases to show the effects or consequences of something, for example, *affect, make, produce, lead to, have an effect/impact on, result in*. To describe effects and consequences you can also use adjectives from previous units, for example, *exciting, exhilarating, interesting*.

Work in pairs. For 1–6 below, separate each list of letters a and b into words. Then decide the order of a and b so that they make sense.

- 1 a andsoneighbourhoodsinmanycitieswherethepeoplelivearebeingmademoreappealing  
b everythinginthe physical world around us makes an impression on us directly or indirectly
- 2 a peopleareabletoseeandappreciatedifferentcitiesallaroundtheworld  
b thankstocheaptravelandthe Internet
- 3 a somecountriesarenowbecomingricherthaninthepast  
b leadingtoprideintheir nationalstanding
- 4 a forexampleaparkwasopenedandtreeswereplanted  
b andthen suddenly the health of the people in that district of the city improved
- 5 a thelackofspacehassavedmanyoldbuildings  
b withplannersturningto renovation rather than erecting new buildings
- 6 a peoplearehappierandarenomoreproductive  
b as a result of turning old ruins into gardens

## 2 For 1–6 in exercise 1:

- a decide which part of the text, **a** or **b**, describes the 'cause', and which describes the 'effect'
- b underline the words and phrases which indicate 'cause'. Then underline the words and phrases which indicate 'effect'
- c decide if there are any sentences where no linking words are used to indicate a cause or effect
- d decide if any of the linking words can be removed without affecting the connection

## 3 Work in pairs. For 1–5 below, complete the gaps with one phrase from box A and one phrase from box B. There may be more than one possible answer. Each phrase can be used more than once.

**A** with      as a result, there are      which in turn      thanks to

**B** has a positive effect      shouldn't have relaxed      are focusing on  
now lighten up      should be attractive

- 1 For example, the government \_\_\_\_\_ the restrictions on building in green spaces in the city. \_\_\_\_\_ very few places for people to relax.
  - 2 The built environment in modern cities \_\_\_\_\_ to the people that live there, but often it is overwhelming and ugly \_\_\_\_ skyscrapers, which shut out the light.
  - 3 \_\_\_\_\_ new construction techniques and materials, modern buildings \_\_\_\_\_ cities and make them attractive.
  - 4 It is obvious that beauty \_\_\_\_\_ on people's well-being, \_\_\_\_\_ increases their happiness and productivity.
  - 5 \_\_\_\_\_ awareness of the impact that healthy environments have on employees, more and more architects \_\_\_\_\_ design and not just function.
- 4 Work in pairs. Make notes for the Task 2 question below. Make a list of ideas about the built environment and the natural environment. If necessary, use the ideas in the box on page 208. When you have finished, change partners and explain your ideas.

**WRITING TASK 2**

You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

Write about the following topic:

*At school greater emphasis should be placed on an appreciation of the built as well as the natural environment.*

*To what extent do you agree or disagree?*

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

Write at least 250 words.

- 5 Write your own answer for the question. When you have finished, check your answer using the checklist on page 209.

## 9

## Review

## Vocabulary

1 For 1–4 below, complete the gaps with an extract a–e.

1 How do buildings affect people?

\_\_\_\_\_ , depending  
*on the mood of the person and the attractiveness of the buildings.*  
*For example, some people might find buildings like the Louvre museum in Paris formal and boring, \_\_\_\_\_ might think it is dazzling.*

2 Are you ready to start?

*My favourite photograph is one that I took of old ruins near where I was brought up. They are really magnificent. \_\_\_\_\_ I didn't have a camera, but the next I made sure I had one with me.*

3 What sort of buildings do you like?

*Old buildings say nothing to me.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao more appealing. So I am rarely impressed by old palaces or houses; I find them depressing.*

4 What are the buildings like in your home city?

*Most of them are \_\_\_\_\_ are allowed to be constructed in order to protect the area. So it means that we have lots of tourists.*

- a They can make them sad or happy
- b very old and evocative, because no new buildings
- c I find modern architecture like
- d The first time I saw it
- e but other people

2 For 1–4 in exercise 1, decide whether each is taken from Part 1, 2 or 3 of IELTS Speaking and why.

3 For 1–8 below, complete the gaps with a word made from the word in brackets.

- 1 When they cleaned up the monument, they made it very \_\_\_\_\_ (beautify), which is why it is my favourite structure.
- 2 The sight of my old school after so many years made me very \_\_\_\_\_ (think).
- 3 The old town was \_\_\_\_\_ (evoke) of a bygone age. It is important that such places exist to remind people of their culture.
- 4 I was overcome with waves of \_\_\_\_\_ (nostalgic) when I looked at the photographs.
- 5 Being among the ruins of Angkor Wat was a very \_\_\_\_\_ (humility) experience.
- 6 I found the building very \_\_\_\_\_ (melancholy) at first, but then I realized it was very relaxing to be here and my attitude changed.
- 7 The city of Tokyo made a huge \_\_\_\_\_ (impressive) on me the first time I visited it.
- 8 Architecture such as that found in Florence has the power to affect people in different ways. Although some of the palaces and houses there are quite austere, they have the power to fill people with \_\_\_\_\_ (ecstatic).

- 4 Rewrite sentences 1–8 in exercise 3 using the words in brackets. For verbs you may need to change the form of the word. Some of the words will need to be changed.

**Example:**

- 1 When they cleaned up the monument they beautified it, which is why it is my favourite structure.

## Word building

- 1 In 1–7 below, decide which two words need to change places.

- 1 The last time I visited the overrun city of Pompeii it left me cold. It was so magnificent by tourists.
  - 2 The photographs of my home town brought back lots of emotion. I was really overcome by memories.
  - 3 The countryside around where I was brought up is very overawed, but I am still bleak by it each time I go home.
  - 4 The vast open spaces of the Steppes are underestimated. Their beauty is so beautiful, perhaps because it is so difficult to get there.
  - 5 The architecture of the railway station is not plain; it is just understated and subtle. That is why it is appealing.
  - 6 The preservation of the architecture of former times reflects the traditions and values of a nation. When such precious national items are underfunded by people generally, it unfortunately leads to them being undervalued or not supported financially at all.
  - 7 If tourist attractions are cheaper, it puts people off visiting them. So the main way to attract tourists and increase revenue is to make the cost of travel to and from the attractions overpriced and reduce the entrance fees.
- 2 Sentences 6 and 7 in exercise 1 are taken from an IELTS Writing Task 2 answer, but they need examples to make them clearer to understand. Add examples using the following:
- |                          |                    |
|--------------------------|--------------------|
| • like + noun            | • for example      |
| • for example + sentence | • if + two clauses |

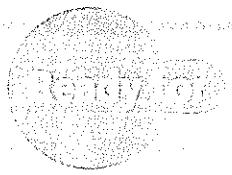
## Modal verbs for evaluating

- 1 Underline the modal verbs in the following extract from an IELTS Writing Task 2 answer.

When they are constructing new buildings in the centre of old cities like London and Paris, Damascus or Rome, planners should be sensitive to the existing architecture. Many old buildings in London, for example, shouldn't have been demolished. Instead, they ought to have been preserved in some way. For example, they could have erected buildings in the same style as existing buildings, or blended the old with the new to stunning effect, as has happened recently in central London, where parts of the facades of old buildings have been kept with new features added on. This should now make the city more attractive. Of course, they might have started doing this sooner! But better late than never.

- 2 Match the verbs you have underlined to 1–4 below. You may use each one more than once.

- |                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| 1 a criticism    | 3 a weak suggestion |
| 2 an expectation | 4 a recommendation  |



# Writing

## Introduction

The IELTS Academic Writing module lasts one hour and there are two tasks. You are advised to spend 20 minutes on Task 1 and asked to write at least 150 words. For Task 2 you are advised to spend 40 minutes and asked to write at least 250 words.

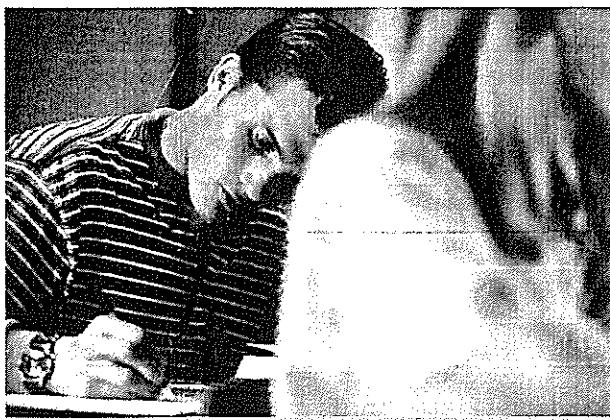
In both tasks, you are assessed on your ability to write in a style that is suitable for the task.

## Task 1

In Task 1 you are asked to describe data, presented as a graph, chart or table, or a diagram such as a map or process, using your own words.

Assessment for Task 1 is based on your ability to:

- summarize, organize and compare data where possible
- describe the stages of a process
- describe an object or event or explain how something works
- write accurately and coherently
- use a range of vocabulary
- use a range of grammatical structures



### Describing a graph

1 Work in pairs. Look at the following list of words and phrases 1–20 and the graph in the Task 1 question on the opposite page. Decide which you can use to write about the graph.

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1 trends vary               | 11 overtake                            |
| 2 an upward trend           | 12 contrasted with the steady recovery |
| 3 hit a low                 | 13 the dramatic decrease               |
| 4 latter part of the period | 14 peak at                             |
| 5 soar                      | 15 proportion                          |
| 6 follow different patterns | 16 reach a high                        |
| 7 a gradual fall            | 17 overall                             |
| 8 reach a plateau           | 18 outnumber                           |
| 9 a sharp drop              | 19 generally speaking                  |
| 10 surpass                  | 20 similarly                           |

**WRITING TASK 1**

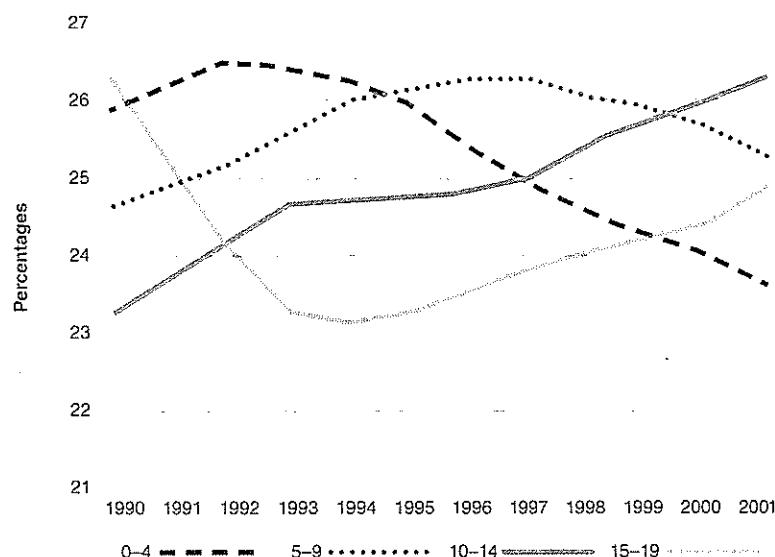
You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

*The graph shows children by age group as a percentage of the population in the United Kingdom between 1990 and 2001.*

*Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.*

Write at least 150 words.

Percentages of children aged under 20 years by age group in the United Kingdom



- 2 Read the following sample answer and underline the words from the list in exercise 1.

The graph shows the proportions of children in four age groups, namely 0–4, 5–9, 10–14 and 15–19 in the UK between 1990 and 2001.

Generally speaking, despite the two contrasting trends (downwards for the children of 0–4 and 15–19; and upwards for those aged 5–9 and 10–14), the decline in the birth rate was the most striking point. In the youngest age group, there was an increase during the two first years from just below 26% in 1990 to about 26.6% in 1992 followed by a gradual fall to 23.6%, the lowest percentage, in 2001. Regarding the 15–19 age group, the dramatic decrease from approximately 26.3% in 1990 to just over 23% in 1994 can be contrasted with a steady recovery over the latter part of the period up to nearly 24.9% in 2001.

By contrast, an upward trend was noticed in the categories of children aged 5–9 and 10–14. Looking at the former group, the percentage peaked at approximately 26.3% in 1997, but the final proportion (about 25.3%) remained greater than the initial (nearly 24.6%). As regards the latter, the percentage of the children in this category not only increased over the period but also was the greatest in 2001, approximately 26.3%.

- 3 Work in pairs. Turn to page 207 and answer questions 1–8.
- 4 Write your own answer for the task. When you have finished, check your answer using the checklist on page 209.

## Ready for Writing

### Describing a bar chart

- 1 Work in pairs. Look at the Task 1 question in exercise 2 below. To help you practise paraphrasing descriptions of data in your introduction, rewrite the following sentence using the words in brackets or your own words.

*The chart reveals the results of a Labour Force Survey on occupations of males and females in the United Kingdom in 2007.*

(employment in the United Kingdom/provide a breakdown by gender and occupation/ranging from ... to ...)

- 2 Work in pairs. Decide which of the following three overviews for the chart in the question below is most suitable. Give reasons.

- 1 *As can be seen from the chart, there are more males than females in certain occupations.*
- 2 *It is clear that while women account for the largest proportion of workers in the lower level jobs, men fill most of the posts in the higher managerial level and in skilled trades.*
- 3 *Overall, women have as many jobs as men at the top.*

#### WRITING TASK 1

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

*The chart shows the results of a Labour Force Survey in the United Kingdom in 2007.*

*Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where necessary.*

Write at least 150 words.





- 3 Work in groups. Look at the list of phrases below and decide which occupation on the chart they can be used to describe. Write the number of the phrase next to the occupation. Each phrase may apply to more than one occupation.
- 1 the only occupation ... almost equal
  - 2 account for less/fewer than ...
  - 3 far outstripped/exceeded
  - 4 was approximately four times as many ... as ...
  - 5 slightly less than ...
  - 6 not as many as ...
  - 7 the reverse was true
  - 8 a different pattern
  - 9 about a third more
  - 10 considerably more men made up
  - 11 almost ten times as many
  - 12 almost double/almost half as many
  - 13 were more than ...
- 4 Write your own answer for the task. When you have finished, check your answer using the checklist on page 209.

### Describing a table

- 1 Work in groups. Look at the Task 1 question below and the sample answer on page 132. The teacher asked the student not to describe certain rows and columns in the table as there was too much information. Decide which rows and columns the student was asked to ignore.

#### WRITING TASK 1

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

*The table shows world demographic indicators for various regions of the world in 2005.*

*Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where necessary.*

Write at least 150 words.

#### World demographic indicators, 2005

	Population (millions)	Population density (sq km)	Infant mortality rate	Total fertility rate	Life expectancy at birth (years)	
					Males	Females
Asia	3,938	124	48.6	2.47	65.8	69.4
Africa	922	30	93.2	4.98	50.3	52.8
Europe	731	32	8.8	1.41	69.6	78.0
Latin America & Caribbean	558	27	25.4	2.52	68.8	75.3
North America	322	15	6.7	1.99	74.9	80.3
Oceania	33	4	28.6	2.37	71.6	77.3
World	6,515	48	53.9	2.65	63.9	68.3

## Ready for Writing

The table compare various population markers in various areas, namely Europe, Latin America and the Caribbean, North America and Oceania, to the world features in 2005.

On the whole, Europe, despite having the lowest total fertility rate per 1,000 live births (1.41), was the most populated area among those studied. The features shows that 731 million people (about 11% of the world population) were living in Europe in 2005 with a life expectant at birth standing at 69.6 years for men and 78.0 years for women, above the world average of 63.9 for men and 68.3 for women. By contrast, Latin America and the Caribbean, with a higher total fertility rate of 2.52, was second on the table as regard the size of the population (558 million). People's life expectancy (68.8 years for males and 75.3 years for women) was lower than that in Europe, but higher than the international average.

Turning North America where the life expectancy at birth was the highest on the table with females likely to live longer than males (80.3 years as against 74.9), the total fertility rate was 1.99, while the population stoods at 322 million. About only 0.5% of the world population (33 million) lived in Oceania, where the fertility rate of 2.37 surpassed the other regions except North American and the Caribbean, but was less than the world average of 2.65. Likewise, life expectancy exceeded the world average (71.6 years against 63.9 years for men and 77.3 years against 68.3 years for women).

- 2 Find seven mistakes in the sample answer.
- 3 Work in pairs. Read the sample answer again and find synonyms for the words and phrases below.

1 being	5 came second
2 of the countries analyzed	6 outstripped
3 while it had	7 which had a greater total fertility rate of
4 regarding	
- 4 Write your own answer for the task. Use the overview in the sample answer as a guide. When you have finished, check your answer using the checklist on page 209.

### Describing a process

- 1 Work in groups. Look at the Task 1 question on the opposite page and answer questions 1–10 below.
  - 1 Where can you start the description: at the cold water feed or the solar panel?
  - 2 Do the four orange arrows represent heat or the sun's rays?
  - 3 How does the cold water begin to move through the system?
  - 4 What happens when the cold water passes through the solar collector? How do you know from the diagram?
  - 5 What does the Controller do?
  - 6 What happens to the water after it passes through the solar collector?
  - 7 Does the hot water in the tank also heat the boiler which supplies the heating?
  - 8 Does the same water go round inside the pipes from the boiler and the pipes that go through the solar collector or are they two separate systems?
  - 9 Is the water that comes out through the taps the same as the water that flows through the boiler system?
  - 10 Does the pipe heated by the solar collector work like heating elements in an electric kettle?

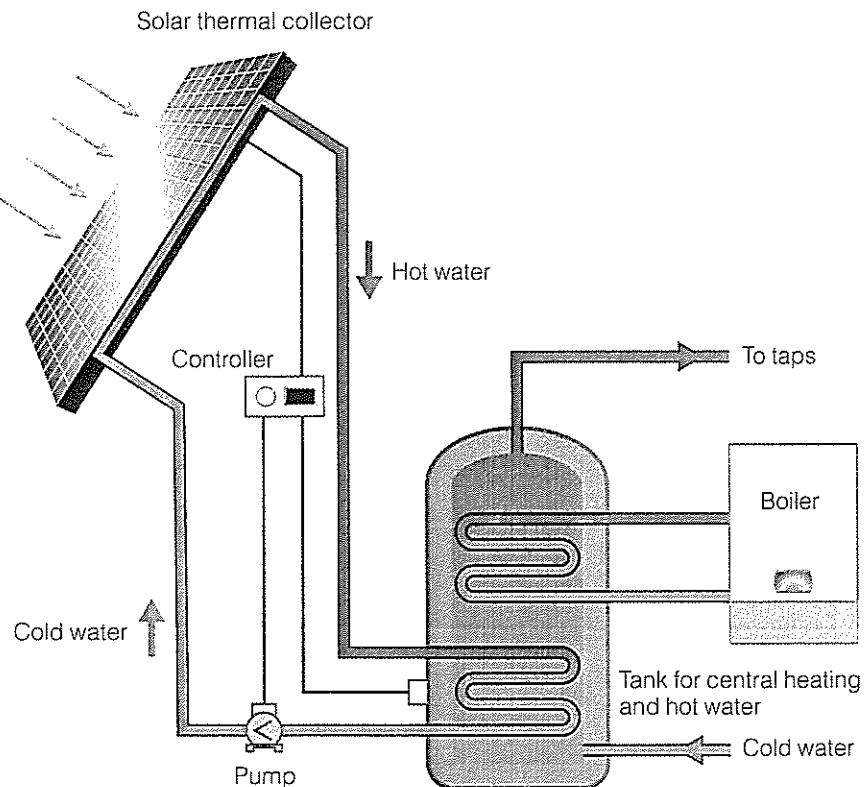
**WRITING TASK 1**

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

*The diagram illustrates how solar energy is used to provide hot water for domestic use.*

*Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where necessary.*

Write at least 150 words.



- 2 Make a list of verbs that you can use to describe the process.

heat up \_\_\_\_\_

- 3 Make a list of linking devices you can use when you are describing the process.

first \_\_\_\_\_

- 4 Complete the introduction below.

The diagram shows how \_\_\_\_\_

- 5 Complete the overview below.

The \_\_\_\_\_ involves a series of \_\_\_\_\_ from  
\_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_.

- 6 Write your own answer for the task. When you have finished, check your answer using the checklist on page 209.

## Ready for Writing

### Describing a map

- 1 Work in groups. Look at the Task 1 question below. Describe the differences between the two maps using the verbs and nouns below to help you.

**Verbs:**

turned into  
had been replaced  
took place  
were demolished  
became

**Nouns:**

relocation  
development  
changes  
expansion  
construction  
conversion  
urbanization

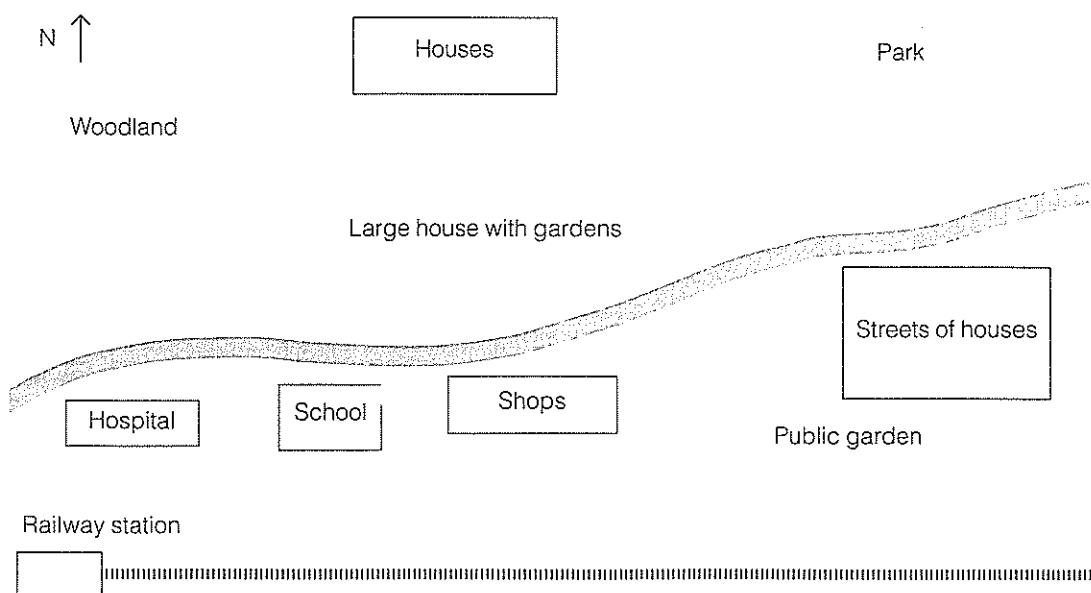
### WRITING TASK 1

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

*The maps show the transformation of the village of Eastminster over a ten year period. Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.*

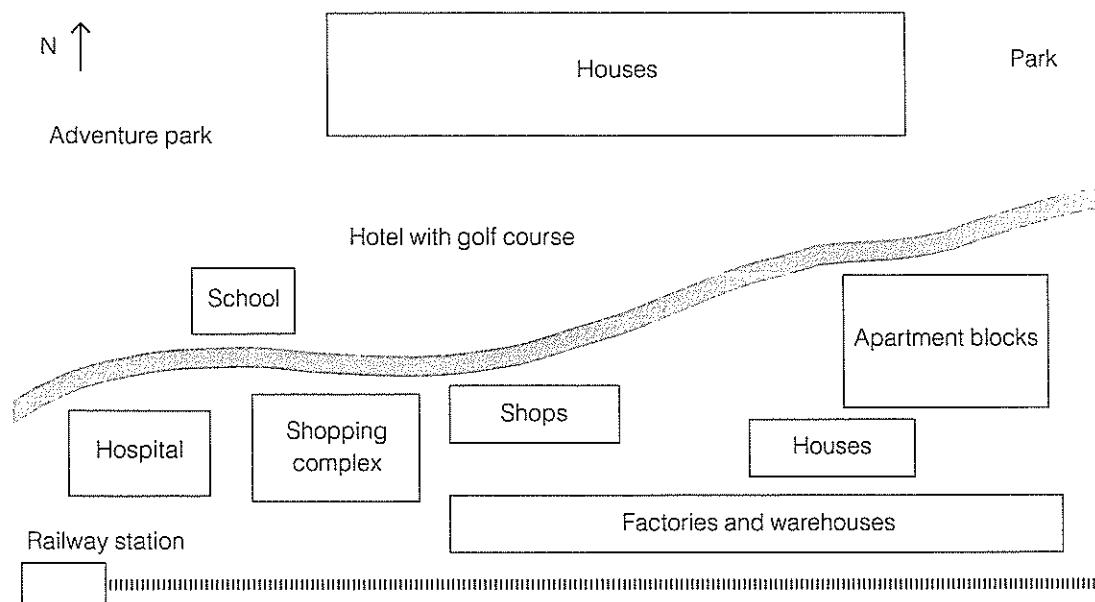
Write at least 150 words.

1999 Eastminster





## 2009 Eastminster



- 2 Complete the model text below using the verbs and nouns in exercise 1.

The maps show the 1 \_\_\_\_\_ that 2 \_\_\_\_\_ in the town of Eastminster between the years 1999 and 2009.

It is clear that Eastminster 3 \_\_\_\_\_ more urbanized with less open spaces over the decade. North of the river, which divides the town, the woodland in the northwest was 4 \_\_\_\_\_ an adventure park. Moreover, by 2009 the large house with gardens 5 \_\_\_\_\_ with a hotel and a golf course. More houses were also built encroaching on the park in the northeast. The other main 6 \_\_\_\_\_ north of the river was the 7 \_\_\_\_\_ of the school from the south bank of the river.

The area south of the river experienced greater 8 \_\_\_\_\_. To the east, the streets of houses 9 \_\_\_\_\_ to make way for blocks of flats. By 2009, where a public garden stood south of the old streets of houses, there were more houses. Further developments that occurred were the 10 \_\_\_\_\_ of factories and warehouses along the railway line together with the 11 \_\_\_\_\_ of the school on the river into a new shopping complex. The final transformation was the 12 \_\_\_\_\_ of the hospital west of the old school situated on the river.

- 3 Write your own answer for the task. When you have finished, check your answer using the checklist on page 209.

## Ready for Writing

### Task 2

In Task 2 you are given a point of view, argument or problem.

Assessment for Task 2 is based on your ability to:

- present and support your opinion
- compare and contrast evidence and opinions
- write a solution to a problem
- evaluate and challenge ideas, evidence or arguments
- write in an appropriate style

The instructions in the questions follow these patterns:

*Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of ...*

*Discuss both these views and give your own opinion.*

*To what extent do you agree or disagree?*

Or you may be asked a specific question such as:

*Which do you consider to be the major influence?*

*What do you think are the causes of this problem, and what solutions can you suggest?*

- 1  Work in groups. Discuss the Task 2 question below.

#### WRITING TASK 2

You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

Write about the following topic:

*Some people think it is better to give donations to local charitable organizations, while others choose to give to national or international bodies.*

*Discuss both views and give your own opinion.*

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge and experience.

Write at least 250 words.

- 2 Classify the ideas below according to the two sides of the argument. Note that some ideas will fit on both sides. Add your own ideas and opinions. Then explain one or more of the ideas giving reasons and examples, purposes and results and expressing any doubts or reservations.

- can see the results
- charity begins at home
- help needed in own country
- poverty relative
- money often badly spent
- people more needy elsewhere
- international administration costs
- difficulty tracking expenditure
- people weary of appeals
- depends on the charity
- people's aims
- want to help specific areas/ 'pet projects'
- see value
- makes them feel good



- 3 Work in groups. Choose one of the following Task 2 questions and brainstorm ideas. Then compare your ideas with a group that has chosen the same task and select the three best ideas.

#### **Brainstorming**

- As you brainstorm, do not exclude ideas. Write down any ideas that come into your head. Exclude unsuitable ideas only when you come to the selection stage.

**1**

### **WRITING TASK 2**

You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

Write about the following topic:

*Employers should ensure that there are equal numbers of males and females in managerial posts in companies.*

*To what extent do you agree or disagree?*

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge and experience.

Write at least 250 words.

**2**

### **WRITING TASK 2**

You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

Write about the following topic:

*In some families there is more than one television in the home, with each family member even having their own TV.*

*Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of having more than one TV set per home.*

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge and experience.

Write at least 250 words.

**3**

### **WRITING TASK 2**

You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

Write about the following topic:

*Research has shown that technology is having more influence on people's lifestyles than any other factors in our lives.*

*What do you consider to be the major influence?*

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge and experience.

Write at least 250 words.

## Ready for Writing

Work in pairs. Add punctuation, including capital letters, to the first two paragraphs of the sample answer below.

nowadays there are demands on both parents to work and look after their children at the same time for this reason I think that children should be sent to school early but during the first years priority should be given to play rather than to formal study

Play is crucial because it develops childrens coordination communication and social interaction skills for example if children are throwing a ball to each other the physical and mental skills required are sophisticated as eye to hand coordination is involved furthermore children develop a sense of communication and socialize with each other the mental and physical development brought about by these games must also be taken into account and what is more while playing children compete with each other and learn to lose which is as essential as learning to succeed in life children fully engaged in play activities from an early age under their parents supervision gain various skills that they will need in their adulthood.

However, in modern society both parents need to work in order to afford the increasing cost of living, and to ensure a bright future for their families. Therefore, they no longer have enough time to dedicate to their children and are forced to send them to school earlier than before. Instead of starting to teach these young children to write, schools should focus more on play to compensate for the lack of play experience they may miss at home. Teachers in nursery and reception classes, and even in the first years of primary school, should take on the role of parents by supervising play activities. They can then gradually insert some educative games into the curriculum in order to prepare children for formal teaching.

In conclusion, despite various social and financial pressures that modern society exerts on parents forcing them to send their children to school earlier, play cannot be neglected. The traditional role of parents should be played by teachers in the early years, and steps taken to ensure that all children participate in play to gain the precious skills that they will need for their adulthood.



- 5 Read the rest of the sample answer. Decide which of the following two questions it answers.
- 1 Some people think that children should be encouraged to play in the early years rather than being sent to school.  
To what extent do you agree or disagree?
  - 2 Formal education is essential if children are to be prepared for the modern world.  
To what extent do you agree or disagree?
- 6 For 1–7 below, write a number next to the relevant part of the sample answer.
- 1 The writer's opinion
  - 2 Reasons
  - 3 A complex sentence with a condition and an example
  - 4 Additional information
  - 5 A contrast
  - 6 A purpose
  - 7 Recommendations
- 7 Write your own answer for the Task 2 question below. When you have finished, use the checklist on page 209 to check your answer.

**DON'T FORGET**

- Develop your ideas by giving reasons, examples, results etc. and writing complex sentences.

**WRITING TASK 2**

You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

Write about the following topic.

*Some people think that health care is a basic human necessity that should not be provided by the private companies, but should be provided by the state.*

*Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of health care being provided by the private sector.*

Give reasons for your answers and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge and experience.

Write at least 250 words.

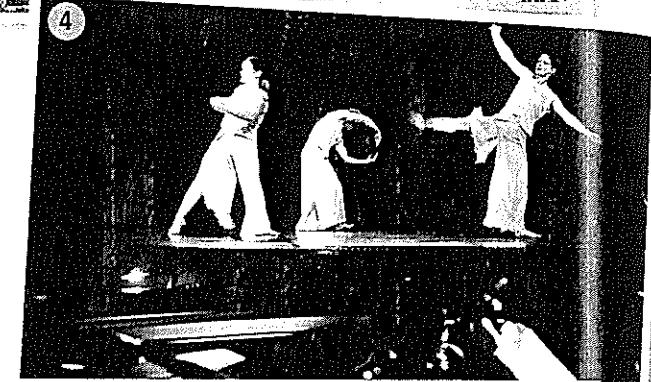
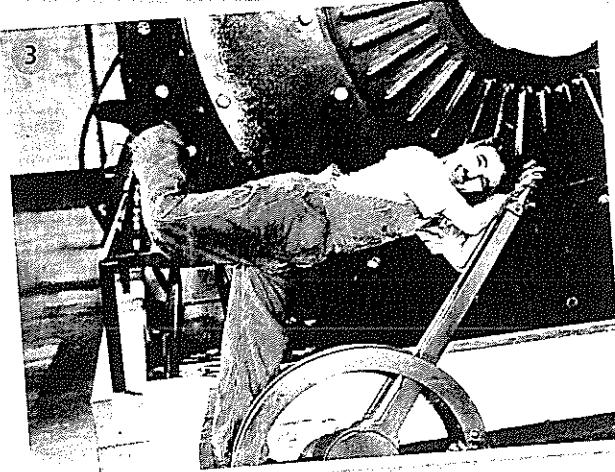
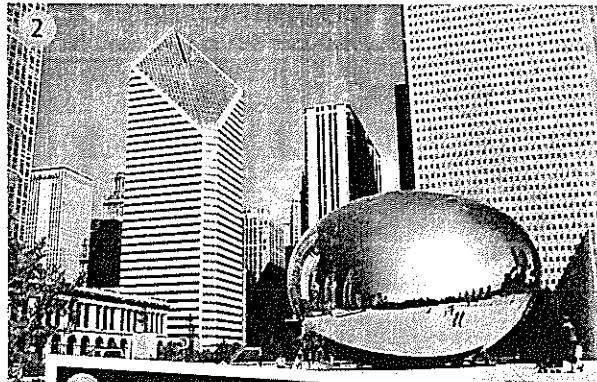
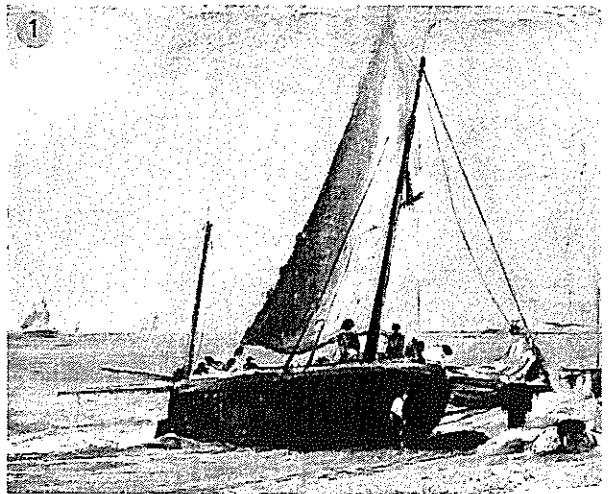
# 10

# Is it art?

## Speaking

**Answers**

- 1 Work in groups. Decide what art form is represented in each photograph and share your opinions about each of them.



## Discussion

- Develop your ideas by giving examples and reasons.
- Use abstract not personal examples.
- Focus on breathing and maintaining the rhythm of sentences.

- 2 In your groups, discuss one or more of the Part 3 questions below. Choose someone to write down the ideas as you discuss them. When you have finished, look at the notes and summarize what has been discussed.

### The Arts

What are the advantages of the arts to society?

How do you think the arts should be funded – by the tax payer or by fees?

Do you think the arts have an educational role to play in society? Should young people be encouraged to be involved in the arts? Should an arts component be made compulsory for all students at university, even for scientists?

- 3 Work in groups of three. Take turns performing the following roles using the questions in exercise 2:
- the candidate
  - the examiner
  - the monitor (make notes about the candidate's performance using the checklist on page 210 and give feedback when he/she has finished speaking)

tening

SECTION 2

- 1 What would you expect to see at an art exhibition?

What kind of opinions might people have about an art exhibition?

- 2 Look at questions 11–20 below and underline the words that warn you that the answer is coming soon.

### 2.3 SECTION 2 Questions 11–20

#### Question 11

Answer the question below.

Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** for your answer.

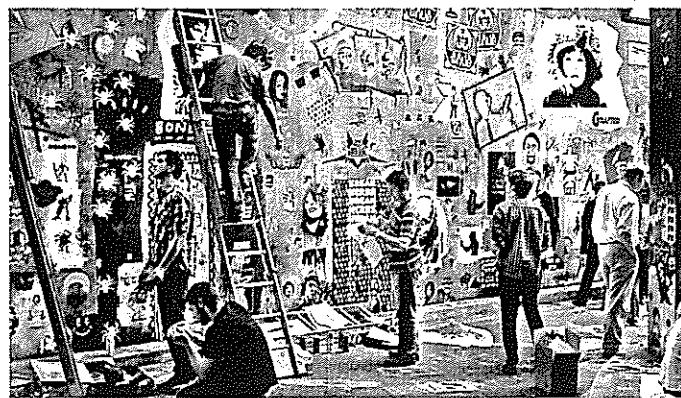
- 11 What has the opening of the new art exhibition created?  
.....

#### Questions 12–14

Choose **THREE** letters, A–G.

Which **THREE** of the following criticisms of the Street Art exhibition are mentioned?

- A misuse of public funds
- B size of the exhibition
- C high cost of entrance fee
- D inspiration for vandalism
- E overcrowding at the gallery
- F no support for local artists
- G increased hospital admissions



#### Questions 15–17

Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**.

- 15 The public didn't go to the art galleries and museums, because of the  
 A cost.  
 B crowds.  
 C time.
- 16 The email survey showed approximately  
 A 70% backed Mrs Cook.  
 B 70% were against Mrs Cook.  
 C 70% were not sure.
- 17 According to Mrs Cook, people in the art world are concerned about the  
 A timing of the introduction of support.  
 B level of financial support from the state.  
 C loss of jobs in the sector.

#### Questions 18–20

Complete the sentences below.

Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER** for each answer.

- 18 The radio show will have two ..... on the street.
- 19 The purpose of the walk-about is to ..... public opinion.
- 20 The second reporter will be outside the ..... in the shopping centre.



## Is it art?

### Vocabulary: Art



1 Work in pairs. For 1–10 below, write as many people you associate with each word as you can.

- 1 play \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 orchestra \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 novel \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 book \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 newspaper \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 sculpture \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 song \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 symphony \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 ballet \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 film \_\_\_\_\_

2 Work in pairs. In each bubble 1–3 below, circle the words that go together.

1

draw                      play  
direct                  artist  
sketch                  illustrate

3

sculptor                musician  
soap opera  
symphony              compose  
conduct

2

fiction                stories  
composer              novels  
actor



3 For texts 1–4 below, underline the correct words in *italics*.

- 1 I studied *drama/plays/acts* at school. We had a theatre with all the props and *scenes/scenery/backgrounds* and a really great drama teacher, who *showed-produced/composed* at least one *theatre/play/stage* or musical a year. Sometimes he also produced a dance routine. It wasn't very *highbrow/lowlbrow* art, but it was very good experience for us.
- 2 I don't think this is graffiti but a real *working/work/bit* of art. It is obvious that the person who *drew/wrote/put up* this is a real artist and not a vandal or hooligan as some people say. *Figure/Extract/Abstract* art like this with boxes and colours can be very difficult for people to understand but *classical-established/orthodox* paintings are just as difficult. Few people, for instance, now understand the *illusions/delusions/allusions* in, say, Renaissance paintings.
- 3 Many people attack *today/modern/these days* art, mainly, I think, because they don't *appreciate/see/realize* it. If people look at it a little more closely, they will be less *unfavourable/critical/approving* of it.
- 4 Dickens wrote very long *novels/narrations/fictions* about social issues, mainly set in or around London in the mid 19th century. They were often serialized and were eagerly awaited by the reading public. His books are considered *masterstories/big pieces/masterpieces*, and the *tales/dramas/pieces* that they *say/write/tell* are as pertinent today as they were 150 years ago. For the modern world the language is a bit dense and heavy, but they were the *visual/popular/sacred* art of their day just as *soap operas/soap plays/opera plays* are today.

4 For 1–7 below, complete the gaps with a form of the words in the box below.

exhibit	sculpt	scene	criticize (x2)	vision	collect
---------	--------	-------	----------------	--------	---------

- 1 The \_\_\_\_\_ cost a lot of money to visit and was a waste of time; it was full of avant-garde work I couldn't understand.
- 2 The bronze \_\_\_\_\_ were displayed in the garden and the galleries.
- 3 My \_\_\_\_\_ is purely subjective I know, but I think the paintings were not just childlike but childish.
- 4 The new extension where the sculptures are on show is more stunning than the \_\_\_\_\_ itself.
- 5 His works have been hailed as masterpieces by \_\_\_\_\_, but I honestly can't see anything in them.
- 6 The \_\_\_\_\_ in the play was a work of art in itself. The artist who painted the panels must be a genius.
- 7 I think I prefer the performing arts to the \_\_\_\_\_ arts; I just find paintings tiring to look at.

5

Work in pairs. Discuss the area of the arts you like the best: performing, visual, literature, etc.

Describe something you have seen that you would never want to see again and something you never tire of seeing or thinking about. Use as many words as you can from the exercises above.



## Language focus: Defining and non-defining clauses

Defining clauses provide information which cannot be left out, as it identifies what is being referred to. They do not have commas at the beginning and end of the clause.

*The water colour that she painted in her teens has just sold for a record sum.*

You can leave out the relative pronoun only if it is the object of the clause and only in defining clauses.

*The sculpture (that) I made at school was stolen.*

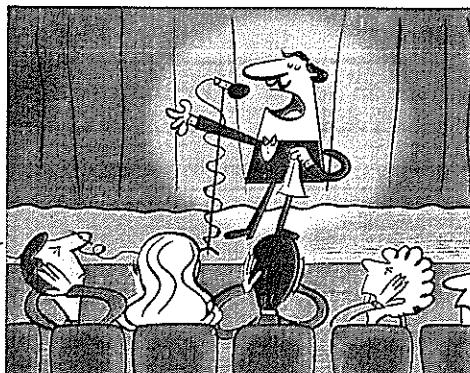
Non-defining clauses provide additional information, which can be left out. They have commas at the beginning and the end.

*A building nearby, which I like very much, has just been demolished and caused a huge mess.*

 Read more about defining and non-defining relative clauses in the Grammar reference on page 224.

- 1 Work in pairs. For each pair of sentences 1–6 below, decide what the difference in meaning is between a and b.

- 1 a A new play by Shakespeare, which the playwright wrote when he was young, has just been discovered.  
b The play that he wrote at the age of 21 has just won a major prize.
- 2 a The music in the film, which is taken from Beethoven's 9th symphony, is very well known.  
b An anthem that I heard on the car radio yesterday was very familiar.
- 3 a That is the director that I was talking about.  
b The director, who has just left, won't be here again till the end of the week.
- 4 a That exhibition which you recommended was brilliant.  
b The exhibition, which incidentally was very good, finishes on Friday.
- 5 a Was he the same architect who built the Sydney Opera House?  
b Mr Renne, who was an unknown architect for years, designed the bridge.
- 6 a The singer who sang the anthem at the beginning of the performance was out of key.  
b One singer, who sang the anthem at the beginning of the performance, was out of key.



- 2 Work in pairs. For 1–8 below, complete each gap with a suitable relative pronoun where necessary. Leave the gap blank where it is not necessary to use a relative pronoun.

- 1 The book \_\_\_\_\_ he gave me as a present was really superb.
- 2 An actor, \_\_\_\_\_ name I have forgotten now, was in the shop this morning.
- 3 My art class, \_\_\_\_\_ started last week, has been cancelled.
- 4 I think literature, \_\_\_\_\_ was not my favourite subject at school, should have more time devoted to it in the school curriculum.
- 5 The painting \_\_\_\_\_ he bought for \$50 000 was a fake, the other one was genuine.
- 6 The sister \_\_\_\_\_ is the dancer got married, not the singer.
- 7 I see the show \_\_\_\_\_ we went to last week has had very good reviews.
- 8 This is the friend \_\_\_\_\_ I was talking to you about yesterday.

- 3 For 1–7 below, complete the gaps with a clause a–g. Add any necessary punctuation.

- 1 My uncle's flat \_\_\_\_\_ is empty for the next two weeks, so I'm staying there.
  - 2 The friend \_\_\_\_\_ got me into the film preview.
  - 3 One of my sculptures \_\_\_\_\_ has just won an art prize.
  - 4 The film \_\_\_\_\_ starts in a few minutes.
  - 5 I like literature \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 6 Is that the folk concert \_\_\_\_\_?
  - 7 The culture tour \_\_\_\_\_ was dazzling.
- a that you were praising last night because of the quality of the singer
  - b which I made when I started the art course
  - c which overlooks the opera house
  - d whose father is the film director
  - e which was incredibly expensive for the length of the trip
  - f which has some breathtaking locations
  - g that is not dumbed down or simplified in any way

- 4 Complete one or more of sentences 1–6 below so that they are true for you. Then explain your sentences to a partner, giving reasons and examples.

- 1 I like literature (which/that) I ...
- 2 I don't like films (which/that) I ...
- 3 I'm really mad about music (which/that) I ...
- 4 I want to go to an exhibition (which/that) I ...
- 5 I dislike (operas/rock concerts) most of all, which I have never liked, ...
- 6 I have seen loads of films, which is a hobby of mine, ...

riting:

ESL 52

- 1 Work in groups and discuss the Task 2 question below. Decide whether you are going to write your answer using advantages, purposes or reasons. Make a list of three or four positive ideas and three or four negative ideas relating to involvement in the arts.

### WRITING TASK 2

You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

Write about the following topic:

*Being involved in the arts makes people feel better.*

*To what extent do you agree or disagree?*

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

Write at least 250 words.

- 2 The text below is part of an answer to the Task 2 question above. For 1–10, complete the gaps with a suitable word. The first letter of each word is given.

It is not possible for many of us to achieve greatness in the 1 a like painting or literature, but it does not mean that we should not be involved in some kind of 2 a activity, even if it only means visiting art 3 g or attending lectures on the arts to gain more knowledge.

There are, of course, different advantages, which benefit the individual and the nation as a whole, to be derived from children and adults 4 p in some way in the arts. 5 T dancing, for example. Dance, which requires a lot of physical activity, is obviously very good for 6 p health as it helps the body to fight disease and also improves 7 c, provided, that is, that one doesn't overdo it. 8 L, painting and pottery help coordination, which is a skill that is missing in a lot of education today as children focus on learning through computers.

For some, the purpose of involvement in the arts is to help them relax, even if it is only going to see an 9 e at an art 10 g.



- 3 Find 1–5 below in the text in exercise 2.

- 1 the writer's opinion
  - 2 examples of non-defining relative clauses, if they exist
  - 3 examples of defining relative clauses, if they exist
  - 4 an example of a purpose
  - 5 an example
- 4 Complete the final paragraph of the text in exercise 2. In this part of the answer you should write about the various reasons why people get involved in artistic activities.



## Is it art?

### Reading

READING PASSAGE

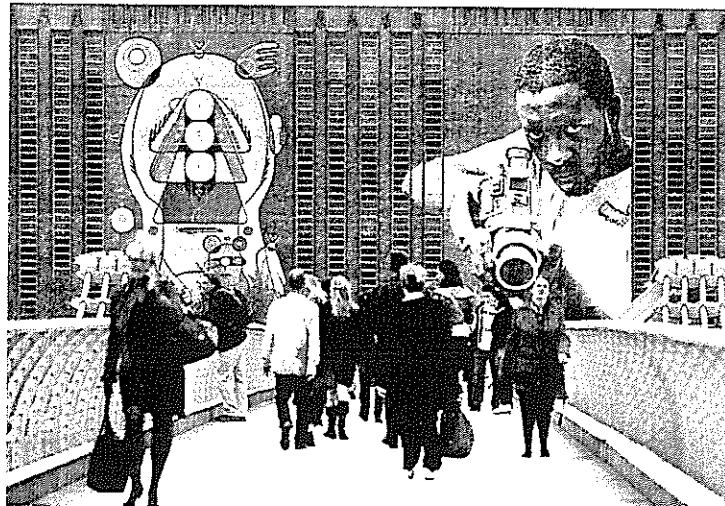
- 1 Work in groups. Discuss statements 1 and 2 below.
  - 1 'Graffiti is a legitimate art form.'
  - 2 'Street artists should be made to clean up the damage they cause rather than sending them to prison.'
- 2 Work in groups. The following words and phrases 1–10 all appear in the reading passage below. Without looking at the passage, decide if the meanings on the right are correct.

1 <i>on the face of it</i>	superficially
2 <i>wielding</i>	carrying
3 <i>polarised</i>	driven apart
4 <i>facade</i>	outside surface
5 <i>crew</i>	people working on a ship
6 <i>pop</i>	jump up and down
7 <i>retrospective</i>	forward-looking
8 <i>spawned</i>	created
9 <i>upstanding</i>	not sitting
10 <i>draconian</i>	severe
- 3 Scan the reading passage and find the incorrect words from exercise 2 to check the correct meaning.

### READING PASSAGE

You should spend about 20 minutes on **Questions 1–13**, which are based on the reading passage below.

## Graffiti: Street art or crime



On the face of it, as a society, we seem to be a little mixed-up when it comes to 'graffiti', as you call it if you work in the local council's cleansing department, or 'street art' as you say if you're the man – and they do mainly seem to be male – wielding the spray can. But the confusion now runs deeper than

those who spray and those who remove the paint. Great British institutions have been polarised. Last week the might of English law delivered its verdict at Southwark Crown Court in London where five members of the DPM Graffiti Crew were jailed – one, Andrew Gillman, for two years – after admitting conspiracy to cause criminal damage, costing the taxpayer at least £1m.

By contrast, just down the road from the Court, the riverside facade of Tate Modern had been covered in giant murals by six urban artists with international reputations, including Blu from Bologna, Faile from New York, and Sixeart from Barcelona, in the first display of street art at a major museum.

The courtroom and the museum were so close that supporters of the men on trial popped down to the Tate to do a bit of retouching during one lunchtime break at the court. 'There is a huge irony in the juxtaposition of the two events,' said one of the artists.

The man to credit for bringing street art into established gallery spaces is Banksy. A few years ago he was sneaking his work into galleries such as the Louvre and Tate Britain. Now Tate Modern is selling his book in its gift shop. His works sell for hundreds of thousands of pounds and he was recently featured in a retrospective exhibition alongside Andy Warhol. He, more than anyone else, has legitimised the genre and spawned a new generation of young imitators – much to the displeasure of those who want to clean up behind them.

Bob has been involved in graffiti since 1982 when he was a punk. He now works, by day, for a London art gallery and describes himself as an upstanding taxpayer. 'London is to street art, at the start of the 21st century, what Paris was for Impressionism at the start of the 20th,' he says with genuine immodesty. 'And yet we hate graffiti more than anywhere else in the world. England is by far and away the most draconian for punishments for what are only economic crimes.'

A gallery in New York in the United States launches an exhibition next week based on the work of those convicted at Southwark. 'DPM – Exhibit A', at the Anonymous Gallery Project in Soho, will display large photographs of the convicts' work alongside copies of their charge sheets to ask whether the men are criminals or artists.

It is a question which prompts different answers in different parts of the world, says Cedar Lewinsohn, the curator of the exhibition at Tate Modern. 'Brazil for instance is more relaxed about it,' he says. 'In parts of Australia, they are like the UK and people really hate graffiti and tags on

vans and trains, but in Melbourne drivers compete with each other as to whose van is more decorated.'

They have similarly schizophrenic responses in other nations too. In Toronto, police have just hired a street artist to paint walls to help find the man who murdered the street artist's brother. Elsewhere in Canada, a court has ruled that, after a police crackdown on graffiti artists, a 28-year-old man is only allowed to venture into town if he is accompanied by his mother. One internet blogger wrote: 'In their twenties and still vandalising other people's property – shouldn't they have moved on to drug dealing, or perhaps become real estate agents by that age?'

Street art, you see, is a highly polarising phenomenon. On the one hand there are those like the American artist Elura Emerald, who is also involved in next week's New York exhibition, who insist that 'artists who paint on the street are merely expressing themselves, not hurting anyone' and should not be punished 'but appreciated and celebrated'. Then there are those like Judge Christopher Hardy who, in court in Southwark, described the activities of the DPM Crew as 'a wholesale self-indulgent campaign to damage property on an industrial scale'.

How is such a dichotomy to be resolved? How, The Independent asked the street artist Bob, can artistic expression be reconciled with the fear and loathing that graffiti inspires in many citizens who see it as a symbol of lawlessness and the deterioration of their neighbourhood? 'Well, not by sending them to jail,' he says.

Greenwich and Tower Hamlets councils in London agree. They commissioned members of the DPM to lead summer workshops as street art tutors for young and vulnerable people. The two councils sent references to court vouching that the DPM men were 'positive' and 'inspirational' in working with 'young people who aren't able to do reading or writing'. But it was not enough to save them from prison.

### Questions 1–9

Complete the summary using the list of words, A–Q, below.

The debate as to whether graffiti constitutes art is 1 ..... the establishment in Great Britain. While one group of 'graffiti artists' were being sent to prison, in an art gallery not far from the court the work of several major street artists was being 2 ..... on the side of the gallery facing the river. The street artist Banksy is responsible for 3 ..... street art, leading to his being 4 ..... by a new band of imitators, to the 5 ..... of some people. London has been described as the centre of street art in the world, but ironically at the same time the 6 ..... there are greater. Whether graffiti artists are considered 7 ..... to be imprisoned or not depends on which country you are in. So the question is whether street artists should be 8 ..... as wrongdoers or 9 ..... as artists.

- |             |               |               |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|
| A cleaned   | B uniting     | C criticizing |
| D dividing  | E destroying  | F punished    |
| G exhibited | H penalties   | I annoyance   |
| J criminals | K pleasure    | L promoting   |
| M avoided   | N painters    | O rewards     |
| P copied    | Q appreciated |               |

### Questions 10–13

Look at the following countries (Questions 10–13 below) and the list of statements below. Match each country with the correct statement, A–F.

- 10 the USA
- 11 Brazil
- 12 Australia
- 13 Canada

#### List of Statements

- |   |
|---|
| A vehicle adornment is a form of competition                |
| B a street artist has been employed by the police           |
| C it causes street disturbances                             |
| D imprisonment for two years is mandatory                   |
| E people are easygoing about street art                     |
| F it is exhibiting work of the artists imprisoned in the UK |

### Reacting to the text

Do you think that graffiti is a genuine art form? Why/Why not?

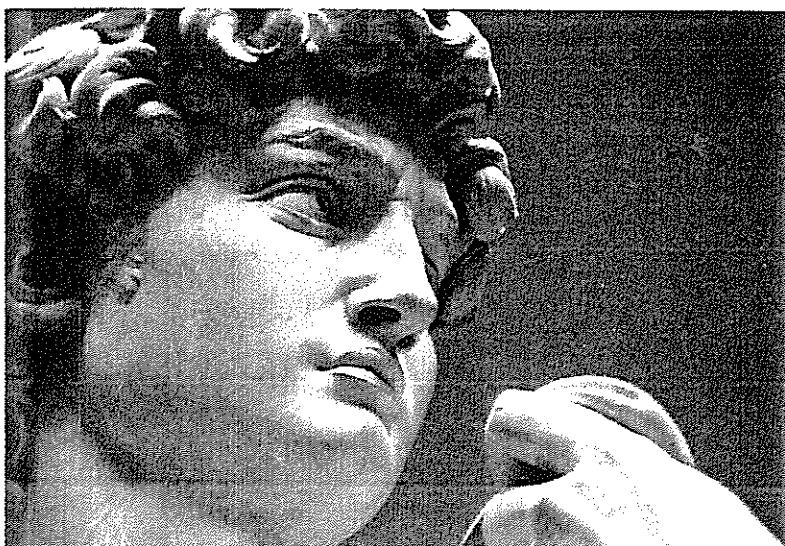
Does graffiti brighten up dull areas in cities or do people find it threatening?

Why do you think people spray graffiti around cities? Will it ever be stopped?

## Speaking

- 1 Work in pairs for exercises 1–4. Read the extract below in which the candidate is responding to the Part 2 task card below. As you will see, each point in the answer needs to be expanded to make it long enough for the exam.

*I'm going to describe a piece of art, which I think is a work of great craftsmanship and the most beautiful object in the world for me. It is David by Michelangelo, who is a great Italian sculptor. The first time I saw it was when I went from Rome to Florence to see my aunt ... One day she took me there to visit the statue of David. I didn't want to go as I hated art galleries and museums ... I thought they were boring and old-fashioned ... But I was completely overawed, because it is such a breathtaking sculpture ... As for its appearance, it is very tall and it is made of marble. The statue is looking off into the distance as if he is looking into the future ... Because Michaelangelo's David changed the way I looked at art galleries, I shall always be very fond of it.*



Describe your favourite work of art.

You should say:

what the work of art is

when you first saw it

what it looks like

and explain why you like this work of art.

- 2 Number the parts of the topic 1–4 on the task card and add the numbers to the relevant sections of the extract.
- 3 Underline any words or phrases in the extract that you think the candidate included in their notes.
- 4 Add sentences and clauses to the extract to make it longer. Remember you should speak for one to two minutes.
- 5 When you are speaking in the exam it is important to try to speak fluently. This does not mean you need to speak fast but at natural speed. One way to help you is to try to control your breathing. A simple technique is to learn where there are natural breaks and take a shallow breath. Look at the first sentence from the extract in exercise 1.

*I'm going to describe a piece of art, which I think is a work of great craftsmanship and the most beautiful object in the world for me.*

You can take a shallow breath after the words *art*, *craftsmanship* and *object* and your voice can go up. At the last word in the sentence your voice goes down and you can take a slightly longer breath.

With a partner, go through the text and mark in pencil where you think the natural breaks are. Then read the text to each other.

- 6 Make notes to prepare your answer for the topic in exercise 1. Try to use some of the words and structures from this unit.
- 7 With a partner, take turns talking about the topic, using your notes to guide you. When your partner has finished speaking, give him/her feedback using the checklist on page 210.

# 10 Review

## Vocabulary

1 In 1–8 below, there is one word missing. Decide which word is missing in each sentence.

- 1 Actors and actresses act in plays or films. Sometimes some of them become famous because they star in soap.
- 2 He the symphony and conducted the orchestra at the performance.
- 3 She has written many fantasy novels but people still do not think that she is a great, but there are many children and adults who would disagree.
- 4 As a playwright, he wrote many and even directed some of his works in well-known theatres, appearing from time to time on the stage himself.
- 5 Is a newspaper journalist an? Many would like to think they have artistic qualities.
- 6 He was a great and painter, having carved many famous statues and painted many of the world's greatest paintings.
- 7 The producer got on well with the actors and in the film, but he didn't always like the way the director directed it.
- 8 The choreographer arranged the ballet very carefully, but some of the found it very difficult to perform.

2 For texts 1–3 below, underline the correct word in *italics*.

1

Studying *drama/play* at secondary school is a very good way to be introduced to acting. Many schools have their own *stages/theatres* at the front of the gym with *scenery/background*. *Drama/Actor* teachers are in great demand to *produce/compose theatres/plays* each year. It isn't very *highbrow/drama*, but everyone enjoys it so I think it's good for drama to be taught at school.

2

For some people I think graffiti can cause problems, because it can make urban areas seem quite threatening. But is it an act of vandalism? I personally don't think so. It is in many ways like primitive art. The problem, I think, is that *extract/abstract* art, like a lot of graffiti, isn't easy for people to understand, but then how much do people these days understand about paintings by *classical/orthodox* artists? Who for instance can unravel the *allusions/illusions/delusions* in early works of art. And I think there are places where graffiti can be a work of *art/artists*.

3

Yes. It's far from easy for people to be able to *appreciate/see/realize* modern art. But if they look at it in greater depth, they will see it in a more *favourable/critical/approving* way.

3 Match the following questions from IELTS Speaking Part 3 with the three texts 1–3 in exercise 2.

- a Do you think it is easy for people to understand modern art?
- b In your opinion is graffiti an act of vandalism?
- c What is the benefit of teaching drama at secondary school?

## Defining and non-defining clauses

- 1 For 1–10 below, link the two sentences together with a relative pronoun or zero relative where necessary. Make any necessary changes. There may be more than one possible answer.

- 1 I saw the film. You recommended it to me last week.
- 2 That is the house. I bought it last year.
- 3 Literature is popular in my country. It is compulsory in the school curriculum.
- 4 The gallery had its main piece of art stolen. The gallery is at the end of the street.
- 5 Some children are very advanced at school. Some children's parents take them to museums.
- 6 The film was attacked by the critics. It was four hours long.
- 7 Many books are published each year in the UK. The books do not sell many copies.
- 8 My favourite work of art is not a huge tourist attraction. It is a building in Ireland.
- 9 Some types of music are very popular in my country. They are not well-known elsewhere.
- 10 The man is wearing a red hat. He is the director of the film.

- 2 Complete the following sentences with a relative pronoun where necessary. There may be more than one possible answer.



- 1 One of my sisters, \_\_\_\_\_ is a dancer, got married yesterday.
- 2 Music, \_\_\_\_\_ they say is good for the soul, is certainly very uplifting.
- 3 The antique car \_\_\_\_\_ we saw in the showroom has been stolen.
- 4 Modern dance, \_\_\_\_\_ many young people are attracted to, is good exercise as well as being an art form.
- 5 A famous footballer, \_\_\_\_\_ name you know, was at the party last night.
- 6 Exhibitions, \_\_\_\_\_ can be outdoors as well as indoors, are good for children to visit.
- 7 The type of science \_\_\_\_\_ I liked most at school was physics.
- 8 The musical \_\_\_\_\_ was very boring has attracted huge audiences.

## Proof reading

As quickly as you can, find the mistakes in sentences 1–7 below.

- 1 Art exhibition can sometimes be criticized for being elitist as they are very expensive.
- 2 Bronze sculptures appear to be very old-fashioned nowadays.
- 3 The performing arts are much more relaxed to engage with that art exhibits.
- 4 Street art as an art form is changing the way young people interact with their environment.
- 5 Literature, which is more than 100 years old, is not really relevant to the modern world.
- 6 Artists are valuable to any society because they push boundaries and challenge established thinking.
- 7 The visual arts, which includes paintings, etc. are much more engaging than the performing arts.

# Psychology and sociology

## Vocabulary: The family

Work in groups. Describe the relationships between the people in the photographs below.



Work in pairs. Answer questions 1–14 below.

- 1 What is the collective word for mother and father?
- 2 What is the collective word for grandmother and grandfather?
- 3 What is the collective word for brothers and sisters?
- 4 What is the name for a diagram showing the organization of a family, including ancestors?
- 5 What is a widow?
- 6 What is a widower?
- 7 What is a godparent?
- 8 What is the word for people you have blood relations with?
- 9 What is the name for a person in your family who lived before you?
- 10 What is the name for you in relation to your mother or father's brother or sister?
- 11 What is the name for the group consisting of parents and children?
- 12 What is the name for people who live together in one dwelling?
- 13 What is another word for children?
- 14 What is the name for a child whose parents have died?

Work in pairs. Match a sentence beginning 1–7 with an ending a–g.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 I am an only child,                                | a only me, my brother and my parents.                              |
| 2 Both my parents come from large families,          | b so I have no siblings.   |
| 3 I have no idea who my ancestors are                | c but I am sure it was no different in the past.                   |
| 4 There are not many people in our household;        | d all four are in their eighties.                                  |
| 5 People often criticize today's young generation,   | e so I have loads of relatives.                                    |
| 6 My grandparents are really old;                    | f as I have never done a family tree to find out.                  |
| 7 Our family tree can be traced to the last century, | g so I know the names of my ancestors going back four generations. |

 Work in pairs. Write at least two sentences about yourself using the ideas in exercise 3. Then write three questions you would like your partner to ask you relating to the sentences. Take turns asking questions and explaining the sentences you have written.

### Useful expressions

Tell me about your (siblings/grandparents).  
Can you describe your (household/family/relatives)?  
What do you know about your (family history)?

## Word building: Suffixes *-hood* and *-ship*

The suffixes *-ship* and *-hood* are used to express the following:

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1 a state <i>membership</i>                  | 4 a period of time <i>adulthood</i> |
| 2 an office or position <i>professorship</i> | 5 a group <i>brotherhood</i>        |
| 3 a skill <i>draughtsmanship</i>             |                                     |

Work in pairs. For sentences 1–9 below, replace the words underlined with a noun with a suffix *-hood* or *-ship*. If necessary, use the nouns in the box below the sentences to help you. Make any necessary changes to the word order.

**Example:**

Being an adult is certainly fun, but it means one has greater responsibilities.

Adulthood is certainly fun, but it means one has greater responsibilities.

- 1 He faced a period of great difficulty in his early life, so it is inspiring to see him being so successful now.
- 2 When the former colony finally achieved the state of being an independent nation, there was widespread celebration.
- 3 He had qualities that showed he would make a good leader, and therefore he received enormous backing from the public.
- 4 The problems that occur in the mutual dealings between the two countries were quickly overcome.
- 5 I have such happy memories of my life as a child in New Zealand.
- 6 Being a mother or father does not suit some people at all.
- 7 Various businesses and individuals set up a scheme to provide money to enable young people visit other countries.
- 8 Bringing up children demands a lot of skill and hard work from women.
- 9 The aim of the organization is to encourage friendly relations between nations.

hard	sponsor	parent	nation	mother
leader	friend	relation	child	



## Psychology and sociology

Work in pairs. For sentences 1–7, complete the gaps with a noun that you made in exercise 1 and a verb from the box below. Make any necessary changes to the verb.

withdraw	reach	cultivate	face
maintain	spend	show	

- 1 Over the years, the prime minister \_\_\_\_\_ a deep \_\_\_\_\_ with neighbouring countries, but it was suddenly wrecked by unforeseen circumstances.
- 2 The government \_\_\_\_\_ from the social programme, but the organizers managed to attract funds from alternative sources.
- 3 Despite \_\_\_\_\_ appalling \_\_\_\_\_ during the journey, the explorers survived.
- 4 He \_\_\_\_\_ such a happy \_\_\_\_\_ with his grandparents, of whom he has fond memories.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ was only \_\_\_\_\_ after a long but peaceful political struggle.
- 6 He \_\_\_\_\_ outstanding \_\_\_\_\_ during the crisis.
- 7 Throughout life they \_\_\_\_\_ a harmonious \_\_\_\_\_.

3 Work in pairs. In sentences 1–10 below, the word in *italics* does not collocate with the word *relationship*. Replace the words in *italics* with the correct collocation.

- 1 It is said that Britain has a *specialist* relationship with America.
- 2 Some people think it is important to develop *profession* relationships in the business world that do not involve kinship ties.
- 3 They have a relationship *long-lasting* many years.
- 4 In an extended family very *closed* relationships are the norm.
- 5 *Familiar* relationships are of great importance in most societies.
- 6 The *parenthood-children* relationship is socially and psychologically complex.
- 7 It can take a long time for countries to *fabricate* strong relationships with each other.
- 8 Relations between both countries broke down because they had a *breakable* relationship.
- 9 They had relationship *troubles* going back many years.
- 10 He has built up a *net* of relationships that have helped him build his business.

4 The words below can be used when describing the different stages in a person's life. Choose two or more of the stages that are relevant to your life and think of a relationship that was important to you in each of them. Tell a partner which relationship you have chosen and why it was important in this period.

*childhood*

*adolescence*

*adulthood*

*father/motherhood*

### Reading

Read the passage

- 1 Work in pairs. Find the words below in the first paragraph of the reading passage on the opposite page and decide what you think it will be about.  
*socialize*    *relatives*    *kinship*    *networks*
- 2 Skim the passage and underline the main words and phrases in each paragraph that show you what the paragraph is about.



## READING PASSAGE

You should spend about 20 minutes on Questions 1–13, which are based on the reading passage below.

# It takes a village to raise a child

**A** It takes an African village to bring up and socialize the child into the community. Nothing illustrates this more than the fact that children are sometimes allowed to spend holidays with relatives such as aunts, uncles or grandparents who live far away from home. The children are shown in a practical way the nature of kinship and the extent of familial and kinship relations. They get to know that they are part of a wide network of relatives, who are as important as the immediate family of father, mother and siblings. Such networks are useful in case of calamities when a child loses one or both parents and is forced to relocate to live with relatives who will be responsible for his or her upbringing. The parents exhibit less of the possessiveness over children that characterizes Western society.

**B** That adolescence brings with it challenges that ought to be handled carefully is appreciated by the society. Indeed, the initiation ceremonies that mark the transition from childhood to adulthood are primarily meant to address some of these challenges. Instructions during initiation focus on conduct and behaviour as well as duties and responsibilities on the part of the initiate for his/her own good and for the interests of the entire community.

**C** Kinship and family interests take precedence over individual interests. Young people who go through the process of initiation from childhood to adulthood are taught that life is worth living because the society is there for them in good and bad times. They bond together as members of the same age-grade. They have come of age as a group, been taught the historical information about the cultural group and its rituals, and been united by the rite that they have all gone through. In due course, they are supposed to marry and start raising a family. With the passage of time they in turn will become elders taking over from the generation that preceded them in the initiation ceremony. Kinship networks are still a significant factor in the contemporary economy and politics. Waged employments are heavily influenced by familial and kinship ties.

**D** Seniority in age is respected and admired because old age is associated with wisdom. Senior citizens therefore are accorded due respect in the light of the fact that they are custodians of societal values. Their counsel is usually sought during times of crisis. They should not be argued with because their curse could ruin one's future. However, the respect and admiration also comes with certain responsibilities.



As an elder an individual is supposed to be unemotional, sober and focused during a crisis or stressful times. As an arbiter an elder has to be candid and sincere in providing counsel. Also, as either father and grandfather, or mother and grandmother, the elder is supposed to be above partisan differences for his word and counsel to be accorded due respect and

recognition. He is not supposed to engage in gossip. Thus while in general seniority is synonymous with honour, respect, admiration and wisdom, it is one's ability to manifest these qualities in old age that gives an individual elevated status in society.

**E** Families strive to take good care of senior citizens because it sets a good example for young children. By treating their elders well parents send a message to their children that they too would like to be accorded that honour, respect and good treatment in old age. Indeed, one of the important reasons for procreation in traditional society was to have somebody to look after you in old age. Children brought up well were considered an asset. It was considered rude for a young man to sit down while an old person was standing. The young person was supposed to give up a seat for the old person as a sign of respect. The parents themselves must set a good example by respecting and taking care of their own parents. When children see that their grandparents are treated well, they learn by example that they too are expected to take care of their parents in old age.

**F** The elder is the pillar of both the nuclear and the extended family. Being the eldest living male descendant of the eldest son of the founder of the lineage, he is the link between the living and ancestors. He is supposed to unite the family so that the unity survives his death. He reinforces kinship ideology, maintains peace and presides over family gatherings, during which period he keeps members within bounds by insisting on customs, laws and traditional observances. He helps to socialize members of the family, immediate and extended, into the ways of the group. He represents the family whenever there are communal lineage meetings. In this way elders unite family and kinship members. In their oral will, in the presence of other elders, they provide guidance on how land will be parcelled out among family members, appeal for unity among family and kinship members and pass the baton of leadership to the next patriarch of the family. Thus, all members of the society take socialization seriously. That role transcends age and gender. This is because socialization contributes to cohesion.

## Reading Passage 1

### For questions 1–6:

Read the rubric to check if you can use letters A–F more than once.

Underline words and phrases that will help you look for paraphrases in the passage.

Look for the plural nouns in phrases 1–6. They tell you several items are mentioned.

### For questions 7–10:

- ✓ Check the word limit.
- ✓ Don't write words on the answer sheet that are in the question.

### Questions 1–6

The reading passage has six paragraphs, A–F.

Which paragraph contains the following information?

**NB** You may use any letter more than once.

- 1 steps detailing how the individual learns kinship through life
- 2 the part played by all family members in a child's development
- 3 a motive for having children
- 4 the desire to have a well-raised child
- 5 how becoming an adult is celebrated
- 6 a list of the roles of the elder in large and small families

### Questions 7–10

Complete the sentences below.

Choose **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** from the passage for each answer.

- 7 African parents are not as overprotective of their children as those in .....
- 8 Familial and kinship connections come before personal .....
- 9 Despite the many positive associations connected with old age, it has particular ..... attached to it.
- 10 In African society, an elderly person's ..... depends on a capacity to use certain attributes.

### Questions 11–13

Choose **THREE** letters, **A–H**.

Which **THREE** of the following statements are true of the elder of the family?

- A He advises family members on career choices.
- B He is responsible for increasing the wealth of the family.
- C He hands over control to the next head of the family.
- D He is in charge of distributing land among family members.
- E He preserves the bonds between the past and the present.
- F He has a duty to preserve unity even at the expense of customs.
- G He trains family members in the ways of the society.
- H He assigns roles to the various family members according to ability.

### Reacting to the text

Does what is described in the passage reflect the family and the society you come from? Give reasons and examples.

Do you think that attitudes to the family are undergoing change in many societies around the world? Is this change an inevitable part of human progress or the result of globalization?

## Speaking

IELTS Part 2

have one  
ute to make  
is.  
t your notes to  
words.  
ce at your  
s as you speak  
elp organize  
t you say.

CLOTHES

Look at the Part 2 task cards A–D below. Choose one topic that you would like to speak about and make notes.

A

Describe an important friendship that you had when you were younger.

You should say:

- who the friendship was with
- when you first met your friend
- what you did together
- and explain why this friendship was important to you.

B

Describe a colleague from your work that you like. You should say:

- what the work relationship is with this person
- what this person looks like
- what kind of person your colleague is
- and explain why you like this person.

C

Describe the period of your life that you have enjoyed the most so far.

You should say:

- when it was
- what happened during this period
- who were the most important people in your life in this period
- and explain why you enjoyed it.

D

Describe a family relationship which is important to you.

You should say:

- how this person is related to you
- what this person looks like
- what this person's personality is like
- and explain why you like this person.

**O** Work in pairs. Choose at least two points from the speaking checklist on page 210 that you would like your partner to check as you speak. Take turns talking about the topic, using your notes to guide you. When your partner has finished speaking, give him/her feedback on the points they chose from the checklist.

**O** Compare the notes you made for the topic with your partner's. Discuss what differences and similarities there are.

Read the following extract from a model answer to one of the topics in exercise 1. Decide which topic the candidate is talking about. Then underline the parts of the answer that address each point on the task card.

*'I'd like to talk about a friendship that I had when I was in my early teens. It was with my best friend at that time, whom I met when I first went to secondary school. I remember very well the first day we ran into each other. I think we knew immediately that we were going to become good friends. We were in the same class at school, and we would sit next to each other, play the same games together – we were just like sisters ... The friendship was very important to me. Firstly, because we gave each other support at a time when we were both nervous about being in a new place. And secondly, where I grew up we didn't face any hardship, but I didn't have any siblings, so it was nice to have the companionship of someone at school ... And I suppose I felt that I was leaving childhood behind, and it was the first friendship of my adolescence.'*

Work in groups. Add more details to the answer in exercise 4 to make it about 50–100 words longer. When you have finished, check what you have written with the checklist on page 210.

Look at the beginning of the answer in exercise 4 again. Decide which ten words you think the candidate wrote in his/her notes.

**O** Work in pairs. Choose another topic from the task cards in exercise 1 and repeat exercises 2 and 3.

## Psychology and sociology

### Listening

2.4 Section 1

- 1 Work in pairs. You will hear a conversation between a school secretary and a parent about a school trip. Look at questions 1–10 below and make a list of things you think they will talk about.

#### **Don't forget!**

Skim the questions and check the following:

- the type of word (noun, verb etc.) that is required
- the maximum number of words you need to write
- if there are any questions where the answer may be a number
- if any answers are likely to be plural

### 2.4 SECTION 1 Questions 1–10

Complete the notes below.

Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS/AND OR A NUMBER** for each answer.



#### School Trip Information

##### Example

Name of club:

##### Answer

International Friendship Club

Trip to:

Country – 1 .....

Accommodation arrangements:

Students will not be by themselves – students stay with families 2 .....

Cost: £495

Duration: 3 ..... days

Price excluding presents for the host family and 4 .....

Takes place during *spring* 5 .....

Advert released on 6 .....

After application is received 7 ..... *necessarily*

Number of students on trip: 8 .....

Total no of adults: six

Including: 9 ..... parents

Deposit: 10 £ .....

- 2  When you were at school did you go on school trips? Where to? For how long?  
What do you think students learn from school trips?

## Language focus: Conditionals 2

Look at the following examples of conditional sentences from the listening practice on page 158.

*Last year, if it were not for the school fund, it would have been a lot more.*

*... that's not a problem, provided you make a deposit of £100 ...*

What tenses are used in each of the clauses in the two sentences? Can you use the simple future to replace any of the tenses? If yes, does this change the meaning?

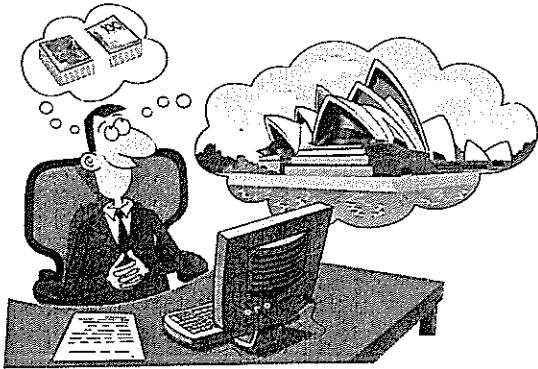
 Read more about conditionals in the Grammar reference on page 224.

For 1–8 below, decide if text b is a paraphrase of text a. Re-write sentence b so that it is a paraphrase where necessary.

- 1 a Even if the social relationships course is expensive, I'll pay for it.  
b Whatever the price of the social relationships course is, I'll pay for it.
- 2 a I'll do the psychology option on the course, unless all the places are taken.  
b I won't do the psychology option on the course, even if there are free places.
- 3 a If the government should happen to address social issues like crime and poverty, we'll see a change in society.  
b There's a possibility the government will address social issues like crime and poverty.
- 4 a Supposing future generations are even more highly trained than they are now, will their lives be better?  
b Future generations will be even more highly trained than they are now, but will their lives be better?
- 5 a People need to be psychologically well adapted to the changing face of the workplace; otherwise, they'll find the changing world difficult to operate in.  
b If people are psychologically well adapted to the changing face of the workplace, they'll find the changing world difficult to operate in.
- 6 a If it were not for improved education opportunities, the world would be worse off.  
b The world's present situation is due to improved education opportunities.
- 7 a If the government hadn't wasted billions on weapons, more money would be available for social projects like community groups.  
b The government wasted billions on weapons, and so less money is now available for social projects like community groups.
- 8 a If only I had studied psychotherapy, I would have found it easier to get a job.  
b I did study psychotherapy and I now regret it.

- 3 Work in pairs. For 1–6 below, underline the correct word or phrase in *italics*.

- 1 *Unless/If/Otherwise* socialization takes place at home and at school, society will face the consequences.
- 2 *If only/Provided/Even if* I had met you sooner, we could have had a better time.
- 3 *Unless/If/Even if* communities are disrupted by the high incidence of crime, they always triumph in the end.
- 4 *Unless/If only/Provided* you are prepared psychologically for the interview, you'll get the job.
- 5 *Unless/If only/If* the company hadn't planned for the future properly, they would be in trouble now.
- 6 *Unless/Supposing/Provided* you were offered a very well paid job abroad, would you take it?



- 4 Work in pairs. Decide which conditional clauses in exercise 3 describe actions or situations that have already happened.

- 5 For 1–6 below, make one sentence from the two sentences given using the word in brackets. Make any necessary changes.

*Example:*

Children will grow up to be unruly adults. Parents need to take an interest in social behaviour. (unless)

*Unless parents take an interest in social behaviour, children will grow up to be unruly adults.*

- 1 Families can help to make society a better place. The government needs to give them support. (provided)
- 2 The government may fund more community centres. This will provide a place for people to meet. (if/would)
- 3 Globalization occurred. Now there are social and cultural problems around the world. (hadn't/would be fewer)
- 4 Volunteer workers helped people deal with the psychological aspect of change. Without them the situation would have been worse. (if not for)
- 5 Social interaction between different cultures is increasing. Still more contact is necessary. (even though)
- 6 Social intelligence isn't taught in schools. If it were, would it be beneficial? (supposing)

- 6  With a partner, discuss your past, present and future, and the things you have done, haven't done and have yet to do. Before you start, spend two or three minutes making notes.

## Psychology and sociology

### Writing:

Work in groups. Choose one the following Task 2 questions. Then decide what the two sides of the topic are and make a list of ideas for both sides.

1

#### WRITING TASK 2

You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

Write about the following topic:

*Some people think that the world is now one large village and we are all responsible for each other. Others, however, argue that people in other countries should look after their own people and not be concerned with other countries.*

*Discuss both views and give your own opinion.*

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge and experience.

Write at least 250 words.

2

#### WRITING TASK 2

You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

Write about the following topic:

*Education is the only means to improve the social and psychological well-being of people.  
To what extent do you agree or disagree?*

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge and experience.

Write at least 250 words.

3

#### WRITING TASK 2

You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

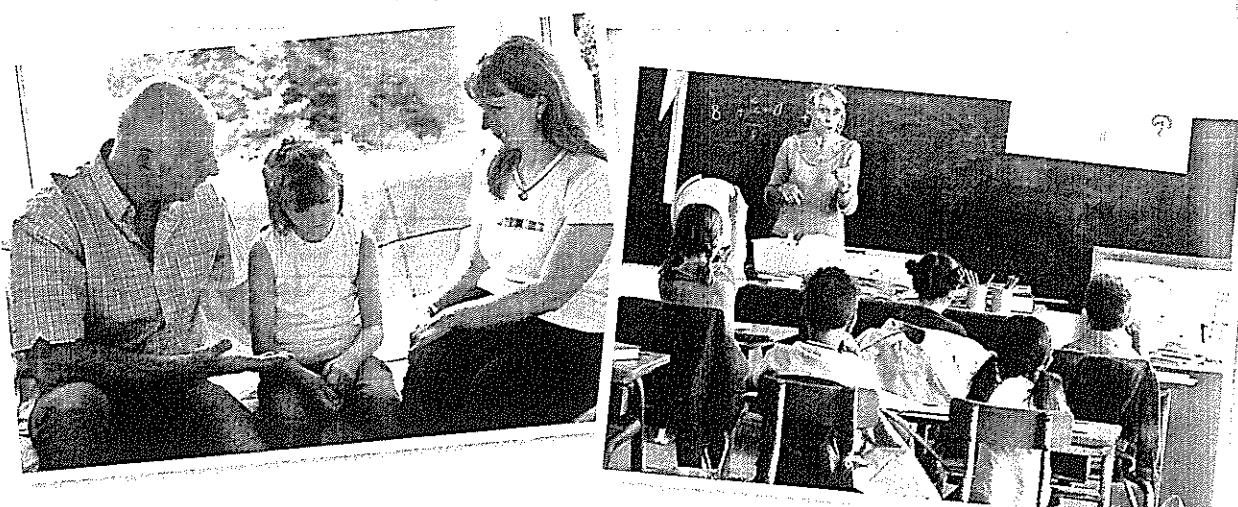
Write about the following topic:

*Teaching children and young people how to behave is the responsibility of parents, not schools or the government.*

*To what extent do you agree or disagree?*

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge and experience.

Write at least 250 words.



Work in pairs. Look at the extracts below from answers to the Task 2 questions in exercise 1. Decide which question, 1, 2, or 3, each extract answers.

#### **Extract 1**

To me the logical answer is a mixture of both sides, and not necessarily equally at all times. It is natural human instinct for people to help each other, so this characteristic should be harnessed for the betterment of mankind. In times of hardship and natural calamities like earthquakes and floods, people from different parts of the world pull together. Shopping is a good example here of people helping the elderly. Unfortunately, it sometimes takes something bad to happen before people act together. Nowadays it is important for different countries to live and work together as the world becomes smaller and smaller. Moreover, as the world is more and more integrated with the Internet and the speed of communication networks, it makes sense that we should all work together ...

#### **Extract 2**

*Let's say someone is well-educated but has not made even one or two friends in their life. Their life would be affected. For example, someone who has concentrated on their education at the expense of everything around them will not be as happy as someone who forms and maintains deep relationships with family, friends and possibly work colleagues. Important as these relationships are in themselves, such close family ties on their own without education are not enough to help support people in their journey through life. Learning a skill like pottery can help make people's lives relevant and help them relax ...*

In the extracts in exercise 2, underline the text you can replace with the conditional sentences below.

*If the basic human desire to help others were exploited, the human condition could be improved.*

*Even if someone had a sound education and had not over their lifetime cultivated at least one or two close friendships, then the quality of their life would be affected.*

In each extract in exercise 2, underline one piece of irrelevant information.

Make notes for the topic below, using the checklist on page 209 to help you. Then write an answer for the question. When you have finished, check your answer using the checklist.

#### **WRITING TASK 2**

You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

Write about the following topic:

*Some people think that managerial posts in private companies and in government are more suitable for men. Others think that given the opportunity women can be successful managers.*

*Discuss both views and give your own opinion.*

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

Write at least 250 words.

# Review

## Vocabulary

Complete each gap with a suitable word. One answer requires two words.

I tried to trace my 1 \_\_\_\_\_ not long ago to see if I could find out who my 2 \_\_\_\_\_ were, but I found it difficult to go back beyond my grandparents. My grandmother has been a 3 \_\_\_\_\_ now for two years since my grandfather passed away. My grandfather claimed he was a 4 \_\_\_\_\_ of someone famous, but I never got round to asking him about it. I have no 5 \_\_\_\_\_ but I have many 6 \_\_\_\_\_ as both my parents come from large families. The present young 7 \_\_\_\_\_ seems not to care much about family history, but that may only be age.

## Word building

Make sentences by choosing one sentence part from each column A, B and C. There may be more than one possible answer.

### A

- 1 I spent a very happy
- 2 We celebrate
- 3 He faced
- 4 He developed
- 5 He maintained
- 6 The government withdrew
- 7 He showed
- 8 He celebrated

### B

- a considerable hardship as
- b several very strong friendships with
- c childhood with
- d the day we achieved nationhood
- e reaching adulthood
- f his leadership
- g their sponsorship when
- h a very good working relationship with

### C

- i various business people.
- ii my parents in the countryside.
- iii every year without fail.
- iv by having a huge party.
- v during the turmoil.
- vi the problems began.
- vii the company.
- viii a child.

The extract below is from an answer for an IELTS Writing Task 2 question about social problems. For 1–8, underline the correct word in **bold**.

In the world today, there are many social issues like crime, hooliganism, illiteracy and poverty. Many people blame these social ills on a breakdown in family 1 relationships/relatives, but it is not as simple as that. There may be some 2 flats/households where the 3 relationships/relatives are very fragile, but by and large family relationships are very strong. In many cases, it may be a 4 sibling/generational difference as the older generation responds to the changes brought about by the young.

One social ill that could be easily eradicated is poverty. Politicians make grand statements about getting rid of poverty within a generation. The 5 hardship/friendship suffered by many people even in richer countries is difficult for wealthy people to appreciate. Strong 6 leadership/sponsorship is needed in this area in all countries and the hand of 7 friendship/leadership must be extended from rich to poor countries; otherwise, 8 childhood/childship for many will continue to be a period of great difficulty ...



## Speaking

Put boxes A–K into the correct order so that they form part of a response to an IELTS Speaking Part 2 topic. Then decide what the candidate was asked to describe.

A *I have maintained a number of strong*

B *a very deep friendship. I think*

C *restaurant where I work*

D *relationships with people who were my childhood friends, but the friendship I*

E *would like to describe is one that began only early last year with a friend from the*

F *we have very similar interests. So I think what really makes the friendship work*

G *but we still managed to help each other out. Since that day we have developed*

H *part-time. We first met when we were working on an evening shift. It was very busy,*

I *the main reason why we get on is because*

J *doing the same sports, and we rarely disagree on anything.*

K *is that both of us like reading and*

## Conditionals 2

Rewrite sentences 1–4 using the prompts given.

1 Whatever the cost, I shall try to keep the whole family together.

Even if ...

2 I'll attend the seminar on kinship, only if the one on culture and the family is full.

Unless ...

3 If it were not for the community centre, families would have nowhere to meet up.

... depend on ...

4 If they hadn't kept the family together, they wouldn't be in such a strong position now.

... and so ...

## Proof reading

In the following extract from an IELTS Writing Task 2 answers, the letter *s* has been removed in some cases and added in others. Find the mistakes as quickly as you can.

*Some people believe the sole responsibility in society for bringing up children lies with the parents, while other think it's more the duty of the government. The logical answer, however, is that raising childrens is the responsibility of everyone not just the parent.*

*If we take social skill, for example, these can in part be taught by the parents and the family, but school as agencies of the government also have a role to play. Obviously, parents can teach childrens to form deep and warm relationship with friends and family and schools can show children how to make relationships outside the home with their peer, while at the same time picking up knowledge and informations. If we as adult had not been introduced to the social norms of society, we would not know how to behave ourselves. Nor would we know how to pass on these skill to our children.*

## 12

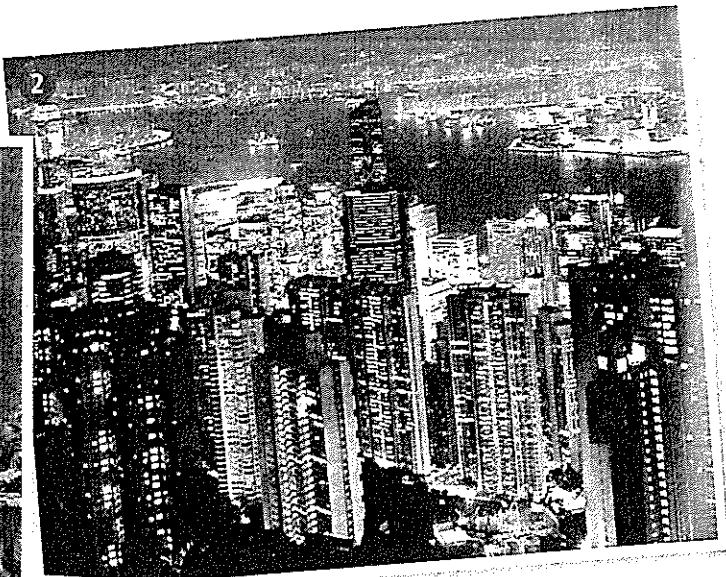
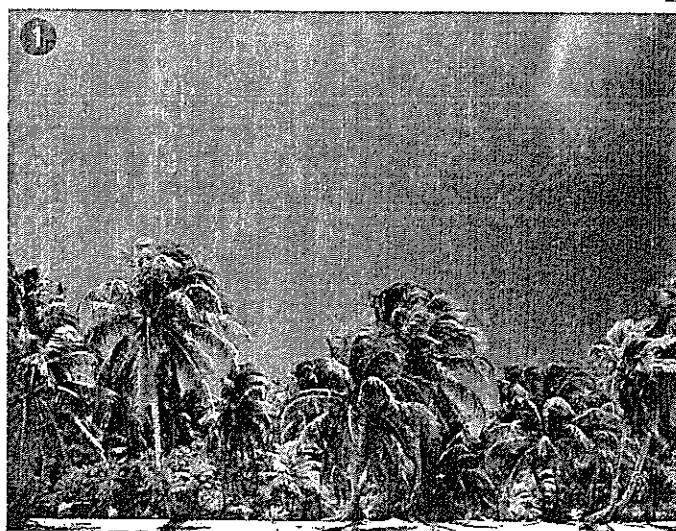
## Travelling around the world

## Listening

IELTS Section 2



With a partner, describe each of the photographs. Then discuss the questions below.



- Are these the sorts of places that you would like to visit? Which one appeals to you the most/least? Give reasons.
- Have you ever visited anywhere that you would classify as exotic? Where?
- Do you think our desire to visit exotic places is actually destroying them? In what ways?

- 2 Work in pairs. Decide what preparations you would make if you were going away on a trip to somewhere very hot or very cold. Make a checklist of the most important items to take with you.

Underline the words in the questions that warn you that the answer is coming soon.

### 2.5 SECTION 2 Questions 11–20

#### Questions 11–15

Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**.

- 11 The speaker advises people to use a checklist if they
  - A dislike things being chaotic.
  - B don't have much time.
  - C can't easily remember things.
- 12 Further information may be obtained
  - A by post.
  - B from the website.
  - C from the local chemist.
- 13 To protect oneself from the sun, the best thing for people to do is
  - A carry an umbrella.
  - B avoid direct sunlight.
  - C wear a hat.
- 14 Good walking shoes are necessary to
  - A support the feet.
  - B keep out the rain.
  - C protect against injury.
- 15 An awareness of customs is advisable in order to
  - A enjoy festivals.
  - B mix with people.
  - C avoid trouble.

#### Questions 16–20

Complete the summary below.

Write **ONE WORD ONLY** for each answer.

##### *Extra tips*

Maintain family contact so they don't feel any 16 ..... , or even misuse any 17 .....

Take a light waterproof cover and a first aid kit with 18 ..... and antiseptic 19 .....

Always keep expensive items like 20 ..... safe.

- 3 What anxieties do people face when they travel abroad?  
If you have travelled to another country, what were you most anxious about before you went?

### Vocabulary: Adjectives with multiple meanings

- 1 Look at the following sentence from the listening practice on page 165. What does *novel* mean in this sentence? What other meanings does it have?

*Remember to enjoy yourselves. Look out for novel experiences, and open your minds to the strange and the new!*

- 2 For 1–10 below, underline the word or phrase in the box that does not have the same meaning.

**Example:**

alien	strange	<u>native</u>	extraterrestrial
1 foreign	from another country	unfamiliar	relevant
2 curious	apathetic	inquisitive	unusual
3 novel	book	original	film
4 unique	treasured	only happening in one place	unlike anything else
5 pristine	new and untouched	morally good	different
6 odd	unusual	irregular	different types
7 fresh	new and different	cold and windy	odd
8 new	recently arrived	extra	inexperienced
9 different	dissimilar	several	diverse
10 strange	unexpected	unfamiliar	uncomfortable

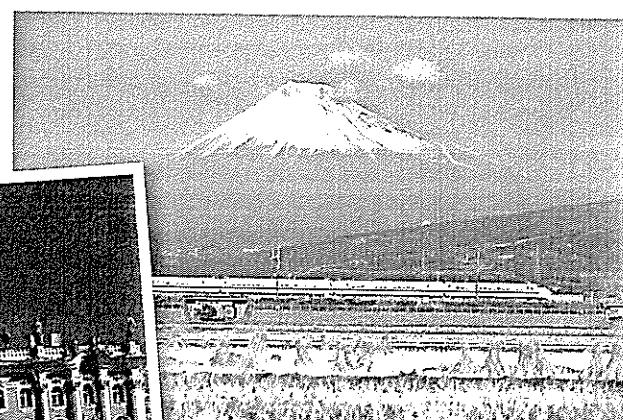
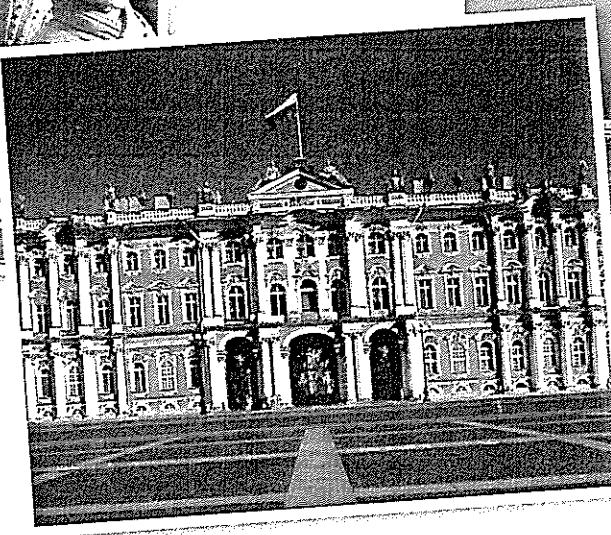
- 3 For 1–10 below, complete the gaps with an adjective from exercise 2 that makes sense in sentence a and b. Then decide what the noun is for each adjective.

- 1 a I had quite a \_\_\_\_\_ experience as I was travelling home today.  
b I think I would rather read a \_\_\_\_\_ than a travelogue.
  - 2 a I would like to live in a \_\_\_\_\_ area to where I am now.  
b Having \_\_\_\_\_ types of houses gives character to an area.
  - 3 a The area was really \_\_\_\_\_ to me at first, but I soon got used to it.  
b I had this really \_\_\_\_\_ feeling when I entered the house.
  - 4 a Everyone's fingerprints are \_\_\_\_\_ and can't be copied.  
b My holiday was full of \_\_\_\_\_ experiences.
  - 5 a The building had these \_\_\_\_\_ carvings all over it.  
b He was \_\_\_\_\_ to know what the town looked like.
  - 6 a Being in a \_\_\_\_\_ country is not as easy or glamorous as it sounds.  
b Their ideas were totally \_\_\_\_\_ to me. I couldn't agree with them.
  - 7 a It was mainly sunny, but we did have the \_\_\_\_\_ rain shower.  
b I had this really \_\_\_\_\_ experience last weekend when I visited the museum.
  - 8 a I was \_\_\_\_\_ to the job and didn't really know anything.  
b I bought a \_\_\_\_\_ set of clothes for the interview.
  - 9 a The sandwiches we bought were very \_\_\_\_\_.  
b I wanted to make a \_\_\_\_\_ start when I went to another town.
  - 10 a I found myself in the middle of an \_\_\_\_\_ landscape.  
b His ideas were completely \_\_\_\_\_ to mine.
- 4 Tell your partner about a new experience you had recently, or an interesting event that occurred recently. Use the adjectives and nouns from exercises 1–3.

## Reading

For reading passage

- 1 Work in pairs. Decide whether the following statements are true or false.



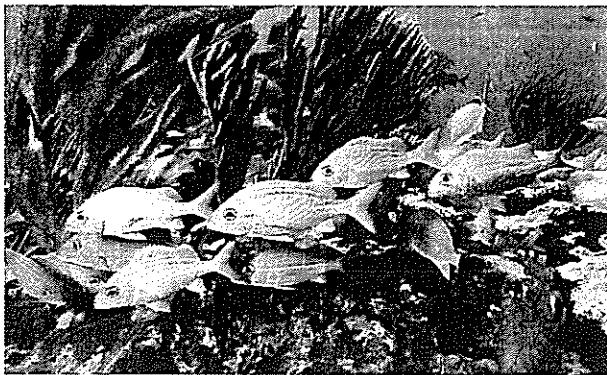
- 1 World heritage sites around the world are designated by UNESCO.
  - 2 The Grand Canyon is in the United States of America.
  - 3 The Great Barrier Reef is off the coast of New Zealand.
  - 4 The Aztec ruins are in South America.
  - 5 The Parthenon is in Rome in Italy.
  - 6 The Giant Stelae of Aksum are in West Africa.
  - 7 Mount Fuji is in Japan.
  - 8 The Terracotta Army is in China.
  - 9 The Hermitage museum is in Moscow.
  - 10 The ruins of Persepolis are in Afghanistan.
- 2 Work in groups. Look at the title of the reading passage on page 168. What facts do you already know about this topic? Share your information with the rest of your group.
  - 3 Each of the following words from the reading passage has two different meanings. Look at the words and their meanings and decide which is more likely in this passage. Use a dictionary to check any meanings you don't know.
 

1 shelf	ledge	sill
2 maturity	adulthood	fully-developed
3 system	scheme	organism
4 range	variety	scale
5 list	catalogue	slant
6 vulnerable	weak	in danger
7 breed	reproduce	farm
8 colony	collection	settlement
9 historic	ancient	momentous
10 sanctuary	asylum	place of safety
  - 4 Read the passage to check that you chose the correct meaning.

## READING PASSAGE

You should spend about 20 minutes on Questions 1–13, which are based on the reading passage below.

## The Great Barrier Reef



The Great Barrier Reef was one of Australia's first World Heritage Areas and is the world's largest World Heritage Area. The Great Barrier Reef was inscribed on the World Heritage List in 1981 and was one of 15 World Heritage places included in the National Heritage List on 21 May 2007.

The Great Barrier Reef is the world's largest World Heritage property extending over 2,000 kilometres and covering 348,000 km<sup>2</sup> on the north-east continental shelf of Australia. Larger than Italy, it is one of the best known marine protected areas. The Great Barrier Reef's diversity reflects the maturity of the ecosystem which has evolved over many thousands of years. It is the world's most extensive coral-reef and has some of the richest biological diversity found anywhere.

The Great Barrier Reef contains extensive areas of seagrass, mangrove, sandy and muddy seabed communities, inter-reefal areas, deep oceanic waters and island communities.

Contrary to popular belief, the Great Barrier Reef is not a continuous barrier, but a broken maze of around 2,900 individual reefs, of which 760 are fringing reefs along the mainland or around islands.

Some have coral cays. The reefs range in size from less than one hectare to over 1,000 km<sup>2</sup>, and in shape from flat platform reefs to elongated ribbon reefs.

The Great Barrier Reef provides habitat for many diverse forms of marine life. There are an estimated 1,500 species of fish and over 360 species of hard, reef-building corals. More than 4,000 mollusc species and over 1,500 species of sponges have been identified.

Other well-represented animal groups include anemones, marine worms, crustaceans and echinoderms.

The extensive seagrass beds are an important feeding ground for the dugong, a mammal species internationally listed as vulnerable. The reef also supports a variety of fleshy algae that are heavily grazed by turtles, fish, sea urchins and molluscs.

The reef contains nesting grounds of world significance for the endangered loggerhead turtle, and for green, hawksbill and flatback turtles, which are all listed as vulnerable. It is also a breeding area for humpback whales that come from the Antarctic to give birth in the warm waters.

The islands and cays support around 215 bird species, many of which have breeding colonies there. Reef herons, osprey, pelicans, frigate birds, sea eagles and shearwaters are among the seabirds that have been recorded.

The Great Barrier Reef is also of cultural importance, containing many archaeological sites of Aboriginal or Torres Strait Islander origin, including fish traps, middens, rock quarries, story sites and rock art. Some notable examples occur on Lizard and Hinchinbrook Islands, and on Stanley, Cliff and Clack Islands where there are spectacular

galleries of rock paintings. There are over 30 historic shipwrecks in the area, and on the islands are ruins, operating lighthouses and other sites that are of cultural and historical significance.

About 99.3 per cent of the World Heritage property is within the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park, with the remainder in Queensland waters and islands. Because of its status, many people think the entire Great Barrier Reef is a marine sanctuary or national park, and therefore protected equally throughout. However, the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park is a multiple-use area in which a wide range of activities and uses are allowed, including extractive industries.

This has been achieved using a comprehensive, multiple-use zoning system. Impacts and conflicts are minimized by providing high levels of protection for specific areas. A variety of other activities are allowed to continue in a managed way in certain zones (such as shipping, dredging, research, commercial fishing and recreational fishing).

A new Zoning Plan for the entire Marine Park came into effect on 1 July 2004. The proportion of the Marine Park protected by no-take zones was increased from less than five per cent to over 33 per cent, and now protects representative examples of each of the 70 broad habitat types across the entire Marine Park. Two authorities are now responsible for the Great Barrier Reef: the Queensland Government and the Australian Government.

The majority of the World Heritage property is still relatively pristine when compared with coral reef ecosystems elsewhere in the world. Guided by the principle of balancing conservation and sustainable use, the regulatory framework

significantly enhances the resilience of the Great Barrier Reef. The Australian and Queensland Governments have a cooperative and integrated approach to

managing the Great Barrier Reef. The Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority (GBRMPA) is the Australian Government agency responsible for overall management,

and the Queensland Government, particularly the Queensland Environmental Protection Agency, provides day-to-day management of the marine park for the Authority.

### Questions 1–6

Complete the summary below.

Choose **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** from the passage for each answer.

#### The location of the Great Barrier Reef

The Great Barrier Reef, the largest World Heritage property there is, was one of Australia's first sites to become a World Heritage area. Situated on the 1 ..... off the north-eastern coast of Australia, the Great Barrier Reef is among the world's most famous oceanic 2 ..... . The 3 ..... of the Great Barrier Reef is a result of the evolution of the 4 ..... over a very long time. Being the biggest 5 ..... of its kind on earth, the Great Barrier Reef is, from the 6 ..... point of view, very varied.

### Questions 7–10

Do the following statements agree with the information given in the reading passage?

Write:

**TRUE** if the statement agrees with the information

**FALSE** if the statement contradicts the information

**NOT GIVEN** if there is no information on this

- 7 The Great Barrier Reef consists of one large reef.
- 8 There are more types of molluscs and sponges found in the reef than in any other site in the world.
- 9 The loggerhead turtle is under threat of extinction.
- 10 There are plans to raise some of the sunken ships on the reef.

### Questions 11–13

Answer the questions below.

Choose **NO MORE THAN THREE WORDS** from the passage for each answer.

- 11 What were enlarged considerably to safeguard sections of all the different marine habitats?
- 12 What has a major impact on the Great Barrier Reef's capacity to flourish?
- 13 What is the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority accountable for in respect of the reef?



#### Reacting to the text

Provided money were no option, would you like to visit the Great Barrier Reef? What aspect of the reef would appeal to you? Why?

Would you be concerned that carbon produced by travelling there could contribute to the destruction of the reef?

## Word building: Words related to memory

1 When people travel, they often bring back something to remind them of their trip. What is this something called? With a partner, use a dictionary to find words with the root *mem* – that are related to *memory*.

2 Work in pairs. For 1–10 below, complete the gaps with a word made from the word *memory*. Make any necessary changes to the form of the word.

- 1 I have many happy \_\_\_\_\_ from my time in the Caribbean. I can still picture the beaches and the surf.
- 2 Do you \_\_\_\_\_ the last time you had a long holiday?
- 3 She's writing her \_\_\_\_\_ now that she is no longer President. They should be interesting reading.
- 4 Collecting cinema \_\_\_\_\_ is not particularly exciting. I'd rather collect holiday posters.
- 5 We tried to \_\_\_\_\_ the route on the map so we would know it perfectly, but when we were going along the road through the forest we got lost.
- 6 Would you say that your trip to Japan was a \_\_\_\_\_ experience or not?
- 7 We visited various \_\_\_\_\_ to a wide range of historic events.
- 8 I left him a brief \_\_\_\_\_ on his desk, because I know he rarely reads his emails.
- 9 It's always nice to have even a small \_\_\_\_\_ of a trip, even if it's only a card.
- 10 I lost my \_\_\_\_\_ for a while, but then it all came back to me. I was so relieved.

3 In the paragraph below the words in *italics* are in the wrong place. Decide the correct position 1–8 for each of the words.

I have really vivid 1 *memorabilia* of my holidays in Mexico last summer. I had a digital camera which takes excellent photographs. And as I am the sort of person who collects 2 *memories* of any kind, like concert tickets or theatre programmes, I came back with loads of 3 *memoirs* like little statues and trinkets. If I ever write my 4 *mementos*, I shall have lots of material to draw on. We visited a beautiful village, and I even bought a replica of a 5 *memorable* to a famous heroine whom I don't really know, but the monument to her was very moving, which is what made it so 6 *memorial*. Unfortunately, I am not sure I'd 7 *memorize* how to get there again as I didn't take much notice of the map. I didn't 8 *remember* the name of the town.



4 Work in pairs. Write at least three questions each containing the words made from the word *memory* in exercise 2. Take turns asking and answering the questions.

## Useful expressions

*Do you find it easy to memorize ... ?*

*Are you the sort of person who collects ... memorabilia?*

*What is your (most treasured/fond/vivid) memory ... ?*

*What details do you remember about ... ?*

*What was your most memorable ... ?*

**Talking**

EUS Part 1

- 1 Look at the Part 1 questions below about transport where you live. Decide which two of the following are suitable ways to begin your answer to question 1.

*People they travel by car ...*

*More and more people use ...*

*Most travellers ...*

*Commuters get around ...*

**The transport where you live**

- 1 How do people travel around where you live?
- 2 What problems do people face when they travel?
- 3 How do transport problems affect you?
- 4 How would you improve the transport in your country?

**Talking**

EUS Part 2

- 2 Work in pairs. Think of at least two suitable ways to begin your answer to questions 2–4.
- 3 Take turns asking and answering the questions in exercise 1. Before you start choose two points from the checklist on page 210 that you would like your partner to give you feedback on.
- 4 Work in groups. Look at the following Part 2 task card and then answer questions 1–6 below.

Describe a memorable journey you have made.

You should say:

where this journey was to

when it was

what you did on this journey

and explain why this journey was memorable.

- 1 What synonyms do you know for the word *journey*?
  - 2 Write a list of any words that you associate with the word *journey*.
  - 3 Write a list of adjectives that you associate with the word *journey*.
  - 4 Write a list of verbs that you associate with the word *journey*.
  - 5 Write a list of places that you associate with the word *journey*.
  - 6 Write a list of reasons you associate with going on a journey.
- 2 Use the words in the lists to help you make notes for the topic above.

**Don't forget!**

- You only have one minute to make notes.
- The words in your notes should be prompts only.
- Don't be afraid to glance at your notes as you speak.
- You have to speak for one to two minutes.

- 3 With a partner, take turns talking about the topic. Before you start, choose two points from the checklist on page 210 that you would like your partner to give you feedback on.

## Language focus: Articles

- 1 In the extract below from the reading passage on page 168, underline examples of the following:

- 1 the definite article
- 2 the zero article
- 3 the indefinite article

*Contrary to popular belief, the Great Barrier Reef is not a continuous barrier, but a broken maze of around 2,900 individual reefs, of which 760 are fringing reefs along the mainland or around islands.*

 Read more about articles in the Grammar reference on page 225.

- 2  Work in pairs. Answer questions 1–10 below. Pay attention to the articles in your answers.

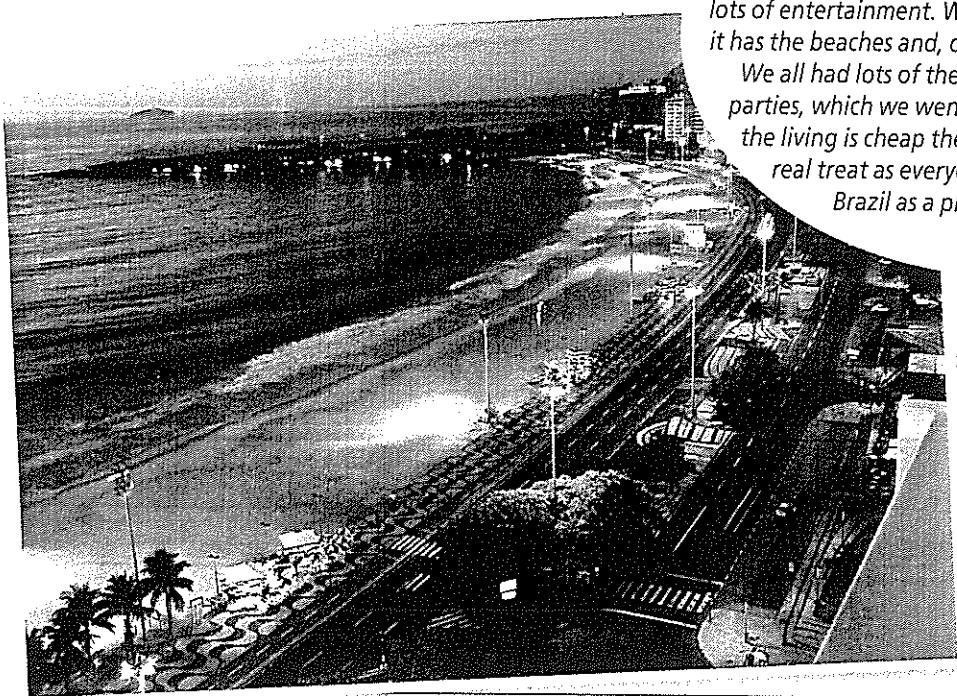
- 1 What gives us light during the day?
- 2 What objects do you see far away in the sky on a clear night?
- 3 Is the sun a star or a planet?
- 4 When is the sun a star?
- 5 Are there different solar systems?
- 6 What is the highest mountain in the world?
- 7 Which mountain range is it in?
- 8 What is the name of the capital of Japan?
- 9 Is London a capital of the UK?
- 10 Are there different oceans on our planet? Can you name three?

- 3 Work in pairs. For sentence a and b in 1–8 below, decide which sentence requires an article and which does not. Explain why.

- 1 a I spent the day visiting \_\_\_\_\_ old monuments.  
b \_\_\_\_\_ monuments I visited were old.
- 2 a I like \_\_\_\_\_ climbing mountains.  
b I'd like to go climbing in \_\_\_\_\_ Himalayas.
- 3 a You shouldn't look at \_\_\_\_\_ sun directly.  
b \_\_\_\_\_ stars twinkle because they are far away.
- 4 a The Amazon flows through \_\_\_\_\_ various countries.  
b Rivers like \_\_\_\_\_ Nile bring life to desert regions.
- 5 a \_\_\_\_\_ capital city of Mexico is enormous.  
b \_\_\_\_\_ Mexico City is particularly big.
- 6 a \_\_\_\_\_ United Kingdom is usually just called the UK.  
b \_\_\_\_\_ kingdoms are ruled by monarchs.
- 7 a \_\_\_\_\_ prime minister runs the country.  
b \_\_\_\_\_ prime ministers are appointed by heads of state or parties.
- 8 a \_\_\_\_\_ heart sends blood around the body.  
b The body has \_\_\_\_\_ various organs.

- 4 In the following extract from IELTS Speaking Part 2, underline the articles that should not be there.

*A trip I  
would like to describe is  
a journey I went on to the Brazil a few  
years back. I went with my family, two brothers  
but no the sisters, five people in all. We flew to the Rio  
de Janeiro which is an amazing city with many people and  
lots of entertainment. What I really like about the city is that  
it has the beaches and, of course, it's famous for its nightlife.  
We all had lots of the fun there with a sightseeing and  
parties, which we went to nearly every night. The cost of  
the living is cheap there and a meal in a restaurant is a  
real treat as everyone is very lively. I recommend  
Brazil as a place for the holidays and  
relaxing ...*



## Writing

IELTS Task 2

- 1 Look at the following Task 2 question. Decide which of the ideas 1–7 below you think is most relevant to the question. Then add your own ideas to the list.

**WRITING TASK 2**

You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

Write about the following topic:

*Some people think that children should be encouraged to travel more while at school to broaden their experience. Others think that not enough time is spent in the classroom learning the basics of a good education.*

*Discuss both these views and give your own opinion.*

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge and experience.

Write at least 250 words.

- |                                    |  |                              |
|------------------------------------|--|------------------------------|
| 1 opens them up to new experiences | 3 learn more while travelling                | 6 too tiring                 |
| 2 need to learn basics first       | 4 travelling is expensive                    | 7 always learning dull facts |
|                                    | 5 waste of time when away from the classroom |                              |

- 2 It is important to be able to develop your ideas in IELTS Writing. For 1–6 below, decide whether the text in *italics* is relevant. Rewrite the text that is not relevant.

- 1 Cheap air travel enabled people to travel longer distances than before. *A whole family, for example, could fly from India to Europe at less expense than a decade before.*
- 2 Trains go in and out of fashion in all countries, as they often depend on the support of politicians. *At the moment, more people are travelling by coach.*
- 3 Tourism can have a negative impact on local culture, *so people should avoid watching TV*.
- 4 Precious ecosystems around the world are being destroyed by the very tourists who most want to protect them, *so access to such sites needs to be restricted.*
- 5 Older people find it more difficult to rough it while on holiday compared to the younger generation. *This is surely because young people don't often stay in hotels.*
- 6 World heritage sites like the Great Barrier Reef are under constant threat of destruction. *For example, even subtle changes in the temperature of the open sea can affect the reef.*

- 3 Work in groups. Discuss the following Task 2 question. List three main ideas for each point of view and think of an example.

**WRITING TASK 2**

You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

Write about the following topic:

*Today more people than ever are travelling around the world. Some people believe that such travelling helps to broaden people's minds, while others think it just confirms their prejudices.*

*Discuss both these views and give your own opinion.*

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

Write at least 250 words.

- 4 Write an answer for the question. When you have finished, check your answer using the checklist on page 209. Use the articles checklist on page 207 to check your answer for any mistakes relating to articles.

# 12

# Review

## Vocabulary

For 1–7 in the following dialogue from IELTS Speaking Part 3, underline the correct word in *italics*.

**Examiner:** Is it important for young people to travel?

**Candidate:** Yes. I think travelling to a 1 *foreign/unique/alien* country is essential for young people as it helps to broaden their minds. For example, it can open their minds to 2 *alien/fresh/odd* and 3 *novel/pristine/alien* experiences first hand, instead of just reading about them in books or on the Internet.

**Examiner:** What kind of 4 *new/odd/alien* experiences?

**Candidate:** Well, for example, if children go to, say, Canada for the first time from, say, Russia, then they will hopefully be 5 *odd/curious/fresh* not just about the language but about the way of life, especially the 6 *differences/alienation/curiosity* and the similarities.

**Examiner:** With the growing influence of globalization, how do you think countries are 7 *different/fresh/new* these days?

**Candidate:** It's difficult to find things that are 8 *strange/foreign/alien* and perhaps unique as things around the world become very similar and less strange because of TV and the Internet.

## Word building

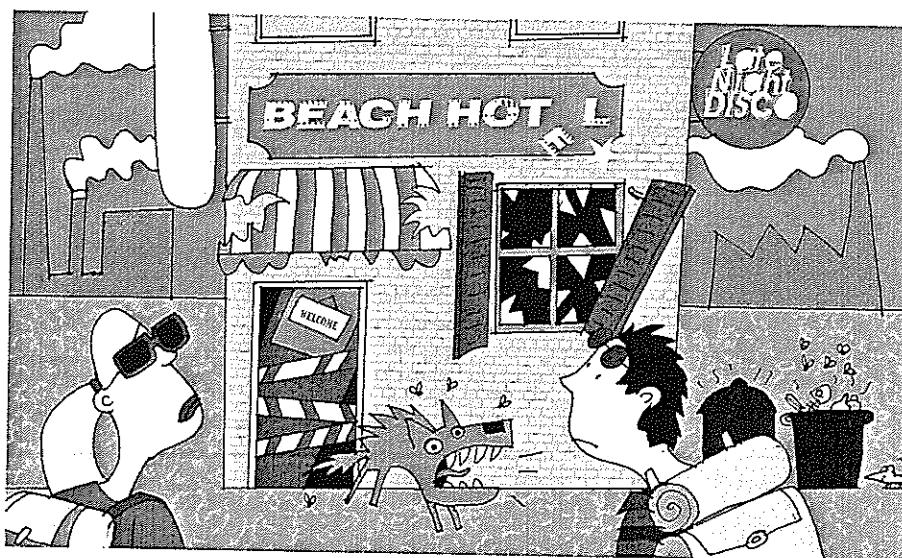
- 1 Before you look at the next exercise, write down as many words as possible that can be made from the word *memory*.
- 2 Match a question beginning 1–7 with a question ending a–g.

1 Do you have	a knowledge?
2 Why do you think people write	b a memorable film you have seen?
3 Is it a good thing to memorize	c memorials to famous people?
4 Are you the sort of person who collects	d a good memory?
5 Can you describe	e people's names easily?
6 Do you remember	f their memoirs?
7 Do you think we should build	g memorabilia about things like the theatre?
- 3 Complete the sentences below with a word from exercise 1.
  - 1 The most \_\_\_\_\_ occasion in my life was my last birthday party.
  - 2 Collecting \_\_\_\_\_ relating to the cinema or trains is one way of preserving our heritage.
  - 3 Being able to \_\_\_\_\_ words is a useful skill for learning languages.
  - 4 \_\_\_\_\_ can be very exciting to read, but they don't appeal to everyone.
  - 5 If I \_\_\_\_\_ rightly, there is a film called *Australia*.
  - 6 Some professions like medicine and architecture require a very good \_\_\_\_\_ for detail.

## Articles

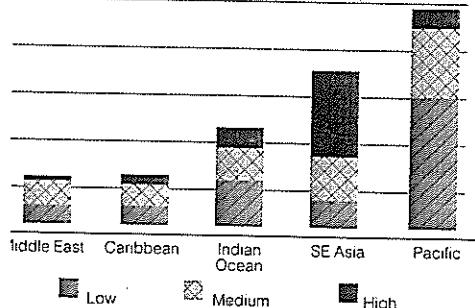
- 1 For 1–7 below, add *a/an/the* where necessary.

- 1 I visited many monuments in Thailand, but monument I remember most was temple in north whose name I don't remember.
- 2 I don't think I'd like to go climbing in the Alps as I don't like heights.
- 3 I like travelling, especially to exotic places, but trip I had recently was awful.
- 4 Education is supposed to broaden mind, but education some people receive does opposite.
- 5 I'm afraid of water, so I can't go swimming even in swimming pools.
- 6 Information on website may not be correct. I download information every day, and I'm not sure if it's correct.
- 7 Quality of hotels varies from resort to resort.



- 2 Look at the graph and the IELTS Writing Task 1 answer. Underline the six unnecessary definite articles in the text.

all coral reef area, classified by degree of risk, 1998



Globally, it is clear that more than half (58 per cent) of the world's reefs are at risk from the human activities.

The significant regional differences exist regarding the degree of risk that coral reefs face. The reefs of the Southeast Asia, which are the most species-diverse in the world, are also the most threatened, with more than 80 per cent at risk, including the approximately 60,000 square kilometres at high or very high risk. By contrast, the reefs in the Pacific region, which contains more reef area than any other region, face comparatively less risk. Forty-one per cent of Pacific reefs were classified as threatened with approximately 10 per cent (10,000 square kilometres) facing a high risk. As regards the Caribbean and the Middle East, where the reefs cover approximately the same area (20,000 square kilometres), the proportion at the higher risk is greater in the former (approximately 5,000 square kilometres).

- 3 Does the text need an introduction? If yes, write one.
- 4 Which information is not included in the text?

# Speaking

## Introduction

The IELTS Speaking module lasts between eleven and 14 minutes and has three parts. The exam is recorded.

The examiner assesses your ability to communicate effectively in English and specifically assesses:

- fluency and coherence: how well you speak without hesitating and the organization of your answers
- lexical resource: the range of vocabulary you use
- grammatical range and accuracy: the range of grammar you use, for example, the range of structures and complex sentences using connecting words like *because*, *for instance*, *and so*, *but*, etc.
- pronunciation: how clear and intelligible you are when you speak

## Part 1

Part 1 takes between four to five minutes. You will be asked general questions about a variety of familiar topics such as your family, your job/studies or your interests. You will be assessed on your ability to give opinions and information on these topics.

- 1  Work in pairs. Look at the two sets of Part 1 questions A and B and decide how you would answer each question. Then choose a set each and ask each other the questions.

### A

Do you prefer to go out with one friend or a group of friends? Why?

What do you do when you go out?

Do you think it's important to keep in contact with friends you make at work or on courses? Why/Why not?

Why do some people stay friends for a long time?



**B**

What is your favourite form of art e.g. painting, sculpture, music, drama? Why?

Do you think art is important in our lives? Why?

Tell me about a traditional form of art from your country.

Do you think art will be popular in the future? Why/Why not?



- 2 Look at the following beginnings to possible answers to the four questions in set A. Decide which one is not suitable and why.
  - 1 I like friends.
  - 2 We tend to go to the cinema or the theatre, because ...
  - 3 Yes, sometimes, because ...
  - 4 There are many reasons, but perhaps the most important is ...
- 3 Using the correct sentence rhythm and stress helps your intelligibility, and good pronunciation leads to a higher score. You can help yourself relax as you speak by developing a rhythm and breathing properly. Look at sentence 2 above. You can create a rhythm by stressing the important words like verbs and nouns:
 

*We tend to go to the cinema or theatre, because ...*

Say these words and then read the sentence beginning. Take a shallow breath at the comma before the word *because*. Decide which words you should stress in sentence 4.
- 4 Work in pairs. To help you understand the examiner better, decide which nouns and verbs the examiner will stress in the questions in set A. Then do the same with the questions in set B.
- 5 Think of your own sentence beginnings for set B. Then decide which words to stress and practise saying the nouns and verbs as in exercise 3.
- 6 Take turns asking and answering the questions again, using a different set from the one you chose in exercise 1.

## Ready for Speaking

### Part 2

In Part 2 the examiner will give you a task card with a topic. You will be given one minute to think about the topic and make notes before you speak. You should speak for one to two minutes. When you have finished speaking, the examiner will ask one or two questions to round off the topic. You will be assessed on your ability to speak at length about a topic, organize your ideas and use appropriate language.

- 1 Work in pairs. Decide which task cards 1–6 the candidate notes a–f relate to.

1

Describe a place where you like to study.

You should say:

where this place is  
when you first visited this place  
what this place is like  
and explain why you enjoy studying there.



2

Describe a charitable organization you admire.

You should say:

how you first became aware of this organization  
what this organization does  
where this organization operates  
and explain why you admire the work of this charitable organization.

3

Describe a skill that you would like to learn.

You should say:

what the skill is  
when you would like to learn this skill  
where you would like to learn this skill  
and explain why you would like to learn it.

4

Describe a meeting with someone that changed your life.

You should say:

who this meeting was with  
when this meeting happened  
where this meeting happened  
and explain why this meeting changed your life.

## Ready for Speaking

5

Describe an advertisement that you like.

You should say:

what this advertisement promotes  
where you saw this advertisement  
what the main features of this advertisement are  
and explain why you like this advertisement.

6

Describe a website that you like.

You should say:

what this website is  
how often you visit this website  
what special features this website has  
and explain why you like this website.

a

maps  
once a week  
detailed maps  
see world  
learn  
have fun

d

cafe  
near college  
month ago  
cheerful  
relaxing  
friendly  
great view

b

coffee  
TV recently  
story  
funny  
clever  
thought provoking  
memorable

e

musical instrument  
soon  
privately - class annoying  
relaxing  
healthy  
helps concentration

c

friend  
5 years ago  
bus stop  
funny/laugh

f

Oxfam  
television appeals  
relieves poverty  
sickness  
famine  
everywhere  
saves lives

- 2 Work in pairs. Decide how the words in the notes for the first two topics relate to each part of the topic.

## Ready for Speaking

- 3 Look at the shortened version of a possible answer for the topic in task card 3. Underline the synonyms the speaker uses for the notes that he prepared.

*The skill that I'd like to talk about is playing a musical instrument like the piano, and I'd like to learn it in the coming year. I know it's possible to go to a class to learn to play the piano, but I know I'd find that irritating. Learning to play the piano is one of those skills that'd be better to learn to acquire by paying for one-to-one tuition. I realize that it might be expensive, but it'd be very rewarding in other ways.*

*The reason I'd like to be able to take up the piano is because it's very soothing to play and to listen to. It's a wonderful feeling to lose yourself in the music as you are playing. I've got several friends who're very keen on music and I've listened to them many times. As well as helping to calm people down, playing an instrument like the piano is very good for the brain as it keeps it active. And it's good for your health, because it helps take away part of the stress of modern living. Friends have also told me that it improves their ability to focus, and so they play before they study or do any work, which I think would help me too.*

- 4 **O** Work in pairs. Each choose a card for your partner. Make your own notes or use the notes above. Then take turns talking about the topic on your cards. When you have finished speaking, give each other feedback using the checklist on page 210.

### Part 3

In Part 3 you will have a discussion with the examiner, which will last between four to five minutes. The discussion will be linked to the topic in Part 2, but it is more abstract so you cannot talk about personal experiences. You will be assessed on your ability to communicate and justify views and discuss and analyze issues.

- 1 **O** Work in groups. Look at the following Part 3 questions and discuss what you might include in your answers.

#### Advertising on the web

How useful do you think websites are for bringing information to people? What about training or advertising?

In what ways can websites be of advantage to small businesses?

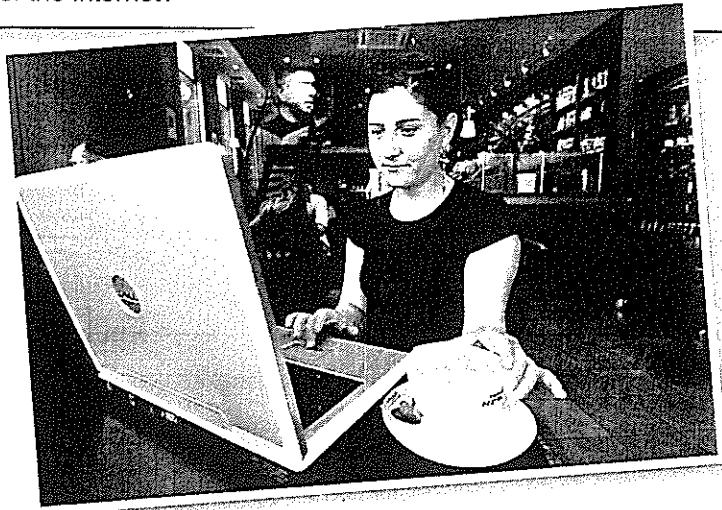
In business terms, are people more influenced by what they see nowadays on the web than on television? In what ways?

#### Distance learning

How can the web be used for distance learning?

Should the training that is available on the web be regulated more?

How do people in your country feel about awarding degrees and diplomas based solely on learning over the internet?

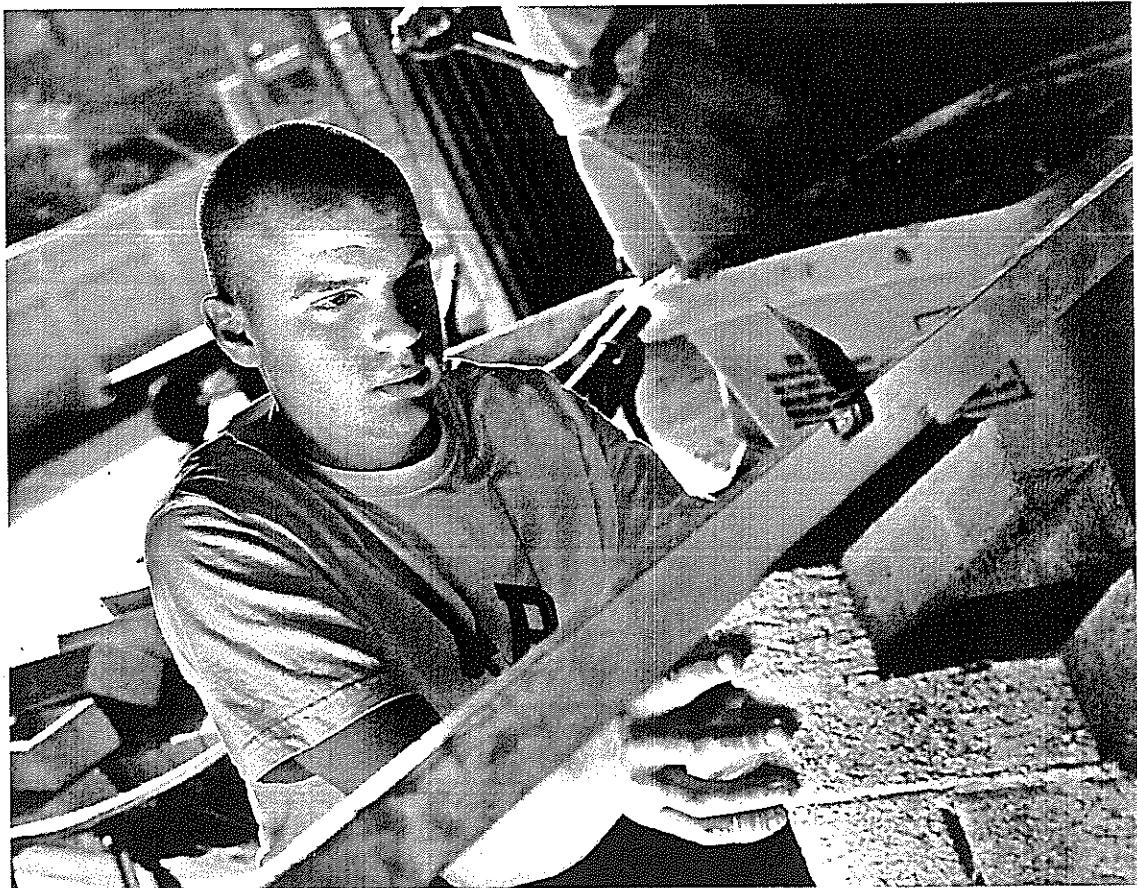


- 2 Work in groups of three. Take turns asking and answering the questions in exercise 1. The third student should use the checklist on page 210 and give feedback on criteria agreed by the student being examined.

**BEST PRACTICE**

- Avoid talking about yourself.
- Explain your answer by giving reasons, examples, results, comparisons, recommendations, etc.

- 3 2.6 Listen to an example of a candidate being examined in Parts 2 and 3.
- 4 2.7 Listen again to Part 2. Look at exercise 3 in Part 2 on page 180. There are seven differences in words and phrases in the text and two extra pieces of information. Identify the differences and make notes about the additional information.
- 5 2.8 Listen to Part 3. Number the examiner's questions 1–6 below in the order that they are asked.
- 1 How essential do you think it'll be for workforces in the future to be proficient technologically?
  - 2 Do you think it's important to keep acquiring new skills throughout one's life?
  - 3 Should preparation of children and young people for work focus on computing skills at the expense of practical skills?
  - 4 Do you think people will have to work longer in the future?
  - 5 How can people ensure that work does not control their lives?
  - 6 In what way do you think learning only computing skills can be a disadvantage in life?
- 6 Work in pairs. Take turns asking and answering questions 1–6 in exercise 5. When you have finished, give each other feedback using the checklist on page 210.

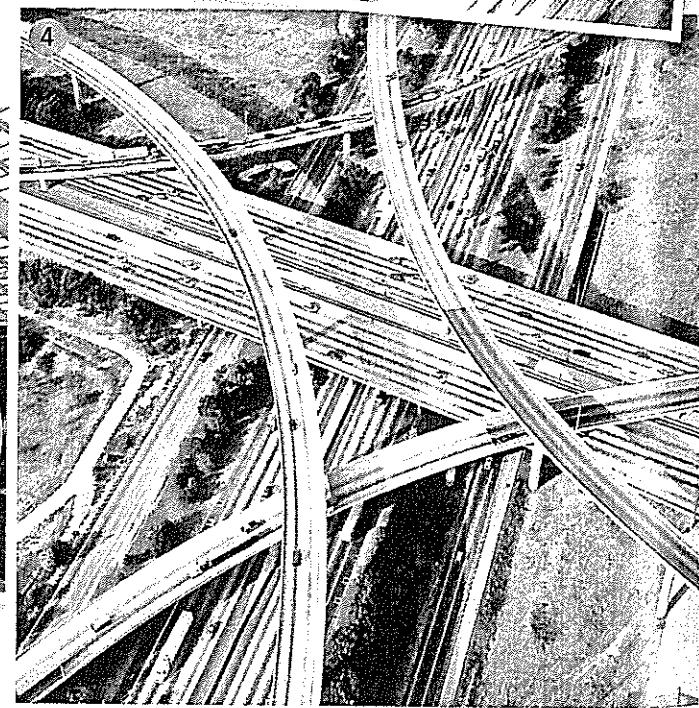
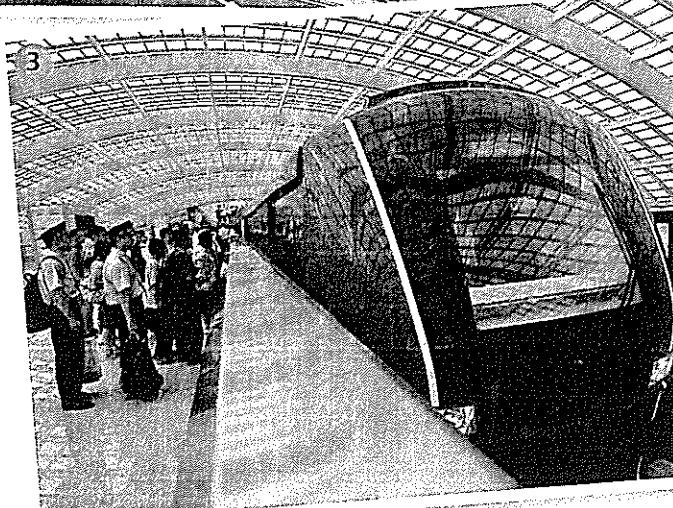


# B

# The importance of infrastructure

## Vocabulary: Nouns related to systems

- 1  Work in groups. Describe the photographs below and decide what aspects of urban infrastructure you can see in each. Then discuss the question below.



- Do these systems help or hinder people? In what ways?

- 2 Work in pairs. Look at the questionnaire on page 208 and think of an example of each item 1–10. Add another system for ‘other’ and think of an example.
- 3 Complete the questionnaire on page 208 by interviewing at least two people. Put a tick (✓) next to each system they have used.
- 4 Work in groups. Compare your findings by answering the following questions:
  - Were any systems used by everyone? Which one(s)?
  - Were any systems not used by anyone? Which one(s)?
  - Which system was used most/least often?

- 5 Work in pairs. For nouns 1–8 below, look at the words in *italics* on the right that are all related to it in some way. Decide what system each relates to. If necessary, look at the words in the box below to help you.

1 industry	<i>field wells refineries slick exploration</i>
2 infrastructure	<i>lines bridges tunnels viaducts</i>
3 network	<i>mobile fibre-optic browse satellite</i>
4 system	<i>receiver dish communications channel weather</i>
5 web	<i>host access server directory connection computer</i>
6 supply	<i>tap treatment pressure filter purification</i>
7 grid	<i>national generators cables pylons</i>
8 supply	<i>pipelines industry fields appliance works</i>

electricity	gas	telephone	oil
satellite	water	Internet	railway

- 6 Work in pairs. Choose two of the nouns 1–8 in exercise 4 and describe how each of the words in *italics* relates to it.

**Example:**

- 1 industry                      *field wells refineries slick exploration*

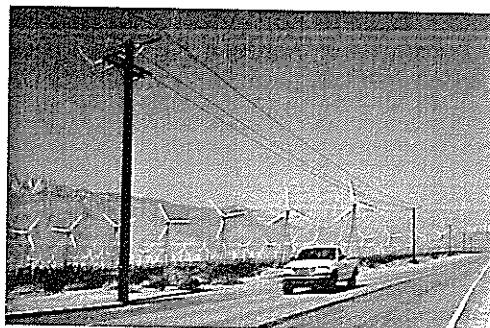
'Field' is where the oil is found.

'Well' is the apparatus that brings the oil to the surface.

...

- 7 Work in pairs. For sentences 1–7, complete each gap with a word from exercise 5.

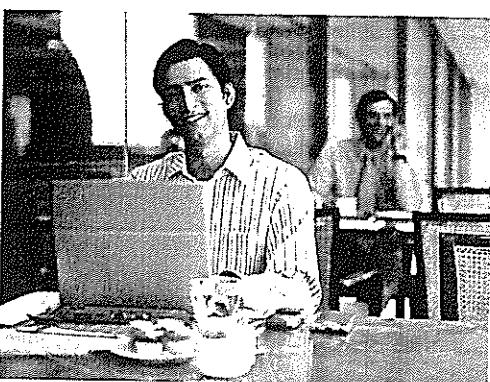
1 \_\_\_\_\_ is produced on wind farms, which then feed into the national \_\_\_\_\_.



2 The \_\_\_\_\_ is sent via \_\_\_\_\_ from \_\_\_\_\_ in remote areas and then piped to people's homes.

3 The safety of the \_\_\_\_\_ is taken for granted in many countries, but without the process of \_\_\_\_\_ the water many people are drinking is putting their lives at risk.

4 The transport of \_\_\_\_\_ from the \_\_\_\_\_ to the \_\_\_\_\_ can cause pollution, as we have seen with spillages at sea.



5 A \_\_\_\_\_ can be used to connect people in remote areas of the world that don't have landlines, but it can also be used to collect data on the \_\_\_\_\_.

6 The revival of interest in the train as an efficient means of transport has led to investment in \_\_\_\_\_ like new \_\_\_\_\_ connecting various towns.

7 If you have wireless \_\_\_\_\_ to the \_\_\_\_\_, you can browse and download information anywhere, but you have to make sure the \_\_\_\_\_ is secure.

- 8 Work in pairs. Think of an incident where a system or part of a system did not work. Describe to your partner what happened and how you reacted.



## The importance of infrastructure

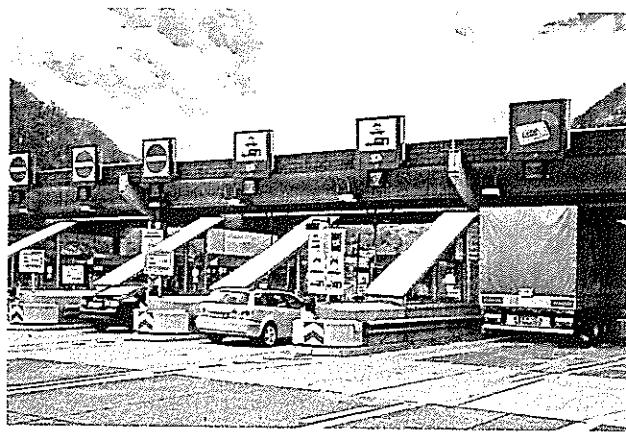
### Reading The importance of infrastructure

- 1 The reading passage below is about tolls on roads. What are they? Are they common in your country? Are they popular?
- 2 Spend two minutes scanning the passage to find words and phrases relating to the word *road*. Compare your list with a partner and then with the rest of the class.

## READING PASSAGE

You should spend about 20 minutes on **Questions 1–13**, which are based on the reading passage below.

### E-ZPass Was Just the Beginning



- A CALIFORNIA, Pennsylvania, Texas and Virginia may be quite different in many ways when it comes to the presidential primaries, but they do have one thing in common: all are grappling with how to collect tolls from the drivers who use their highways. Electronic toll collection is increasingly the obvious answer. Pennsylvania, which is trying to turn Interstate 80 into a toll road, is considering going completely electronic and not including cash lanes.
- B By charging tolls on an Interstate that had always been free, Pennsylvania hopes to generate the money needed to maintain this vital east-west artery, a major thoroughfare for trucks. Other states are also looking for ways to raise the money needed for highway repair, upkeep and expansion. Because resistance to raising taxes on gasoline and diesel remains strong, lawmakers are instead turning to tolls or, in governmental parlance, 'user fees'.
- C While Interstate 80 might appear to be a good place to go entirely electronic, the state may be forced to install some cash lanes because many drivers – including some in rental cars and those from states without toll roads – still pay with cash. Cash transactions are costly, though, because highway agencies must pay toll-takers, maintain plazas and safely transfer the cash to banks.

And for drivers already faced by a multitude of distractions, fumbling through pockets for nickels, dimes and quarters to pitch at toll collectors is not only frustrating, it can be dangerous.

- D Like fast-food restaurants, department stores and other businesses that handle cash, tolling agencies are introducing a variety of technologies to streamline the process and increase profits. The most common substitute for human toll collecting uses a combination of radio-frequency identification transponders, high-speed cameras and networked computers that read tags in windshields and instantaneously charge the driver's account, usually billed to their credit cards. Toll plazas are being redesigned so vehicles do not need to slow down.
- E E-ZPass, one of a growing array of technologies that are changing the way agencies collect tolls, is the ubiquitous version, available to drivers in a dozen states from Maine to Virginia. In just New York State, nearly 10 million tags are in use, three times the number in 1999.
- F The spread of electronic tolling is having a subtle and unexpected impact on motoring. Drivers need not weave through toll plazas in search of a lane that accepts cash, a particularly difficult task for those on motorcycles. Travel across many states no longer requires a hoard of change for tolls. And because they can check their toll payments online, businessmen do not need to save fistfuls of receipts for their expense reports.
- G Increasingly, electronic tags will be embedded into windshields, license plates and other places so drivers will no longer have to send off for a portable tag from a tolling agency. And because they are part of the car, they will be harder to steal.
- H Electronic tolling is changing the way drivers view tolls too. A study by an economist at M.I.T., Amy Finkelstein, found that drivers who pay their tolls electronically are less aware of the rates they pay.



She also found that rates at the tollbooths included in the study were up to 40 per cent higher on roads that accepted electronic tolls compared with those that did not. Drivers rarely like tolls, but they are willing to pay them – even if they are unaware of how much they are paying – if they are getting something in return, like less crowded lanes or a shorter wait at a tollbooth.

- I The more costly alternative would be to build at least one lane for a manned booth with offices nearby to store the cash. While fewer than half of Pennsylvania's drivers have an E-ZPass, the lanes would be designed with an eye toward removing them as the percentage rises. 'We're treating these cash lanes as temporary,' said Barry J. Schoch, vice president at McCormick Taylor, the engineering firm hired by the Pennsylvania Turnpike Commission to prepare a list of possible sites. 'In 50 years, there will be transponders built into the car, so if we build tollbooths, we will be able to convert them to some other use like rest or maintenance areas'.

J Some of the oldest and largest tolling agencies, like the Port Authority of New York and New Jersey, are studying how to phase out their cash lanes too. Because more than 71 per cent of transactions at the Port Authority's tunnels and bridges include an E-ZPass – up from 52 per cent in 2000 – Anthony E. Shorris, the agency's executive director, expects cash booths to disappear from those crossings over the next five years. The future, in fact, may be on display in places like Stockholm, where drivers do not need tags at all. There, cameras take pictures of every license plate, video recognition software reads the numbers and the owner is charged. While E-ZPass and other radio-tag systems are likely to remain because of their widespread use, agencies introducing tolls for the first time are looking more at these video-only systems, according to Naveen Lamba, a specialist in traffic management systems at I.B.M, which provides much of the technology for Stockholm's system. While there are concerns about the reliability of these systems and the privacy of the data they collect, Mr. Lamba said that drivers are increasingly comfortable with electronic tolling.

### Questions 1–5

The reading passage has ten paragraphs, A–J.

Which paragraph contains the following information?

- 1 an unforeseen effect of electronic tolls on the way people drive
- 2 tolls as a means of increasing revenue to fix the roads
- 3 a technological method of paying tolls without using tags in cars
- 4 an explanation of why cash tolls are still needed
- 5 why using cash lanes will only be very short-term

### Questions 6–9

Do the following statements agree with the claims of the writer in the reading passage?

Write:

- |                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| <b>YES</b>       | if the statement agrees with the claims of the writer     |
| <b>NO</b>        | if the statement contradicts the claims of the writer     |
| <b>NOT GIVEN</b> | if it is impossible to say what the writer thinks of this |

- 6 It is clear that taking tolls from road users is best done electronically.
- 7 Cash tolls are expensive to administer because of the expense of employing security guards at toll plazas.
- 8 The removal of cash tolls is only for financial gain.
- 9 Business people will benefit the most from the use of electronic tolling.



## The importance of infrastructure

### Questions 10–13

Choose the correct letter **A**, **B**, **C** or **D**.

- 10 One reason for having electronic tags implanted in the vehicles themselves is
  - A to reduce the administration costs of using electronic tolls.
  - B to increase the reliability of making toll payments.
  - C so that vehicles will be easier to monitor by toll agencies.
  - D so that they will not be removed easily by thieves.
- 11 Research by Amy Finkelstein showed that drivers
  - A do not know how much they pay.
  - B are more price-conscious when they pay.
  - C do not care how much the tolls are.
  - D are less tolerant than they were previously.
- 12 The proportion of E-ZPasses used in the Port Authority of New York and New Jersey has
  - A experienced a sizeable increase.
  - B remained fairly stable.
  - C seen a noticeable fall.
  - D fluctuated slightly.
- 13 According to Mr Lamba, electronic tolling is
  - A taking time to implement properly.
  - B meeting with some resistance among drivers.
  - C gaining greater acceptance among drivers.
  - D proving to be an expensive option.



### Reacting to the text

Are electronic collections devices just another way of raising money from the public?

Do you think toll systems control and restrict our lives or do they help us?

### Word building: Modal verbs to adjectives

Look at the extract below from the reading passage on page 184.

*While E-ZPass and other radio-tag systems are likely to remain because of their widespread use ...*

The meaning of the adjective *likely* can be expressed in the following ways:

*... will probably remain ...*

*it is probable that ... will remain ...*

*... should remain ...*

- 1 Work in pairs. For 1–9 below, underline the most suitable word in *italics*.
  - 1 Can the communications systems be improved? Yes, it's *possible/probable/certain*.
  - 2 They wouldn't build an extension of the railway line. They were very *unwilling/willing/likely* to do so.
  - 3 They didn't need to build more refineries. It was *unnecessary/necessary/possible*.
  - 4 The satellite should improve communications dramatically. At least that's the *expected/certain/unlikely* result, but nobody is sure.
  - 5 The government should hit its target. But that's only a *possible/probable/obligatory* outcome, not a certainty.

- 6 The oil company could do what it wanted without any interference from the government. They were *able/willing/possible* to do anything they wanted.
  - 7 Do safety measures have to be imposed on every construction project? Yes, I think it's *compulsory/optional/certain*.
  - 8 Oil will run out some time. It can't last for ever; that's *certain/essential/obligatory*.
  - 9 They don't have to build a motorway through the nature reserve; it's not *essential/possible/probable*.
- 2 Work in groups. In the following extract from IELTS Speaking Part 3, underline the modal verbs that show possibility, probability and obligation. Choose a suitable adjective from exercise 1 to replace each one. Make any other necessary changes.

**Examiner:** Can faster communication systems like broadband have an impact on people's lives?

**Candidate:** I think the development of faster communication systems than we have now can have an impact on local as well as national economies, as they should enable people to do business faster. Obviously, they can't solve every problem, but they can at least help. For a while, governments wouldn't invest in fibre optics, but now the cables are being installed everywhere. For example, in my home country they provide jobs for local people ...

- 3 What developments of infrastructure do you think there will be in your country in the near future?

Which developments do you think are necessary?

- 1 For 1–7 below, tick (✓) the items that are related to the research process. For each, decide what they mean and how they relate to the process.

- |                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1 aims and objectives | 5 data analysis     |
| 2 lectures            | 6 teaching          |
| 3 research question   | 7 literature review |
| 4 research findings   |                     |

- 2 Work in pairs. Decide which you think is the most difficult. Give reasons.

### 2.9 SECTION 3 Questions 21–30

#### Questions 21–23

Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**.

- 21 Ahmed's research is connected with the
- A impact of roads in urban areas.
  - B link between people and urban infrastructure.
  - C reasons behind system breakdowns.
- 22 Janice is finding the examining of her data
- A a lot of effort.
  - B an easy task.
  - C a slow process.
- 23 What did Janice think as she commenced her research project?
- A She assumed that it was going to be very hard.
  - B She imagined she would never be able to begin.
  - C She felt relaxed about the whole process.

**Don't forget!**  
Underline the words in the questions that warn you that the answer is coming soon.



## The importance of infrastructure

### Questions 24–28

What comments does Janice make about the various aspects of her research?

Choose five answers from the box and write the correct letter, A–G, next to questions 24–28.

- A fairly easy
- B very easy
- C fairly difficult
- D very difficult
- E most difficult
- F tiring
- G time-consuming

- 24 research question .....  
25 literature review .....  
26 research proposal .....  
27 designing the methods .....  
28 aims and objectives .....

### Questions 29 and 30

Choose **TWO** letters, A–F.

Which **two** of the following does Janice recommend Ahmed should contact for help with writing?

- A language centre
- B private teacher
- C student union
- D research supervisor
- E main library
- F course tutor

### Language focus: Concession

- 1 In IELTS Speaking and Writing you can make your argument more persuasive by conceding or agreeing with a point of view and then adding your own.

Look at the reading passage on page 184 and find an example of *may* used as a concession in the first paragraph. Which of the structures below can also be used?

- 1 *Although ... may*, ...    2 *While ... , might* ...

 Read more about concession in the Grammar reference on page 225.

- 2 Work in pairs. Rewrite 1–8 below so that they contain the words in brackets. Make any necessary changes and be careful with punctuation.

*Example:*

I can't deny this is an admirable idea. We will have to wait and see what the future holds. (though)

*Though I can't deny this is an admirable idea, we will have to wait and see what the future holds.*

- 1 Increasing the capacity of the phone network is a good solution to the problem. It is not the only one. (although ... may)
- 2 This is a sound argument. I think I'd want to see more funds made available for new carriages as well. (may ... but)
- 3 The facilities available are endless. Inner city conditions are cramped. (while ... may)
- 4 I don't like the idea of computers controlling systems like transport. They perform a vital function. (nevertheless)
- 5 I agree with the creation of high-speed communication systems. I can't help thinking that they will lead to more demands on workers and hence more stress. (much as)
- 6 They are expensive to maintain and upgrade. Extensive metro systems exist in many major cities. (may ... but)
- 7 I partly agree with the opinion expressed here. I think it is naive to suggest that increasing the fares will in the end lead to a better transport service. (but)
- 8 It's clear the quality of public services is improving. More needs to be done. (nonetheless)

3 Sentences a–e below develop the idea of five of the sentences in exercise 2. Match a–e below with a suitable idea in exercise 2.

- a It'll just put more cars on the road, and then revenue will decrease and there will be another problem.
- b The trains themselves could also be refurbished.
- c We need to ensure they are working for us and not us for them.
- d The line rental, for example, could be reduced.
- e This, in turn, will increase costs for companies.

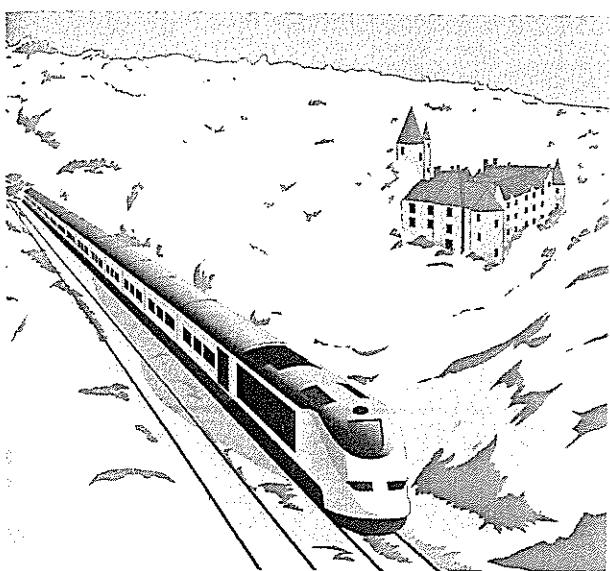
4 Use your own ideas to develop the other three sentences.

5 Work in pairs. Think of at least three issues in the news at the moment that you partly or largely agree with. Prepare reasons and examples to support your opinion and then add an outcome. Use the words and phrases for conceding and adding your opinion in exercises 1 and 2.

6 Explain your opinions on the issues you have chosen to another pair of students.

### Speaking

- 1 Work in pairs. In each sentence of the following extract from a Part 2 topic, a phrase is in the wrong place. Decide which phrases are in the wrong place and where they should go in the sentence.



*What I would like to describe is a journey that I made to see in France last winter a friend. The trip was a short five-day break to a small village, which is full of the most wonderful castles, in the Loire valley. To Paris I took the train and then to Tours, which is the largest city near the village I was visiting. The journey was exciting because it was to France my first visit. Which goes through the Channel Tunnel to Paris I was able to catch the train and take another train to Tours. The journey was very smooth, because the train network in France exceptionally well runs and the Eurostar train is well integrated with the French system. What made the special for me journey was the fact the trip marked my first journey to France, and my first time in the tunnel under the English Channel. But what it magical made, not just special or thrilling, was the snow. As we passed the snow fell through the countryside on the fairytale castles along the Loire. It was a time truly enchanting ...*

- 2 Decide which of the following topics is being discussed in exercise 1.

- 1 Describe a journey you made which was special to you.

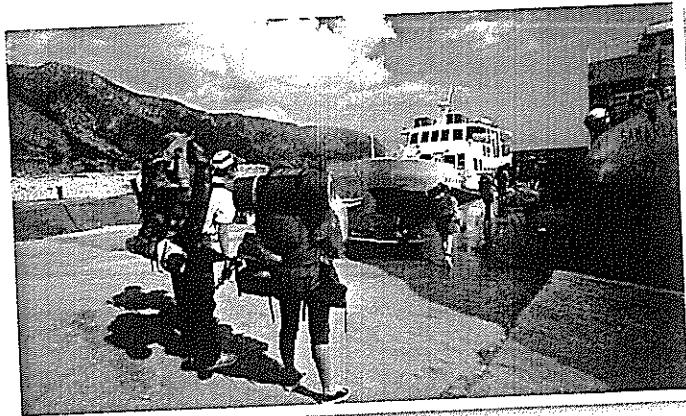
You should say:

when it took place  
where you went  
what happened during the journey  
and explain why it was special to you.

- 2 Describe a trip you made where something went wrong.

You should say:

when it took place  
where you went  
what happened during this journey  
and explain why this trip went wrong.



## The importance of infrastructure

- 3 Spend one minute making notes for the topic that wasn't discussed in exercise 1.
- 4 With a partner, take turns talking about the topic. When you have finished, look at each other's notes and decide whether you think your partner followed their notes or adapted them as they spoke.

### Before you begin!

- ◆ Keep your notes to a maximum of ten words so you do not read them.
- ◆ Write words or phrases vertically on the page so they are easy to see at a glance.
- ◆ Keep talking until the examiner indicates that you should stop.

- 1 Look at the Task 1 question below and then answer questions 1–6.

### Writing:

#### Task 1

#### WRITING TASK 1

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

*The table shows spending in the UK by visitors from North America and purpose of visit between 2002 and 2006.*

*Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.*

Write at least 150 words.

Spending in UK: visitors from North America and purpose of visit 2002 to 2006

	Spending (£ million)					Growth 2005-06 %
	2002	2003	2004	2005	2006	
<b>North America</b>						
Holiday	1,053	982	1,063	1,012	1,130	11.6
Business	859	815	866	896	1,108	23.6
Visiting friends or relatives	539	533	547	522	585	12.1
Miscellaneous	318	318	388	382	557	45.9
All visits	2,780	2,658	2,877	2,822	3,390	20.1

- 1 How many different visitor purposes are mentioned in the table?
- 2 What is the trend for each purpose?
- 3 How does the growth column relate to the other data?
- 4 Which line of information will help you write the overview?
- 5 What is the clear trend of the overview?
- 6 Is there an exception to the general trend that is evident in this line?
- 2 Decide which two of the following introductions are suitable for the question in exercise 1?
  - 1 The table provides a breakdown according to the purpose of their visit of how much American visitors to the UK spent between 2002 to 2006.
  - 2 The table illustrates spending in the UK by American tourists and purpose of visit between 2002 and 2006.
  - 3 The table gives data on the expenditure of American visitors to the UK according to the purpose of visit from 2002 to 2006.



- 3 You can add data to your answer in the following ways:
- *from ... to*: *Spending on holidays rose over the period from £1,053 million to £1,230 million.*
  - *with + noun + verb + ing*: *Spending on holidays rose over the period with expenditure increasing from £1,053 million to £1,230 million.*
  - *verb + ing*: *Spending on holidays rose over the period, increasing from £1,053 million to £1,230 million.*
  - *with + noun*: *Spending on holidays rose over the period with an increase from £1,053 million to £1,230 million.*

For 1–5 below, combine the two sentences using the structure in brackets.

**Example:**

*It is clear that the growth in expenditure increased steadily. The biggest rise occurred between 2005 and 2006.* (with + noun + verb + ing)

*It is clear that the growth in expenditure increased steadily with the biggest rise occurring between 2005 and 2006.*

- 1 There was a rise in expenditure on holidays over the period. Spending increased from £1,053 million to £1,230 million. (with + verb + ing)
- 2 The general trend for miscellaneous expenditure was clearly upward. It rose from £318 million to £557 million, a near 60% increase. (verb + ing)
- 3 Spending on business trips also went up. It climbed from £859 million to £1,108 million. (with + noun)
- 4 Climbing from £539 million in 2002, expenditure on visiting friends or relatives rose only slightly to £585 million. Most of the growth took place between 2005 and 2006. (with + noun)
- 5 The overall money spent went up. It was £2,780 million in 2002 and £3,390 million in 2006, a 20.1% increase. It is clear miscellaneous expenditure accounted for the bulk of the rise. (from ... to ...)

- 4 Work in groups. Use the checklist for Task 1 on page 209 to discuss the task below.

### WRITING TASK 1

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

*The table shows spending in the UK by visitors from Europe and purpose of visit between 2002 and 2006.*

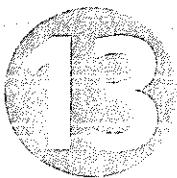
*Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.*

Write at least 150 words.

**Spending in UK: visitors from Europe and purpose of visit 2002 to 2006**

	Spending (£ million)					Growth 2005-06 %
	2002	2003	2004	2005	2006	
<b>Europe</b>						
Holiday	1,640	1,784	2,141	2,373	2,655	11.9
Business	1,833	1,848	1,994	2,237	2,614	16.9
Visiting friends or relatives	1,061	1,273	1,471	1,655	1,830	10.5
Miscellaneous	1,001	962	1,002	1,365	1,454	6.5
All visits	5,549	5,882	6,623	7,656	8,573	12.0

- 5 Write your own answer for the question. When you have finished, check your answer using the checklist on page 209.



# Review

## Vocabulary

- 1 Answer 1–10 below, as quickly as you can. Write no more than two words for each answer.
  - 1 What are built over rivers?
  - 2 What can be laid underground to carry optical fibres?
  - 3 What can be accessed from a computer to get information?
  - 4 What beams information to earth from space?
  - 5 What fuels can be found in fields?
  - 6 What is carried on tall towers or on cables under the ground?
  - 7 What is sometimes burned as fuel to cook food in an oven?
  - 8 What is filtered, treated and purified before being supplied to houses?
  - 9 What is each house connected to that supplies electricity?
  - 10 What is one possible term for a series of interconnecting roads?
- 2 Write a sentence for each of the questions above, use the verb in the question.

*Example:*

- 1 What are built over rivers?

*Bridges are built over rivers.*

- 3 Find and replace the jumbled words in the following extract from IELTS Speaking Part 3. Then decide which of the questions below the candidate was answering.

- 1 Do people have access to a wide range of services in your country?
- 2 Is the infrastructure of cities more important today than it used to be? Why do you think this is the case?

*'Mmm  
... I think it is. It's*

*acciali because without certain aspects of the stureinfraruct in modern cities people nowadays would be totally lost. The tenkwor is very complex and made up of fefrendit cesvseri, but I think people take many of them like relectictyi and water for tngrade and do not really prapetacia them until they are cut off for one reason or another. At one time, and not that long ago, people were able to mend many things that broke down themselves. Now a whole series of cevseri itrindesus exist to connect us to the water slyup or the nonaialt ridg or to nnrctecoe the telephone when it is cut off.'*

## Reading

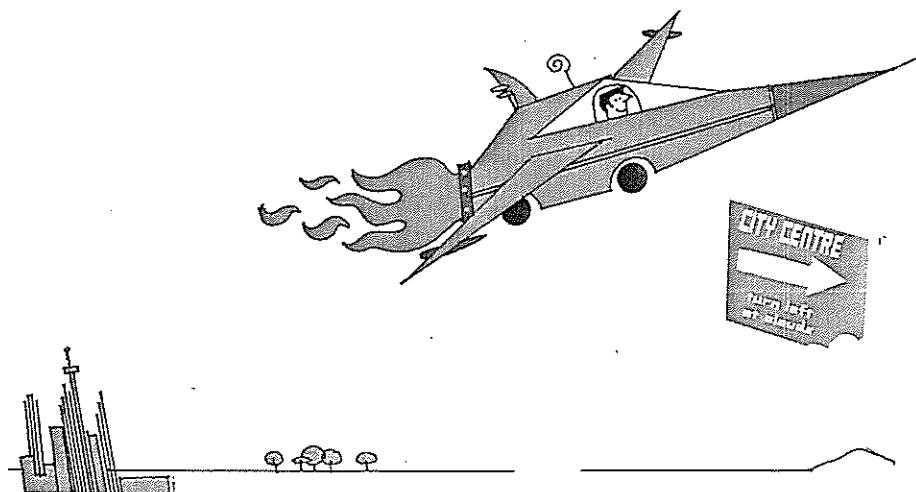
In the following text based on part of an IELTS Speaking Part 3 answer, replace the words in *italics* with a word from the reading passage on page 184.

I am not sure that people can cope with struggling with yet another electronic service like toll roads. I personally can't see why *lanes where people pay with money* cannot be kept. Why does everything have to be done in the interest of a few companies. They say they want to *make the service much more efficient*, as the roads are like *large veins in the bodies that carry blood to and from the heart*. I can understand they want more money to repair and *Maintain* and even expand the road network. Yet I can't see how phasing out situations where *money changes hands* will help. And booths *that have people in them* bring a personal touch. So do we really want something up in space looking down at chips on the glass at the front of the car and reading the metal plates with the car's numbers on them?



## Word building

- 1 Match 1–7 below with a suitable response a–g.
- 1 He wouldn't do it for any amount of money.
  - 2 May I park here?
  - 3 The company didn't need to increase access fees.
  - 4 The train should arrive on time.
  - 5 Do you think it can happen?
  - 6 The government shouldn't have said that.
  - 7 Do safety measures have to be adhered to?
- a I'm not sure if it's allowed.
  - b Do you think that's likely?
  - c Yes. You're right it wasn't necessary.
  - d Oh yes, it's possible.
  - e Mmm, they were a bit critical.
  - f Well yes, they are compulsory.
  - g He doesn't sound very willing.
- 2 Complete the gaps with an adjective that reflects the modal verb in the first sentence.
- 1 Maintaining communication systems is vital for modern economies. This is not optional; it's \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2 Old buildings don't have to be knocked down in today's cities. It's not \_\_\_\_\_ as they can be incorporated into a modern landscape.
  - 3 I wouldn't agree to his suggestion. In fact, I was very \_\_\_\_\_ to do so.
  - 4 They might build more roads. It's \_\_\_\_\_, but I'm not sure.
  - 5 The problem of satellite debris in space has to be dealt with. It's \_\_\_\_\_ for the safety of everyone.
  - 6 Cities will soon be dealing with highways in the air for flying cars. It's almost \_\_\_\_\_ to happen.



## Concession

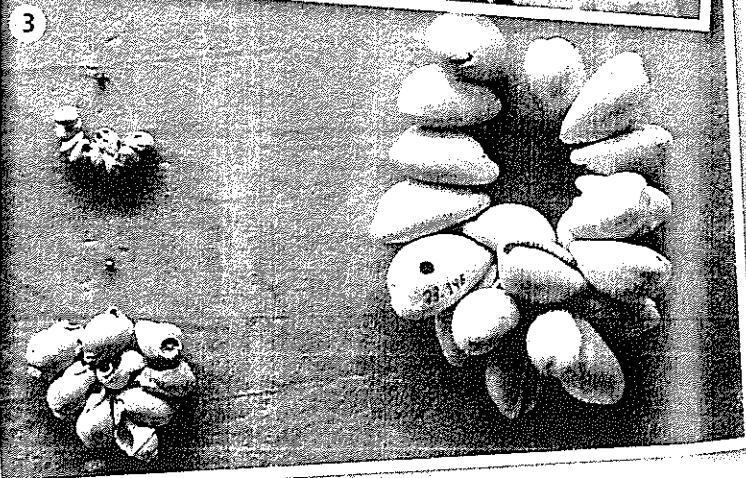
- In sentences 1–6 below, find the error that confuses the meaning. Decide what the correct sentence should be.
- 1 Clean water may be taken for granted in the West, but fortunately there are places in the world where it is rare.
  - 2 Although the chances of bringing electricity to every home looks possible, it's a worthy aim.
  - 3 While delays may not be as frequent as they were, the rail network is not as chaotic as it used to be.
  - 4 Much as I love surfing the web, I feel safe while doing so.
  - 5 He says he's an expert in water purification, but he has made serious mistakes.
  - 6 While the neighbourhood may be as safe as people say, I will go near it.

# Money and happiness

## Vocabulary: Money matters



Work in groups. Describe each of the photographs. Then discuss the questions below.



- Where were coins first used?
- Do you know of any places or situations where people exchange or barter goods? Have you ever bartered or exchanged goods?
- What is your reaction to the following quote from Benjamin Franklin?

*'Money makes the world go round.'*



Make a list of words and phrases associated with the word *money*. Then compare your list with a partner.



Work in pairs. The word *money* collocates with the words *government* and *problems* to form the compound nouns *government money* and *money problems*. Is it possible to say *money government* or *problems money*? Decide whether the following words go before or after the word *money*.

- |              |              |               |               |
|--------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 management | 3 taxpayers  | 5 paper       | 7 counterfeit |
| 2 market     | 4 laundering | 6 sponsorship | 8 public      |

Work in pairs. For 1–12 below, **circle** the noun that is in the correct position.

**Example:**

finance	government/state/capital	finance
1 finance	director/minister/department	finance
2 finances	company/government/state/family/household	finances
3 cash	reserves/flow/payment/settlement/limit/crisis/crop	cash
4 currency	conversion/markets/speculation/fluctuation/reserves/crisis	currency
5 credit	agreement/arrangement/facilities/terms/limit/transfer	credit
6 debt	collection/collector/burden/mountain	debt
7 savings	account/plan/bank	savings
8 spending	consumer/government/public/welfare/education	spending
9 spending	programme/target/cut/limit/money/power/spree	spending
10 expenditure	consumer/government/public/welfare/education	expenditure
11 price	war/range/increase/cut/tag	price
12 income	capital/investment/household/family	income

For 1–8 below, cross out the incorrect words in *italics*.

**Example:**

More *government* *money* *government* was allocated to improve local bus services.

- 1 A *cash crop* *cash* is a valuable source of income for many families in agricultural communities, but *cash flow* *cash* can be a problem because produce is usually seasonal. This can lead to a *cash crisis* *cash* for local farmers.
- 2 *Money paper* *money* was invented by the Chinese.
- 3 *Education expenditure* *education* has declined at a time when few working in the field think it should. The current *expenditure level* *expenditure* should at least be maintained.
- 4 *Family finances* *family* are often the concern of the *finance minister* *finance*, especially when making funding decisions.
- 5 *Management money* *management* needs to be taught as much to adults at work and students in university as to school children.
- 6 A fall in a country's foreign *currency reserves* *currency* can trigger a *currency crisis* *currency*.
- 7 Many prominent individuals have called for the *burden debt* *burden* of poor nations to be reduced by cheap loans or complete cancellation.
- 8 Normally I don't have so much *spending money* *spending* available. But one of the happiest days I have had recently was when I won a large sum of money and I went on a *spree spending* *spree*.

**O** Work in groups. Think of at least three ways that money has directly or indirectly affected your life in the past week. For example, paying for transport with cash or an electronic card, giving you a place to sleep, etc. Take turns describing your experiences. Ask questions about each other's experiences.

## Listening

RECEPTION

Work in pairs. Skim questions 31–40. Decide what the topic of the talk is.

What do you think companies can do to make their workers happy? For example, what types of in-house training programmes can companies provide for staff?

### 2.10 SECTION 4 Questions 31–40

#### Questions 31–34

Choose the correct letter, A, B or C.

- 31 What point does the speaker make about people's attitude to business?
- A Their understanding of business practices is fairly limited.
  - B They wrongly believe that it is only about financial gain.
  - C Some people are changing their attitude to wealth creation.
- 32 According to the speaker, one positive aspect of business is that
- A people profit from the jobs it creates.
  - B its attitude to employees is changing.
  - C it gives young people discipline.
- 33 What does the speaker say about how her company helps local communities?
- A Care is taken to focus support where needed most.
  - B It tries to put some money back into the local areas.
  - C Help is given to improve numeracy standards.
- 34 How does the speaker say the company's training programme changed?
- A It was managed very carefully.
  - B It grew in its own way.
  - C It developed very fast.

#### Questions 35–40

Complete the sentences below.

Write NO MORE THAN THREE WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER for each answer.

##### Further developments in the training scheme

- 35 Workers were encouraged to put their own ..... first.
- 36 Full-time staff members were each allocated ..... weekly for training.
- 37 Some more experienced workers decided to ..... for nothing to various organizations who need professional help.



##### The effects of the scheme

- 38 ..... from work through illness have been reduced enormously.
- Productivity was not affected.
- 39 The company has seen its profit go up by .....
- 40 A reduction in staff turnover has led to a cut in .....
- And the cost of training new staff members has lessened.

Some people think the best way to improve productivity is to help employees enjoy their work. Others think that productivity can be raised by increasing salaries. Which view do you agree with? Give reasons.



## Word building: Values and beliefs

Look at the following quote from the speaker in the listening practice on page 196.

*... our accountancy firm adheres to a strict ethical code ...*

Can you say *moral code* instead? What is the difference between 'ethics' and 'morals'?

Match the words below to their meaning a–g.

- |              |  |
|--------------|--|
| 1 standards  | a ideas that people believe are true                                   |
| 2 ethics     | b ideas or theories on which a system of beliefs is based              |
| 3 values     | c traditional practices that people in a society follow                |
| 4 customs    | d principles of right and wrong accepted by a society                  |
| 5 beliefs    | e a set of principles that people use to decide what is right or wrong |
| 6 principles | f traditional principles of good behaviour                             |
| 7 morals     | g principles and beliefs that influence how a community lives morally  |

Work in pairs. Make a list of as many words as you can from the word *values*. When you have written down all the words you know, check your answers in a dictionary.

Complete the gaps in the text below with words relating to the word *valuable*. Use the prompts given to help you.

\_\_\_\_\_ (plural noun) are standards that individual people attach great importance to. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (verb) something in your life then you treasure it enormously. \_\_\_\_\_ (plural noun) like precious objects made of gold and diamonds may be \_\_\_\_\_ (adjective) to some people as status symbols, but they are \_\_\_\_\_ (adjective) when compared to attributes like honesty, integrity, loyalty and trust.

5 Complete the gaps in the text below with words relating to the word *principle*. Use the prompts given to help you.

Philosophy can teach people the \_\_\_\_\_ (plural noun) of right and wrong, but it is becoming increasingly difficult for people to be \_\_\_\_\_ (adjective) in life and maintain a high moral standard. Unfortunately, \_\_\_\_\_ (adjective) people are found in all walks of life, whether it be business or politics, so one must be on one's guard to make sure one doesn't do anything that compromises one's \_\_\_\_\_ (plural noun).

6 Complete the gaps in the text below with words relating to the words *ideal*, *moral* and *ethics*. Use the prompts given to help you.

People are often accused of being \_\_\_\_\_ (adjective) rather than realistic when pursuing their \_\_\_\_\_ (plural noun). It is easy to attack someone whose personal \_\_\_\_\_ (plural noun) or \_\_\_\_\_ (adjective) stance you don't agree with.

Work in groups. Discuss the question below. Half of the group should talk about the advantages and the other half should talk about the disadvantages.

'People today get their values from national figures like politicians and celebrities such as sports stars and pop stars. What are the advantages and disadvantages of this? Give reasons and examples.'

## Language focus: Substitution and ellipsis

- 1 Look at the following quote from the speaker in the listening practice on page 196. Then answer the questions below.

*It is also about bringing people together and making links and contributing to the economy of the country. But in doing so our accountancy firm adheres to a strict ethical code.*

- 1 In the second sentence, what does the word *so* replace from the first sentence?
- 2 What happens if the words are repeated?
- 3 What happens if people use substitution like this a lot in writing or speaking?
- 4 Which common expression in speech do you know where the word *so* is used like this?
-  Read more about substitution and ellipsis in the Grammar reference on page 226.
- 2 Work in pairs. Match texts 1–8 below with a suitable continuation a–h.
- 1 Companies can help local communities to develop by putting back some of the profits they have made from the local people.
- 2 My grandmother told us how to behave when we were young
- 3 People follow the traditions and ways of the society they belong to.
- 4 The government should introduce philosophy into the school curriculum.
- 5 I left home when I was 18 to go to university.
- 6 Detailed analysis has been done on what makes people happy.
- 7 My family have always adhered to the traditions of the community we came from and
- 8 According to some people, moral standards on television are declining and should therefore be raised.
- a and continued to do so when we were adults.
- b but ways need to be found to apply such research for the benefit of the public.
- c I suppose I will continue to do so in spite of the pressures to the contrary.
- d In doing so they believe that the general behaviour in society will be improved.
- e I did so with some trepidation, but it turned out to be exciting in the end.
- f Doing so would have a beneficial effect on student behaviour.
- g Handing down such customs from generation to generation is important if a community is to survive.
- h Such philanthropic behaviour would set a good example for other organizations.
- 3 For 1–8 in exercise 2, underline the words and phrases of substitution and the words they replace.
- 4 For sentences 1–7 below, cross out any unnecessary words.
- 1 Although the government wanted to stop funding the railway venture, they weren't able to stop funding it.
- 2 The banks didn't want the policy on extending loans to small businesses to change, but the government did want the policy to change.
- 3 Some people don't believe that there is a clear link between happiness and money, while others do think there is.
- 4 The fact that health, wealth and happiness are often linked together when people talk about happiness must mean they are linked.
- 5 The college was praised for student behaviour and success as it hoped it would be praised.
- 6 The university didn't invest as much in delivering subjects like philosophy as it could have invested.
- 7 My father laid down the law with us when we were children, but my mother didn't lay down the law.



**Speaking**

IELTS Part 3

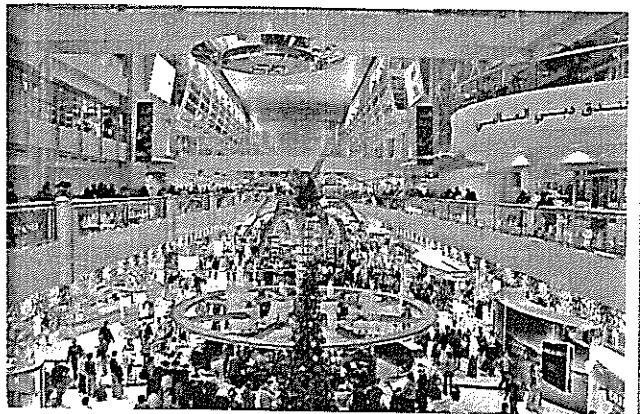
- 1 Work in pairs. Read the following Part 3 questions. Then match the ideas in the list below to a suitable question.

**Money and happiness**

Do you think people associate money with happiness? Why?  
 Do you think it's possible to lead a happy life without money? How?  
 What advantages does money bring to people's lives?  
 What other factors do you think are necessary to lead a happy life?

**The influence of money**

Do people attach too much importance to money nowadays? Why?  
 How can money sometimes control people's lives?  
 In what ways can money be used for the good of humanity?

*technological gadgets**overemphasize/overrate money**it controls/restricts/governs every aspect of people's lives**redistribution of wealth**allows people to do things they want**brings freedom**money not everything, other factors**indulge in buying consumer goods**life can be difficult without**health/work/friends**having more time**reduces/increases anxiety**richer nations helping poor nations/people*

- 2 Work in pairs. Use the ideas in the list to discuss the questions. Then take turns asking each other the questions. When you have finished, give each other feedback using the checklist on page 210.

**Reading**

This Reading Passage

- 1 Scan the reading passage on page 200 for words that are synonyms of 1–8 below.

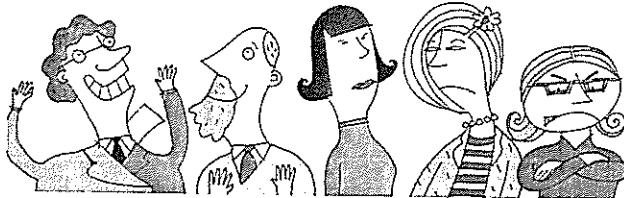
1 deal with	3 complete	5 poverty	7 move
2 happiness	4 unceasing	6 step	8 community

- 2 Work in pairs. Each choose one paragraph to skim. Then briefly explain what it is about to your partner. Find another pair of students that have chosen the same paragraph and check that you agree.

As there is no title, look at the last question and skim the questions to get the gist of the passage. Then skim the text.

## READING PASSAGE

You should spend about 20 minutes on **Questions 1–13**, which are based on the reading passage below.



- A All in all, it was probably a mistake to look for the answer to the eternal question – ‘Does money buy happiness’ – from people who practice what’s called the dismal science. For when economists tackled the question, they started from the observation that when people put something up for sale they try to get as much for it as they can, and when people buy something they try to pay as little for it as they can. Both sides in the transaction, the economists noticed, are therefore behaving as if they would be more satisfied (happier, dare we say) if they wound up receiving more money (the seller) or holding on to more money (the buyer). Hence, more money must be better than less, and the only way more of something can be better than less of it is if it brings you greater contentment. The economists’ conclusion: the more money you have, the happier you must be.
- B ‘Psychologists have spent decades studying the relation between wealth and happiness,’ writes Harvard University psychologist Daniel Gilbert in his best-selling ‘Stumbling on Happiness,’ and they have generally concluded that wealth increases human happiness when it lifts people out of abject poverty and into the middle class, but that it does little to increase happiness thereafter.
- C That flies in the face of intuition, not to mention economic theory. According to standard economics, the most important commodity you can buy with additional wealth is choice. If you have \$20 in your pocket, you can decide between steak and peanut butter for dinner, but if you have only \$1 you’d better hope you already have a jar of jelly at home. Additional wealth also lets you satisfy additional needs and wants, and the more of those you satisfy the happier you are supposed to be.
- D The trouble is choice is not all it’s claimed to be. Studies show that people like selecting from among maybe half a dozen kinds of pasta at the grocery store but find 27 choices overwhelming, leaving them chronically on edge that they could have chosen a better one than they did. And wants, which are nice to be able to afford, have a bad habit of becoming needs (iPod, anyone?), of which an advertising and media-saturated culture create endless numbers. Satisfying needs brings less emotional well-being than satisfying wants.
- E The nonlinear nature of how much happiness money can buy – lots more happiness when it

moves you out of penury and into middle-class comfort, hardly any more when it lifts you from millionaire to decamillionaire – comes through clearly in global surveys that ask people how content they feel with their lives. In a typical survey people are asked to rank their sense of well-being or happiness on a scale of 1 to 7, where 1 means ‘not at all satisfied with my life’ and 7 means ‘completely satisfied.’ Of the American multimillionaires who responded, the average happiness score was 5.8. Homeless people in Calcutta came in at 2.9. But before you assume that money does buy happiness after all, consider who else rated themselves around 5.8: the Inuit of northern Greenland, who do not exactly lead a life of luxury, and the cattle-herding Masai of Kenya, whose dung huts have no electricity or running water. And proving Gilbert’s point about money buying happiness only when it lifts you out of abject poverty, slum dwellers in Calcutta – one economic rung above the homeless – rate themselves at 4.6.

- F Studies tracking changes in a population’s reported level of happiness over time have also dealt a death blow to the ‘money buys happiness’ claim. Since World War II the gross domestic product per capita has tripled in the United States. But people’s sense of well-being, as measured by surveys asking some variation of ‘Overall, how satisfied are you with your life?’, has barely budged. Japan has had an even more meteoric rise in GDP per capita since its postwar misery, but measures of national happiness have been flat, as they have also been in Western Europe during its long postwar boom, according to social psychologist Ruut Veenhoven of Erasmus University in Rotterdam. A 2004 analysis of more than 150 studies on wealth and happiness concluded that ‘economic indicators have glaring shortcomings’ as approximations of well-being across nations, wrote Ed Diener of the University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign, and Martin E. P. Seligman of the University of Pennsylvania. ‘Although economic output has risen steeply over the past decades, there has been no rise in life satisfaction ... and there has been a substantial increase in depression and distrust.’
- G If money doesn’t buy happiness, what does? Grandma was right when she told you to value health and friends, not money and stuff. Or as Diener and Seligman put it, once your basic needs are met ‘differences in well-being are less frequently due to income, and are more frequently due to factors such as social relationships and enjoyment at work.’ Other researchers add fulfillment, a sense that life has meaning, belonging to civic and other groups and living in a democracy that respects individual rights and the rule of law. If a nation wants to increase its population’s sense of well-being, says Veenhoven, it should make ‘less investment in economic growth and more in policies that promote good governance, liberties, democracy, trust and public safety.’

**Questions 1–5**

The reading passage has seven paragraphs, A–G.

Which paragraph contains the following information?

**NB** You may use any letter more than once.

- 1 a suggestion that less emphasis ought to be placed on economic development
- 2 evidence that the lack of money does not necessarily lead to unhappiness
- 3 some suggested non-monetary grounds for being happy
- 4 an explanation of the monetarist's assumption that wealth breeds happiness
- 5 proof that an increase in a country's wealth does not make people more content

**Questions 6–9**

Do the following statements agree with the information given in the reading passage?

Write:

**TRUE** if the statement agrees with the information

**FALSE** if the statement contradicts the information

**NOT GIVEN** if there is no information on this

- 6 According to the general conclusion of psychologists, people are not made much happier by an increase in wealth after a certain threshold.
- 7 Research indicates that a narrow range of options increases shopper anxiety.
- 8 More multimillionaires took part in one survey than was expected.
- 9 Up until the Second World War money influenced people's happiness more profoundly.

**Questions 10–12**

Complete the sentences below.

Choose **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** from the passage for each answer.

- 10 Diener and Seligman claimed that there were clear ..... when using the economy to gauge the relationship between money and happiness.
- 11 Despite improvements in the economy in recent years, ..... has not increased.
- 12 People's take-home pay has less impact on happiness than ..... and pleasure derived from employment.

**Question 13**

Choose the correct letter **A**, **B**, **C** or **D**.

Which of the following is the most suitable title for the reading passage?

- A How self achievement affects happiness
- B Why money doesn't buy happiness
- C How happiness has declined since World War II
- D What economists think about happiness and money

**Reacting to the text**

What is your reaction to the reading passage. Does money make people happy? Give examples from your own knowledge and experience.

**Writing:****REVISES**

Work in pairs. Check that you understand all the words in the table and the pie chart.

**WRITING TASK 1**

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

*The table provides information about satisfaction with living standards in England by age in the year 2007. The pie chart shows how confident people are about the future.*

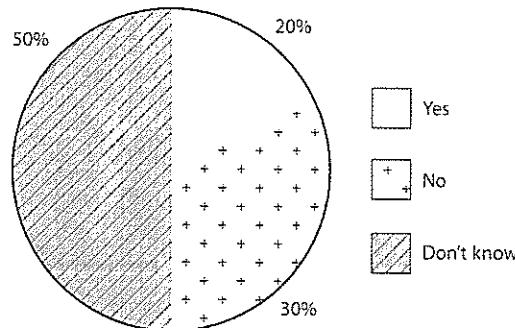
*Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.*

Write at least 150 words.

**Satisfaction with standard of living**

England	Percentages		
	16–21	50–59	60 and over
Very satisfied	34	32	34
Fairly satisfied	49	52	55
Neither satisfied nor dissatisfied	13	9	6
Fairly dissatisfied	4	5	4
Very dissatisfied	0	2	1

Do you think your living standards will improve in the near future?

Work in pairs. Underline mistakes 1–5 below in the following sample answer and correct them.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 an extra word that is not necessary  | 4 a definite article that is missing     |
| 2 an example where an adjective and adverb are not in the correct position in the sentence | 5 a verb that is not in the correct form |
| 3 a noun that is spelt incorrectly   |  |

The chart shows how happy various age groups were about living standards in England in 2007 with pie chart indicating people's optimism about the future.

Overall, people indicated that they were very content with their living standards, with only a few expressing dissatisfaction. For example, the positive rating for those 60 and over stood at 89 per cent against only 5 per cent for the latter. The youngest age group were similarly happy with 83 per cent being satisfied with their standard of living (34 per cent for very and 49 fairly satisfied). As regarding the dissatisfaction rating, only 4 per cent were fairly dissatisfied with none very dissatisfied. By contrast, the 50–59 age group were content less slightly (7 per cent), but the greater part (84%) were fairly or very satisfied (52 against 32 per cent). A refusal to take sides about their standard of living was most obvious in the youngest category (13%), followed by the 50–59 age group (9%) and the 60 and over (6%).

Turning to the pie chart, optimism about the future is shared by fewer people, 20% compared to 30% who are pessimistic and 50% non-committal.



Work in pairs. For 1–5 below, decide which part of the sample answer in exercise 2 the suggested rewrites a and b relate to. Decide whether one or both of the suggestions improve the text.

- 1 a gives you an idea about the satisfaction level of people about living standards  
b provides a breakdown of the degree of satisfaction about
- 2 a expressed more satisfaction than dissatisfaction with  
b were kind of more satisfied with
- 3 a Take those who are 60 and over. Their positive rating  
b An example is the 60 and over, they
- 4 a the biggest number  
b the overwhelming majority
- 5 a a smaller proportion of the public  
b by a tinier part of people

Write your own answer for the Task 1 question below. When you have finished, check your answer using the checklist on page 209.

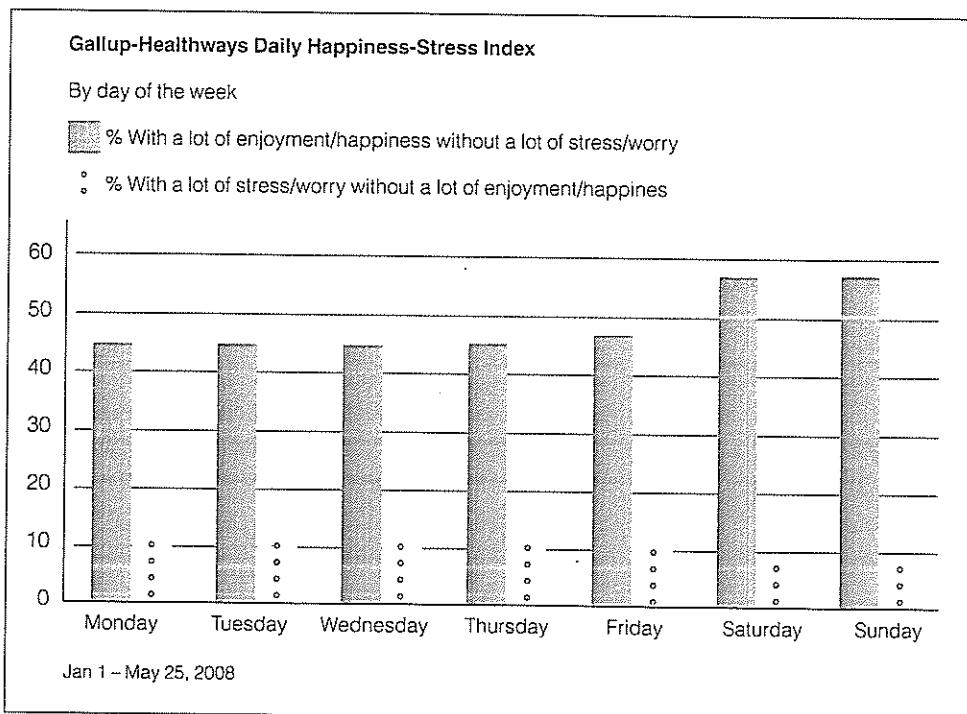
### WRITING TASK 1

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

*The chart below gives information about the Daily Happiness-Stress Index in the USA during one week in 2008.*

*Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.*

Write at least 150 words.



# Review

## Vocabulary

Match each noun 1–10 below with a noun a–j to make a compound noun. There may be more than one possible answer.

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| 1 paper    | a limit    |
| 2 currency | b mountain |
| 3 price    | c war      |
| 4 state    | d bank     |
| 5 debt     | e spending |
| 6 family   | f income   |
| 7 cash     | g reserves |
| 8 savings  | h crop     |
| 9 consumer | i money    |
| 10 credit  | j finance  |

For sentences 1–10 below, complete each gap with a compound noun from exercise 1.

- 1 When the older children and both parents were working, the \_\_\_\_\_ increased and they were able to save some money.
- 2 Rich as well as poor countries can be weighed down with a vast \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Over-reliance on a \_\_\_\_\_ like maize or bananas for income is precarious because of price fluctuations.
- 4 I deposited all my money in a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 The \_\_\_\_\_ soared after the rise in the value of the dollar.
- 6 Just like coins, \_\_\_\_\_ is in danger of disappearing as people pay even for small items electronically.
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ is often used as a means of gauging people's confidence in the health of the economy.
- 8 A \_\_\_\_\_ erupted on the high street among clothes retailers to attract customers to their shops.
- 9 I try not to exceed my \_\_\_\_\_, though sometimes it is difficult to resist.
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ for major projects is often cut off at the whim of politicians.

## Word building

In the following extract from an IELTS Writing Task 2 answer, underline the correct word in **bold**.

... it is crucial for children to be taught the traditions, including the *beliefs/ethics* and customs of their community so that they can learn the basic principles/standards of what is right or wrong. The aim of teaching people about morality is not to make them *moralistic/amoral*, but so that they can behave in a way that shows respect to others. If children, for example, are taught a code of behaviour without going deeply into *ethics/morality* which is more theoretical, then standards/principles of behaviour will be improved ...

- 1 Use the words in brackets to help you complete the gaps in the following response to an IELTS Speaking Part 3 question. Then decide what the examiner's question was.

*I don't think so. I think young people are more \_\_\_\_\_ (an adjective connected with 'real'), because they are more in tune with what's going on in the world. So no I wouldn't say they are \_\_\_\_\_ (an adjective that indicates the person is naive and is used as a criticism). I don't see anything wrong with young people pursuing their \_\_\_\_\_ (a noun that is related to the previous adjective) and trying to change the world as long as they don't harm others. I think it's a question of having the right \_\_\_\_\_ (an adjective connected with principles of right and wrong) upbringing and applying that to better oneself and others.*

## Substitution and ellipsis

- 1 For 1–5 below, complete the sentences with a word or phrase from each box A and B.

A	B
while others	do
but clearly	do
I think everyone else	didn't
but the audience	they are
but fortunately there are many who	should

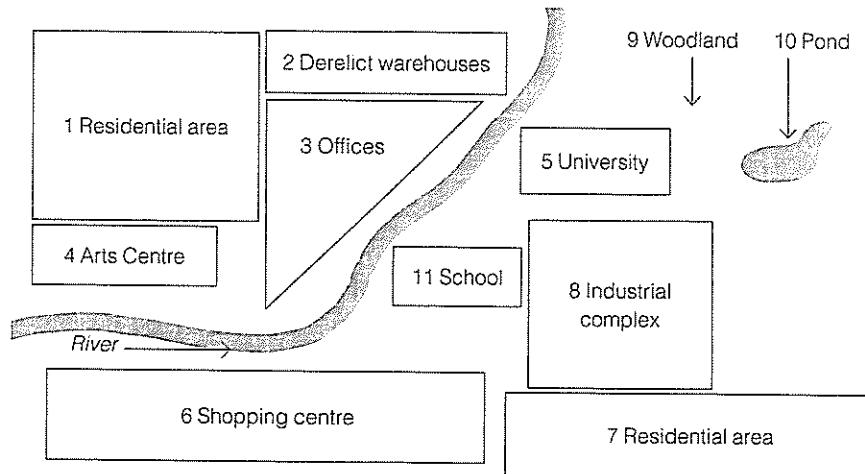
- 1 The television presenter claimed that work was a very important factor in making people happy,
  - 2 Some people don't believe in the need to save money for the future,
  - 3 Many people don't want to do volunteer work to help others,
  - 4 Politicians often think the opinions of ordinary people are not important when they are in power,
  - 5 Just as I have had the chance to have a free education,
- 2 Complete the gaps in the following extract from an IELTS Writing Task 2 answer using substitution or ellipsis.

*Good health is a major factor in making people happy. For example, when people are ill, they are not able to function properly even if 1 \_\_\_\_\_. 2 \_\_\_\_\_. obstacles can induce mental as well as physical illness, which can be difficult to stop no matter how hard people try to 3 \_\_\_\_\_. Although someone has apparently recovered from a car accident, it may not be obvious for a long time that he or she in fact 4 \_\_\_\_\_ for a long time.*

# Additional material

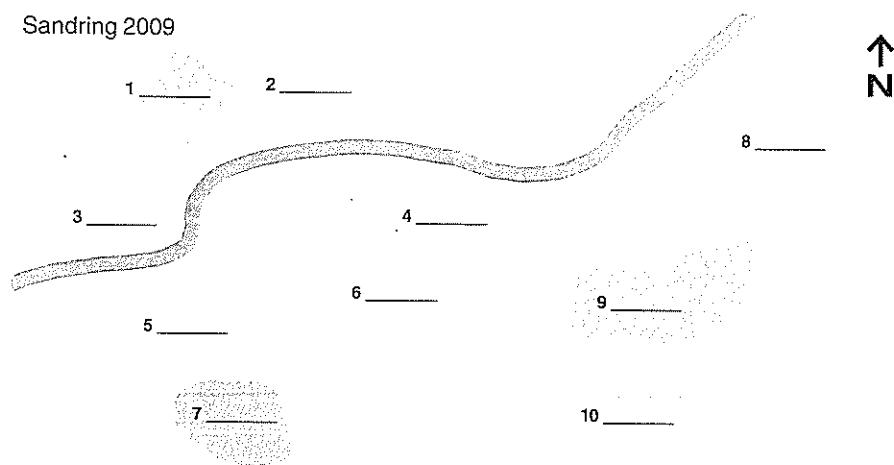
## Unit 8 Writing Task 1 (page 112)

1



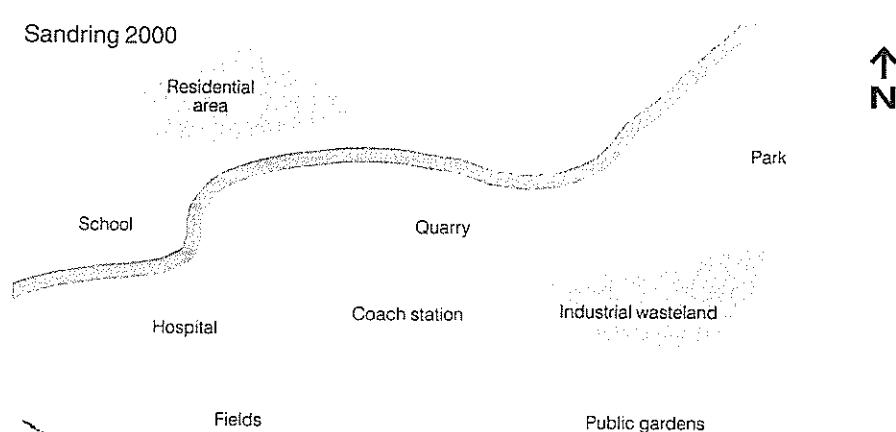
## Unit 8 Writing Task 1 (page 112)

3 Student A: Sandring 2009



## Unit 8 Writing Task 1 (page 113)

4 Sandring 2000



## Ready for Writing Describing a graph (page 129)

- 1 Is the overview good? Why/ Why not?
- 2 Does the student use a range of complex sentences? Give examples.
- 3 Does the student list pieces of data or does he summarize the information? Give examples.
- 4 Is there a range of linking devices? Give examples.
- 5 How many examples of comparison and contrast can you find? Give examples (including verbs).
- 6 Are there more verbs or nouns of rise and fall? Give examples. What is the effect of this?
- 7 In the third paragraph, find examples of verbs of rise and fall.
- 8 Find examples of a variety of noun phrases used to avoid repetition when referring to the age groups.

## Unit 12 Writing Task 2 (page 173)

### Checklist for articles

- 1 Is the noun countable? → Is it singular? → Is the context in which it is used inside and outside the text general? → Use the indefinite article, a (or an).
- 2 Is the noun countable? → Is it plural? → Is the context in which it is used inside and outside the text general? → Don't use the zero article and put the noun in the plural.
- 3 Is the noun countable? → Is it plural? → Is the context in which it is used inside and outside the text specific? → Use the definite article and put the noun in the plural.
- 4 Is the noun uncountable? → It is therefore singular → Is the context in which it is used inside and outside the text general? → Use the zero article.
- 5 Is the noun uncountable? → It is therefore singular → Is the context in which it is used inside and outside the text specific? → Use the definite article.

*Remember: You need to recognize whether the context in which you write, read or hear the noun is general or specific.*

## Unit 13 Vocabulary: Nouns related to systems (page 182)

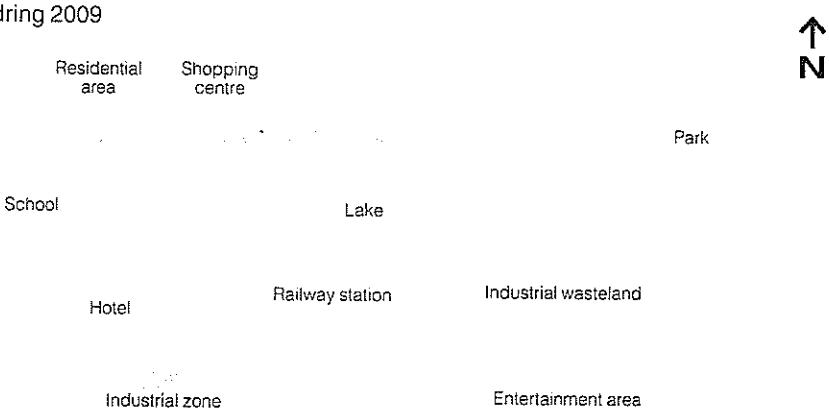
### Questionnaire

Have you used each of the following systems today?

	You	Student 1	Student 2	Student 3
1 transport system	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 road network	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 water service	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 electricity grid	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5 electronic network	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6 telephone network	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7 radio network	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8 satellite system	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9 Internet	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10 GPS system	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11 Other _____	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

## Unit 8 Writing Task 1 (page 112)

3 Student B: Sandring 2009



## Unit 9 Writing Task 2 (page 125)

built/natural environment    educate in general about the past  
 understand history    respect buildings/property    appreciate beauty  
 pride in one's heritage    protect environment    helps relaxation  
 promote mental/physical health

# IELTS Writing checklists

## IELTS Writing Task 1

- 1 Have you written at least 150 words?
- 2 Have you completed the task according to the rubric?
- 3 Have you paraphrased the rubric in your introduction or just copied it?
- 4 Have you summarized the information and not listed every piece of data?
- 5 Have you written an overview?
- 6 Have you included any information that is not there?
- 7 Have you left any important data out?
- 8 Have you just listed information or have you compared it?
- 9 Have you divided your answer into paragraphs?
- 10 Have you written too many words? You don't need to write more than 180 words. You won't be penalized for writing too much, but you may be penalized for not summarizing.
- 11 Have you mentioned any striking features?
- 12 Have you avoided repetition of words and structures?
- 13 Have you used a range of grammar, vocabulary and complex structures ?
- 14 Have you used the correct tenses?
- 15 Have you checked your writing for mistakes?

### Additional questions for maps

- 1 Have you included an overview?
- 2 Have you used appropriate adverbs/adverbial phrases of location ?
- 3 Have you used a range of synonyms?

### Additional questions for processes

- 1 Have you used the passive correctly?
- 2 Have you used the correct tenses?
- 3 Have you used the appropriate linking devices?

## IELTS Writing Task 2

- 1 Have you written at least 250 words?
- 2 Have you completed the task according to the rubric?
- 3 Have you paraphrased the question in your introduction?
- 4 Have you given reasons and examples as requested in the rubric?
- 5 Is your answer abstract as required or does it contain personal examples?
- 6 Have you developed your ideas by expressing contrasts, causes, effects, purposes and conclusions?
- 7 Are your ideas just listed or organized with a range of linking devices to reflect the development in 6?
- 8 Have you divided your answer into paragraphs?
- 9 Have you written 4/5 paragraphs?
- 10 Do your ideas fit well together?
- 11 Have you included any irrelevant ideas?
- 12 Have you avoided the repetition of words and structures?
- 13 Have you used a range of grammar, vocabulary and complex structures ?
- 14 Have you checked your writing for mistakes?

# IELTS Speaking checklists

## IELTS Speaking Part 1

See the checklist for Part 3. Remember this section is personal not abstract.

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

See checklist for Part 3 and 1–5 below.

- 1 Did you make notes?
- 2 Were your notes short – no more than about ten words?
- 3 Did you answer all the parts of the question?
- 4 Were your notes easy to read as you spoke?
- 5 Did you refer to your notes as you spoke?

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

- 1 Is your answer organized?
- 2 Did you develop your answer by giving reasons and examples?
- 3 Was your answer abstract as required or was it too personal?
- 4 Were your ideas relevant to the question?
- 5 Did you paraphrase the question?
- 6 Did you avoid repetition of words and structures?
- 7 Did you use a range of grammar, vocabulary and complex structures?
- 8 Did you concentrate too much on accuracy at the expense of fluency?
- 9 Did you speak clearly?
- 10 Did you speak too quickly or too slowly?
- 11 Were you relaxed enough to breathe properly?
- 12 Did you speak using the correct rhythm or sentence stress?
- 13 Did you use the correct word/phrase stress?

# Wordlist

## Unit 1

### A Describing people

#### Adjectives

artistic  
adventurous  
chatty  
conscientious  
considerate  
creative  
dynamic  
hard-working  
helpful  
sporty  
supportive  
talkative  
wise

#### Nouns and adjectives

respect/respectful/respectable	
ambition	ambitious
care	careful/caring
calmness	calm
cheerfulness	cheerful
generosity	generous
loyalty	loyal
sense of humour	humorous
sociability	social
punctuality	punctual
reliability	reliable
talent	talented

#### Nouns

a climb  
a decline  
a dip  
a drop  
a fall  
an increase  
a peak  
a plunge  
a rise  
fluctuations

### D Useful words and phrases from the reading passage

settle into university life  
integrate into university life  
draw on internationally recognized expertise  
settle down more easily into university life  
ascertain (students') views about ...  
pioneering research  
key factors influencing ...

## B IELTS Reading

### Choosing headings for paragraphs or sections

#### Nouns and their synonyms

aims  
effect  
emphasis  
lack  
need  
reason for  
result  
use  
what . . . is based on

## C Verbs of movement

#### Verbs

dip/fall slightly and quickly recover  
fall slightly and then level off  
fall gradually/decrease steadily  
fluctuate/be erratic  
hit a low/reach their lowest point  
hit a peak/reach a high  
plummet/plunge  
remain stable/stabilize  
rise gradually/increase slowly but surely  
soar/rocket

## Answer key

### Language focus 2: Likes and dislikes

Page 12

1

She uses the *-ing* form after *like* as she is emphasizing what she enjoys from her past experience of doing it. This is different from *like* followed by the infinitive with *to*, which indicates routine habit or duty as opposed to enjoyment.

2

- 1 Correct
- 2 Correct
- 3 Incorrect – ‘to join’
- 4 Correct
- 5 Correct
- 6 Correct
- 7 Incorrect – ‘doing’

3

- 1 playing
- 2 to live
- 3 being/to be
- 4 to keep
- 5 taking
- 6 to be
- 7 socializing/to socialize, staying
- 8 playing
- 9 to see

4

- 1 I’d like to live in the countryside.
- 2 Nowadays people dislike doing certain sports.
- 3 Adrian likes cleaning/to clean the kitchen every morning.
- 4 She enjoys shopping enormously.
- 5 Pedro can’t stand playing video games.
- 6 He likes people he knows to be honest.
- 7 She would prefer to see the film on DVD at home rather than in the cinema.
- 8 He really loves mingling/to mingle with other people at parties.

### Speaking Part 2 Page 13

1

#### Possible answers

- 1 supportive/wise/considerate/helpful
- 2 hard-working/conscientious/supportive/helpful
- 3 adventurous/sporty

4

who the person is – present simple  
what they are like generally – present simple  
what qualities this person has – present simple  
and explain why you would like to be like this person – conditional

### Vocabulary 2: Verbs of movement Page 14

1

1 h 2 d 3 b 4 g 5 j 6 i 7 a 8 e 9 c 10 f

2

- 1 fell and then levelled off
- 2 hit a peak
- 3 dipped
- 4 plummeted
- 5 rose gradually
- 6 remained flat/stable
- 7 fell gradually
- 8 fluctuated
- 9 hit a low
- 10 soared

3

a bottom out, a rocket, a soar, a plummet, a level off

4

- 1 There was a drop in the price of laptops followed by a period of stability.
- 3 There was a slight fall and then a quick recovery in the amount of money spent.
- 4 There was a plunge in visitor numbers to the website in the first quarter of the year.
- 5 There was a slow but sure increase in book purchases over the year.
- 6 There was stabilization in the number of students applying to university over the period.
- 7 There was a steady decrease in attendance figures/attendances at the conference last year.
- 8 There were some fluctuations in the growth rate during the last year.

You cannot change sentences 2, 9 and 10.

### Writing Task 1 Page 15

1

Introduction c is the best answer because it paraphrases the rubric. Note the change in words (*illustrates/hits/in the UK/on a weekly basis/over one year to March 2008*).

2

- 1 illustrates/shows
- 2 vary/varied
- 3 was
- 4 rose/climbed/increased
- 5 was/is
- 6 was/is
- 7 reached/hit
- 8 rose/climbed/increased (but avoid repetition)
- 9 fell/dropped

### Review 1 Page 16

#### Vocabulary

1

1 h 2 e 3 g 4 a 5 d 6 c 7 b 8 f

2

- 1 humorous
- 2 caring
- 3 punctual
- 4 respected
- 5 talented
- 6 artistic
- 7 patient
- 8 reliable

#### Present simple, present continuous and past simple

1

Sonja: 1, 4, 5

Wei: 3, 7, 8

Ahmed: 2, 10, 12

Tony: 6, 9, 11

2

- |     |         |
|-----|---------|
| 1 c | 7 a     |
| 2 c | 8 b     |
| 3 c | 9 b     |
| 4 b | 10 b, a |
| 5 a | 11 b, c |
| 6 a | 12 b    |

**Writing**

1

- 1 noticeable
- 2 shows
- 3 fluctuated
- 4 surge
- 5 remained steady
- 6 plummeted
- 7 decline
- 8 downward
- 9 trend
- 10 breakdown

2

- 1 The trend in attendances is/was clearly upward.  
There is/was a clear upward trend in attendances.
- 2 There is/was an increase in student numbers over the year.  
Student numbers increased over the year.
- 3 Market share fell overall over/during the past decade.  
There was an overall fall in market share over/during the past decade.
- 4 Generally speaking, the trend in the cost of train journeys is/was flat.
- 5 The trend in prices is/was downward overall.
- 6 The miles covered by shoppers declined.
- 7 The price of grain rose steadily in the last six months.  
There has been a steady rise in the price of grain in the last six months.
- 8 There has been a clear downward trend in the number of flights abroad.

## Unit 2 Technology—now and then

### Vocabulary: Verbs of cause and effect

Page 18

1

- 1 a wheel
- 2 an abacus
- 3 a telescope
- 4 a combustion engine
- 5 a laptop

They are all examples of technology which has changed the world.

2

- 1 improvement
- 2 destruction
- 3 shape/shaping
- 4 result
- 5 effect
- 6 harm
- 7 enhancement
- 8 promotion
- 9 damage
- 10 ruin/ruination
- 11 production
- 12 fostering
- 13 advance/advancement
- 14 deterioration
- 15 achievement
- 16 attraction

*Affect* does not follow any of the patterns.

3

- 1 Positive
- 2 Negative
- 3 Neutral
- 4 Neutral

- 5 Neutral
- 6 Negative
- 7 Positive
- 8 Positive
- 9 Negative
- 10 Negative
- 11 Neutral
- 12 Positive
- 13 Positive
- 14 Negative
- 15 Positive
- 16 Neutral

4

- 1 The demand for fuel is destroying the way of life of the inhabitants of rainforests.
- 2 People constantly debate whether television influences society positively or negatively.
- 3 The company restructuring will improve profits significantly.
- 4 Climate change has ruined many crops.
- 5 The fire did not harm the mountainside as much as people first thought.
- 6 Relations between the two countries deteriorated sharply as a result of the conflict.
- 7 The affair damaged his reputation enormously.
- 8 Artificial intelligence is impacting on the development of technology hugely.
- 9 Many people like Einstein and Newton shaped the world.

5

- 1 promotion
- 2 destruction
- 3 Improvements/Advancements
- 4 achievement
- 5 attraction
- 6 fostering/shaping

### Listening Section 2 Page 19

- A big/not small
- B not interesting/exciting
- C handier
- D thrilling/exhilarating
- E well made/well put together
- F trendy/in vogue

#### Questions 11–15

- 11 A    12 B    13 B    14 A    15 C

#### Questions 16–20

- 16 F    17 A    18 C    19 D    20 E

### Reading Page 21

#### Questions 1–6

- 1 TRUE. Paragraph 1: *In the early stages of this development, the process of urbanization went hand in hand with the establishment of a social order.*
- 2 FALSE. Paragraph 2: *The Shang dynasty was conquered by the people of Zhou.*
- 3 FALSE. Paragraph 2: *... seven major states contended for supreme control of the country.*
- 4 NOT GIVEN. However, see paragraph 3: *Iron appeared in China towards the end of ... . We do not know where it came from: inside or outside China.*
- 5 FALSE. Paragraph 4: *Many versions include ...*
- 6 FALSE. Paragraph 5: *... the great patience and skill of the earlier period seem to be lacking.*

## Answer key

### Questions 7–12

- 7 B
- 8 B
- 9 A
- 10 C
- 11 A
- 12 A

### Question 13

B

## Language focus 1: Past simple and present perfect Page 23

1

- Simple past. It is used because the text is talking about specific events in the past. The two examples of the present perfect relate to general/indefinite observations made at an unknown time.
- Although the passive is used a lot, the active voice is more common when events are being mentioned.

2

- 1 revolutionized
- 2 contributed
- 3 led
- 4 was first played
- 5 was invented
- 6 created, shaped, lived
- 7 travelled
- 8 influenced

3

- 1 began
- 2 were, didn't have, have become
- 3 have started
- 4 transformed
- 5 went, have never visited
- 6 Have you ever seen
- 7 have improved
- 8 did, have not done, spent

## Word building: Qualifying adjectives

### Page 24

1

- 1 inconvenient
- 2 impractical
- 3 unimportant
- 4 unnecessary
- 5 insignificant
- 6 harmless
- 7 valueless
- 8 useless
- 9 ineffective
- 10 unappealing
- 11 unworthwhile
- 12 uninspiring

2

crucial, vital, essential, key, critical

3

trivial, insignificant

4

- 1 impractical
- 2 effective
- 3 convenient
- 4 worthwhile
- 5 harmless
- 6 inspiring

## Language focus 2: Habit in the past Page 25

1

*They remembered how they would all go round to ... b  
... all of whom used to have one ... c*

2

- 1 Correct
- 2 Correct
- 3 *Used to* is used to talk about states (e.g. occupations), not *would*.
- 4 Correct
- 5 You don't say *would build* or *used to build his own car*, but *built*.
- 6 *Didn't go to* is needed, not *didn't use to*. The action is neither repeated nor a state.
- 7 Correct
- 8 Correct

## Adverbs of frequency Page 25

1 sometimes, position 4

2

2 usually, normally, commonly

3

- |            |                                |
|------------|--------------------------------|
| Position 2 | normally                       |
| Position 3 | regularly, often, commonly     |
| Position 4 | occasionally, not often        |
| Position 5 | not often, hardly ever, rarely |

4

- 1 never read
- 2 usually/normally/regularly play
- 7 regularly used to watch

## Writing Task 2 Page 26

1

- 1 You will lose marks if you write less than 250 words, as you will not have completed the task properly.
- 2 The instructions ask you to discuss both views so it is important to support your ideas with reasons and examples. As in Speaking Part 3, the ideas and examples should be abstract and about people in general, not about what happened to you.
- 3 Yes. You can support your ideas and reasons by showing the results, causes and effects and express any reservations or doubts you may have.
- 4 There is no specific limit, but ideally aim to write an introduction, three main paragraphs in the body of the essay, and a conclusion. As this is formal writing you will lose marks if you do not write in paragraphs.
- 5 There are three parts: a discussion of the first view – ‘some people fear that technology is gradually taking over control of our lives’; a discussion of the second view – ‘while others think that it has led to many positive developments in all aspects of their lives’ and your own opinion.
- 6 Three main ideas – one per paragraph. However, you could have two ideas in some paragraphs. Avoid listing ideas without developing them by giving reasons and examples.

7 Yes you can and then support it.

- 8 If you write around 30 words each for the introduction to the essay and the conclusion, this leaves a minimum of 190 words to write for the body of the essay, roughly 65 words per paragraph. Note these are just rough estimates. Learn how much 60/70 words is in your own handwriting so you can estimate how much to write. Even draw a line on your writing paper which represents an approximation of 250 words in your handwriting and aim to cross the line as you are writing.

9 There is more than one way of writing any essay. Try to follow the way described here and then develop different ways of writing an essay.

10 Complex sentences are sentences with more than one clause. Or, in other words, a sentence with more than one idea linked by a connecting word. For example, a statement like *Technology is beneficial because it ..., resulting in ...* has three ideas: statement/opinion-reason/result. Use a mixture of simple and complex sentences and avoid the overuse of connecting words and the word *and*.

2

3 and 4. 1 is not suitable because it doesn't deal directly with the questions asked. 2 is not suitable because it copies the rubric.

3

4

4

	Example	Reason	Result	Additional information	Purpose	Contrast
Adverb	for example, for instance		As a result	Moreover		However
Conjunction		because			in order to	
Other	like, such as					

5

a good example is ... /the best example is ... /take ... /take ... for example/for instance/As far as ... is concerned/where the impact of ... is concerned/namely

6

reason: since/as

result: consequently/so (conjunction and adverb)/

therefore/accordingly/and so (conjunction)

additional information: similarly/furthermore/what is more/also

purpose: to

contrast: but, although (conjunctions)/despite (preposition)

7

### Sample answer

Although technology has brought many benefits to our lives, it has some drawbacks like entering into people's privacy which has become a cause for concern for some people.

It is true that due to advances in technology, our privacy is increasingly violated with our personal details being constantly exposed in public. Take for example cameras which are found in the UK on the streets, in shops or in different premises. These devices working around the clock record pictures of all individuals passing in their visual field and they can be watched at any time for various purposes. This seems to be offensive to some people who fear that their pictures may be used in some unacceptable practices. Furthermore, most supermarkets provide loyalty cards to their customers offering them discounts according to points they gain when they purchase goods. As these cards contain customers' personal details, shops know what people consume therefore they can continuously control our lives.

However, besides these drawbacks there are numerous advantages resulting from technology in various aspects of the life, namely in education, banking, security or employment. For example these cameras found at the corner of the streets are used to tackle criminality. Once a crime is committed in an area, images are analysed by police to find the offender. Regarding communication for example, the internet has transformed the world into a small village. A person from Congo living in the UK can exchange with their family e-mails, photos or videos, they can even chat what was not possible some decades ago.

To sum up, I think that despite some violations of our privacy which are unavoidable, the advantages of technology are still greater. Therefore its utilisations should be encouraged but the authorities in charge of the community should protect people's privacy as much as possible and personal details or their images should only be disclosed in case of crime investigations.

Word count: 315

### Examiner's comment

A well-balanced and coherently presented response, with relevant examples being adduced in support of the chosen standpoint. Any grammatical errors do not impede communication, and the conclusion rounds the essay off effectively. Good range of vocabulary and sophisticated and well controlled use of language.

Possible score: 8.0

### Review 2 Page 28

#### Vocabulary

- 1 affected
- 2 achievement
- 3 shape
- 4 result/impact/effect/consequence
- 5 affected/influenced/enhanced/improved
- 6 development/improvement/achievement
- 7 improving/affecting/ruining/damaging/harming/destroying
- 8 further/advance/enhance/improve

#### Word building

1

- 1 convenient
- 2 significant
- 3 uninspiring
- 4 necessary
- 5 worthless
- 6 appealing
- 7 harmless
- 8 ineffective
- 9 crucial
- 10 inconvenient/important/insignificant

2

- 1 harmless
- 2 useful
- 3 inspiring
- 4 impractical
- 5 crucial
- 6 necessary

#### Past simple and present perfect

- 1 played, haven't played
- 4 have affected, made
- 6 designed, have designed

## Answer key

### Habit in the past

- 1 Correct
- 2 Correct
- 3 I knew
- 4 Correct
- 5 Correct
- 6 used to attend
- 7 Correct
- 8 Correct
- 9 Correct
- 10 used to rain
- 11 it never seemed
- 12 just carried on

### Spelling check

- 1 convenient
- 2 worthwhile
- 3 appealing
- 4 ineffective
- 5 useful
- 6 unnecessary
- 7 impractical

## Unit 3 Thrill seekers

### Vocabulary: Sports Page 30

1

- 1 wingsuit flying
- 2 white water rafting
- 3 playing Wii
- 4 snowboarding

2

- 1 football, rugby
- 2 boxing
- 3 running
- 4 bodybuilding, weightlifting
- 5 swimming
- 6 scuba-diving
- 7 tennis, squash
- 8 golf

3

### Possible answers

- 1 Formula 1 racing, motocross
- 2 hunting, fishing
- 3 water-skiing, swimming, wind surfing, water polo, sailing, surfing
- 4 martial arts, judo, fencing
- 5 tennis, squash, badminton
- 6 show jumping, horse-riding
- 7 skiing, snowboarding
- 8 squash, basketball
- 9 rugby, running
- 10 football, basketball, hockey, cricket

### Listening Section 3 Page 31

#### Question 21

21 C

#### Question 22–25

- 22 freelance workers
- 23 173 people
- 24 more details
- 25 representatives

#### Question 26–30

- 26 individuals, companies
- 27 travelling/traveling expenses
- 28 (the) coaching

29 (full) potential

30 dedication

### Language focus 1: Comparison Page 32

1

- a adjective
- b noun
- c verb

2

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
bad	worse	the worst
good	better	the best
noisy	noisier/more noisy	the noisiest
wet	wetter	the wettest
tasty	tastier	the tastiest
cheap	cheaper	the cheapest
lively	livelier	the liveliest
appetizing	more/less appetizing	the most/least appetizing

3

- 1 easier
- 2 more popular
- 3 the most energetic
- 4 happier
- 5 more difficult
- 6 the least/most stressful
- 7 more/less important
- 8 the fittest

4

- 1 ease
- 2 popularity
- 3 energy
- 4 happiness
- 5 difficulty
- 6 stress
- 7 importance
- 8 fitness

5

- 1 Places to do specialist sports can be found with more ease outside cities and towns.
- 2 Activities like bowling enjoy more popularity among older age groups.
- 3 Which sport do you think requires/needs the most energy (of all)?
- 4 People who do some physical activity are supposed to experience more/greater happiness than less active people.
- 5 People have greater difficulty/more difficulties organizing their lives around leisure activities nowadays.
- 6 Do people experience greater stress in their work nowadays than before?
- 7 Does mental activity have less/more importance than physical activity? Is mental activity of lesser/greater importance than physical activity?
- 8 People don't realize that racing drivers are the fittest individuals in sport.

6

- 1 ... more exciting than ...
- 2 Correct
- 3 ... more dangerous than ...
- 4 ... fitter ...
- 5 ... the most exciting ...
- 6 Correct

- 7 ... the richest ...  
 8 Correct  
 9 Correct  
 10 ... more tiring than ...

### Word building: Adjectives ending in -ing/-ed Page 33

- 1  
 1 thrilling  
 2 irritated  
 3 interested  
 4 motivating  
 5 exciting  
 6 annoying, annoyed  
 7 challenging  
 8 invigorated

- 3  
 1 electrified  
 2 challenged  
 3 interesting  
 4 fascination  
 5 motivated  
 6 exciting  
 7 refreshed  
 8 excitement

### Speaking Part 1 Page 34

- 1 What kinds of sports are popular in your country?  
 2 Are they as popular as they used to be in the past?  
 3 Are the same games as popular as in the past?  
 4 Do young people do more physical activities like extreme sports now than in the past?  
 5 What makes these games interesting to people?  
 6 Are sports more challenging now than they were in the past?  
 7 Are young people challenged more nowadays than in the past?

### Reading Page 34

Questions 1–6  
 1 D 2 H 3 B 4 H 5 F 6 I

#### Questions 7–12

- 7 NOT GIVEN. Paragraph A: Computer games and fairground rides are mentioned but there is no comparison.  
 8 TRUE. Paragraph D: *the brain struggles to make sense of conflicting and changing signals from the senses.*  
 9 NOT GIVEN. Paragraph F: The number does not tell you how many people are involved. Always watch out for words of quantity like *all/a few/little/most* and make sure they match the meaning in the text.  
 10 FALSE. Paragraph G: *The human body cannot tolerate much more of a G-force than the latest rollercoasters, ...*  
 11 NOT GIVEN. Paragraph H: The text does not mention anything about the balance of men and women.  
 12 TRUE. Paragraph I: *Equally, the next generation of rides will sense when too many people feel nauseous and wind down accordingly. In short, they will be able to distinguish terror from titillation.*

Question 13  
 13 B

### Language focus 2: Adjectives with prepositions Page 36

- 1  
 1 on  
 2 to  
 3 about  
 4 in  
 5 with  
 6 to  
 7 about  
 8 of  
 9 about  
 10 of, about

- 2  
 1 b/c/f  
 2 c  
 3 e  
 4 d  
 5 b/f  
 6 g  
 7 a

### Speaking Part 3 Page 37

- 2  
 1 to  
 2 so  
 3 so that  
 4 in order to  
 5 so as to  
 6 in order to

- 3  
**Possible answers**  
 1 because they want/like to keep fit  
 2 because they would like/want to lose weight  
 3 because they would like/want to make friends  
 4 because they like/want to relax  
 5 because they want an adrenaline rush  
 6 because they like to escape from the real world

### Writing Task 1 Page 38

- 1  
 1 No. Fewer men than women went swimming.  
 2 No. There was a greater proportion of men than women involved in walking, but not a far greater proportion.  
 3 No. Women were less likely to take part in sporting activities.  
 4 No. Nearly twice as many men as women went cycling.  
 5 Yes. The table compares information about male and female involvement in a selection of activities in the United Kingdom in 2002.  
 6 Yes. Ten per cent of men played football while no women played.  
 7 Yes. Compared to males, more than twice as many women went to keep fit/yoga classes.  
 8 Yes. Football was the least popular activity overall.  
 9 Yes. Overall males were more involved in physical activity than females.

- 2  
 a the introduction: 5  
 b the overview: 3 and 9  
 c specific data: 1, 2, 4, 6, 7, 8

- 3  
 1 fewer ... than  
 2 a far greater proportion of ... than  
 3 less likely to  
 4 twice as many ... as ...  
 5 compares data about ...

## Answer key

- 6 while  
7 Compared with ... more than twice as many ...  
8 the least popular  
9 more involved in ... than ...
- 4  
1 The rugby match was attended by a third of the number of spectators at the football match.  
2 The sports department was visited by five times the number of shoppers in February 2008 when compared to February 2009.  
3 More than 40% of the competitors were from the main city.  
4 A smaller proportion of players were home-grown rather than from overseas.  
5 Three-quarters of the members of the sports club paid by credit card rather than cash.  
6 The team won just over 50%/half of the games they played last season.
- 5
- Sample answer**
- The table gives information about an involvement of 11-14 years age teenagers in five different types of Extreme sports by both sexes in 2003.
- Overall, with the exception of Rollerblading the participation of boys in Extreme sports exceeds the involvement of girls. For example, the proportion of boy participants in Mountain biking is much greater (22.7%) than the percentage of girl participants (13.3%). On the other hand, the percentage of males (27.5%) involved in Skateboarding is almost double the proportion of females taking part on it (13.8%). The same pattern is seen when we look at Snowboarding (male 8.1 % and female 4%).
- Regarding [the] Mountain climbing there was nearly same proportion of both gender participants (10.6% male and 9.3% female). The exception was Rollerblading where the girls outstrip the boys, 31.7% and 21.7% respectively. It is clear that, the proportion of males involved in Extreme sports is much higher than the percentage of the females.
- Word count: 156
- Examiner's comment**  
The response is well organised, fluently written and identifies the main trends. The lexical resource is evident. However, elementary errors persist, reducing effectiveness overall. Greater is misspelt and rules regarding capitalisation, prepositions (on) and articles (first sentences paragraphs 1 and 3) are ignored. The response also employs inappropriate sign posting (on the other hand).  
Possible score: 6.5
- Review 3 Page 40**
- Vocabulary**
- 1
- 1 golf: outdoor  
2 snowboarding: outdoor  
3 boxing: indoor  
4 squash: indoor  
5 football: both  
6 baseball: both  
7 rugby: outdoor  
8 running: both
- 2
- 1 squash, football, baseball, rugby  
2 squash  
3 golf  
4 football  
5 football, rugby  
6 skateboarding, snowboarding  
7 boxing  
8 squash  
9 baseball  
10 running
- Comparison**
- 1
- 1 Is windsurfing more expensive than ordinary surfing?  
2 I find watching sport more appealing (to me) than taking part.  
3 Which sport is the most challenging?  
4 Which sport is the safest?  
5 As they are old, the facilities are less valuable than those at other clubs.  
6 The club is more successful than similar organizations.
- 2
- 1 India is not as big as Africa./India is not bigger than Africa.  
2 The Pacific Ocean is wider than the Atlantic Ocean.  
3 Mountaineers do not earn as much as footballers.  
4 Football matches attract far greater numbers than squash tournaments.  
5 Parkour seems to be much riskier/more/less risky than skateboarding.  
6 Many sports demand more/less stamina than intellect.  
7 An active life is considerably less harmful than a sedentary lifestyle.  
8 Private cars (don't) make as much noise as lorries.
- Adjectives with prepositions**
- 1 keen  
2 interested  
3 capable  
4 addicted  
5 indifferent  
6 enthusiastic/fanatical  
7 bored
- Word building**
- 1
- 1 fascinated, correct  
2 motivating, incorrect – *motivated*  
3 thrilled, correct  
4 irritated, incorrect – *irritating*  
5 interesting, incorrect – *interested*  
6 excited, incorrect – *exciting*  
7 annoyed, correct  
8 challenging, incorrect – *challenged*
- 2
- 1 e 2 c 3 b 4 d 5 a

## Ready for Listening

### Section 1 Page 42

#### Questions 1–6

- 1 *The Judgement*  
2 Wight  
3 691-0-9-8879-9  
4 North America  
5 biographical  
6 17

**Questions 7–10**

- 7 54 65 36
- 8 mandy
- 9 90
- 10 special offers

**Section 2 Page 43**

1

The parts of the cinema (items 11–16) as they will normally be introduced first, followed by details about what happened to them.

2

**Possible answers**

- A enlarged: extended, bigger, more spacious
- B replaced: changed, taken the place of; instead of/ in place of
- C still closed: not open yet; still being renovated; work still being done/carried out
- D thoroughly cleaned: spotless; the dirt removed; as good as new; looks like new
- E split up: divided; partitioned; made into 2/3/4 smaller ...
- F brightened up: made brighter/less dull/cheered up
- G moved: shifted; transferred; relocated; not in the same place as before

3

- 17 open
- 18 group/free/tickets/first week
- 19 Wednesdays/reduction/members
- 20 new development

**Questions 11–16**

- 11 D    12 E    13 A    14 B    15 C    16 G

**Questions 17–20**

- 17 A    18 C    19 B    20 C

5

- 11 D thoroughly cleaned: all the dirt has been completely removed
- 12 E split up: partitioned
- 13 A enlarged: made bigger
- 14 B replaced: where there was ... there is now ...
- 15 C still closed: will be opening shortly
- 16 G moved: no longer beside ... it is now next to ...

**Section 3 Page 45**

1

**Possible synonyms:**

- talk: seminar/lecture
- electronic gadgets: devices/gizmos/appliances

2

Nearly all of them could be undecided with the aims being the most likely to be decided upon.

**Possible synonyms:**

- A length of the questionnaire: survey
- B pictures to use: photos/illustrations/drawings/images
- C volume of data: amount of information/statistics/facts and figures
- D duration of interviews: length of questioning
- E period of research: investigation/study
- F age of interviewees: people to be questioned/asked questions to/participants
- G exact aims: objectives

3

Numbers: Questions 27, 28, 30

Plural: Question 25

**Question 21**

- 21 C

**Question 22–24**

- IN ANY ORDER
- A
- F
- G

**Questions 25–30**

- 25 emails/e-mails
- 26 browsing the Internet
- 27 8
- 28 5
- 29 everything
- 30 10

**Section 4 Page 46**

1

**Words in the stem:**

- 31 bore holes
- 32 in the past/induce rain
- 33 proof/increases rainfall
- 34 not support
- 35 country/keen

**Possible paraphrases in the alternatives:**

- 31
  - A employed/utilized in factories
  - B on farms/to water fields
  - C drinking and washing
- 32
  - A mystical/magical methods/ways
  - B burning (something)
  - C ritual (dancing)
- 33
  - C a quarter
- 34
  - A advantages of cloud seeding
  - B price of the equipment/equipment is expensive/costly/not cheap
  - C impact/outcome/result

**Questions 31–35**

- 31 B
- 32 A
- 33 A
- 34 C
- 35 B

**Questions 36–40**

- 36 chemical/silver iodide
- 37 water freeze
- 38 generator
- 39 fuel tank
- 40 cloud level

**Unit 4 Global problems and opportunities**

**Vocabulary: General category nouns Page 48**

2

*problem* can be used in both gaps

- 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 g 5 h 6 f 7 d 8 e

3

- 1 incident
- 2 possibility
- 3 dilemma

## Answer key

- 4 events
- 5 problem
- 6 issue
- 7 impression
- 8 outcome

4

- 1 f 2 d 3 e 4 b 5 c 6 a

## Listening Section 4 Page 49

### Questions 31–37

- 31 public railway
- 32 unnoticed
- 33 steam locomotive
- 34 coal
- 35 passengers
- 36 passenger traffic
- 37 Canals

### Questions 38–40

- IN ANY ORDER
- C
- D
- F

## Language focus 1: Countable and uncountable nouns Page 51

1

Countable: forms, opportunities  
Uncountable: development, transport, innovation, progress, evolution

Note: *innovation* and *development* can also be countable

2

- 1 b (tables, shelves, desks ...)
- 2 a (shoes, sweaters, hats ...)
- 3 j (bags, rucksacks ...)
- 4 f (notes)
- 5 c (apples, bananas, lemons ...)
- 6 d (houses, hotels, cabins ...)
- 7 h (newspapers, television/radio programmes ...)
- 8 e (products)
- 9 g (thefts, robberies, shootings ...)
- 10 i (cans, packets, cigarettes ...)

3

- 1 Litter is ...
- 2 Machines are ...
- 3 The behaviour of football hooligans costs ...
- 4 Information ...
- 5 Robberies and thefts are ...
- 6 Musical instruments are played ...
- 7 Suggestions ... are ....
- 8 Language ... follows ...

4

- 1 Many businesses now demand a lot of work from (their) employees.
- 2 People expect good weather when they go on holiday.
- 3 Theatre audiences are in decline generally, but the audience for the new musical was extremely small last night.
- 4 Increased use of public transport like buses and trains is good for the environment.
- 5 With increases in the price of paper, books and newspapers are becoming expensive.
- 6 Coffee and tea are commodities which saw a fall in value recently.
- 7 Entertainment like horror and violent films should be banned.
- 8 Electronic goods like refrigerators cause considerable harm to the planet.

5

- 1 equipment, computers
- 2 weather, storms
- 3 Information, details
- 4 Business, businesses
- 5 luggage, cases
- 6 Furniture, wood, trees
- 7 Waste, litter
- 8 jobs, work, money

## Speaking Part 1 Page 51

1

- 1 Countable: types, resources, country
- 2 Countable: goods, country
- 3 Countable: types, country  
Uncountable: food
- 4 Uncountable: produce
- 5 Countable: country  
Uncountable: food
- 6 Countable: commodities
- 7 Countable: shops, country  
Uncountable: merchandise
- 8 Countable: crops, country

## Reading Page 52

### Questions 1–9

- 1 B 2 G 3 D 4 A 5 E 6 P 7 N 8 K 9 I

### Questions 10–13

- 10 YES. Paragraph 2: *The vast expanse of debris – in effect the world's largest rubbish dump.* The phrase *in effect* and the fact that the information is between dashes tells you this is what the writer thinks – it is his/her claim, not a statement of fact.
- 11 NO. See the information given by Marcus Eriksen in paragraph 3. Then look at the beginning of the next paragraph: *The soup* is actually two linked areas ... The word *actually* tells you what the writer claims is true.
- 12 NOT GIVEN. The writer does not make any predictions about this, even though Mr Moore warned in Paragraph 7: *unless consumers cut back on their use of disposable plastics, the plastic stew would double in size over the next decade.*
- 13 YES. Paragraph 13: *Plastic is believed to constitute 90 per cent of all rubbish floating in the oceans.* Note that the writer is claiming what appears is believed to be true.

## Language focus 2: Making suggestions Page 54

### Page 54

2

- 1 could
- 2 The most important ... is ...
- 3 should
- 4 ought to

Suggestions 2, 3 and 4 are strong suggestions; 1 is tentative.

4

- a Governments ought to try to encourage people to return to the countryside.
- b Banks could cancel the international debts of poor countries.
- c Governments should provide poorer countries with the skills to feed themselves.
- d Rivers could be oxygenated and fish reintroduced.
- e Protection orders can be put on all wild animals.
- f Water desalination plants might work in some regions.
- g More trees should be planted.

5

- a 6 b 2 c 1 d 4 e 5 f 7 g 3

## Vocabulary 2: Developing ideas by expanding the meaning of adjectives

Page 54

1

- 1 pleases
- 2 encourage
- 3 frightened
- 4 trouble
- 5 attracts
- 6 fascinated
- 7 stunned

2

- 1 Some people find buying consumer goods very pleasing. Sometimes, it is just the act of purchasing which satisfies them.
- 2 Positive health education on TV can be encouraging. It can motivate people to improve their lifestyle.
- 3 The results were frightening. They alarmed the government so much they actually took some action.
- 4 The news on TV is sometimes very troubling. It can worry people all day long.
- 5 Disaster movies are very attractive to many people. It is the fact that they feel comfortable and safe themselves as they watch that appeals to them.
- 6 I found the festivities really fascinating. They interested me so much that I had to read more about them.
- 7 The scale of crime in some cities has been so stunning it has shocked even the police.

## Writing Task 2 Page 55

1

- 1 reason
- 2 contrast
- 3 result/conclusion
- 4 example
- 5 purpose
- 6 result
- 7 concession

2

- 1 because
- 2 Yet
- 3 therefore
- 4 For example
- 5 in order to
- 6 then
- 7 Although

3

Adverb	Conjunction	Both
however	although	though
even so	but	yet
nevertheless	even if	
nonetheless	much as	
still	while	
	despite the fact that	
	in spite of the fact that	

4

- 1 However. You will see *But* used as an adverb in some texts.
- 2 but/although
- 3 While/Although
- 4 Even if/Though
- 5 Even so/Nonetheless

7

- A causes  
B examples

1 c 2 f 3 d 4 e 5 a 6 b

8

### Sample answer

Recent decades have witnessed a significant increase in the amount of rubbish produced by people around the world, causing a serious threat to all living things. It has been pointed out that changes in lifestyle and the industrial revolution are the main causes for this rise. However, there are many steps that can be taken to halt this problem.

After the industrial revolution there was a huge growth in the number of products available for people. Most of the producers try to attract consumers by using different types of packaging materials. Sometimes, the size and the amount of these materials are bigger than those for the products themselves. Also the production of new versions of different equipment, such as mobile phones, increases the waste.

Moreover, while most people, in the past, used their own bags when they went for shopping, nowadays, they depend on the disposable bags offered by shops, which are mostly made from plastic. In addition to that, the consumption of prepared food has experienced a crucial increase as a result to the rise in the number of working women. These foods are covered by different types of packaging material leading to increase in the amount of rubbish produced per capita.

Not only does the increase in the amount of rubbish threaten our lives by different pollutants, but it also causes depletion of valuable resources. For this reason there should be a new movement to decrease the amount of waste to its lowest level, and to use less harmful materials like biodegradable ones. Governmental and social organizations, like schools and media, should contribute to this process by explaining to people the importance of conserving our environment and resources.

Word count: 280

### Examiner's comment

A reasonably successful response that deploys both ideas and supporting evidence quite coherently. The sentence structures are varied, although some errors are evident. Overall, the response exhibits a fair level of precision and flexibility. Ambitious writing results in some grammatical inaccuracy, but this does not impose undue strain on the reader.

Possible score: 7.0

## Speaking Part 3 Page 57

1

### News and events

influence: affect/have an impact/impact on  
encourage: persuade  
change: adapt/modify  
achieve: realize/accomplish/attain  
issues: matters/problems  
concern: worry

## Answer key

**World problems**  
tackle: deal with  
discarded: thrown away  
waste: rubbish  
mankind: human beings  
dilemmas: problems

### Review 4 Page 58

#### Vocabulary

- 1  
1 dilemma  
2 issue  
3 event  
4 opportunity  
5 incident  
6 impression

- 2  
1 Correct  
2 incident  
3 Correct  
4 situation  
5 Correct  
6 incident  
7 occasions  
8 Correct  
9 Correct

- 3  
1 shocking, stunned  
2 interesting, fascinates  
3 appealing, attracts  
4 satisfying, pleases  
5 alarming, frightened  
6 motivating, encourage  
7 worrying, troubled

#### Countable and uncountable nouns

- 1  
1 litter  
2 clothing  
3 cash/money  
4 luggage/baggage  
5 fruit  
6 accommodation  
7 furniture  
8 crime  
9 media

#### Writing

- 1  
1 Nevertheless/Yet/Still  
2 Despite the fact that  
3 yet  
4 Much as/Although

2

#### Possible answers

- a The general topic is water shortages. The question presents you with two separate opinions and asks for your opinion. You can follow one opinion or you can agree with parts of each one.  
b The general topic is water shortages. The question asks you to describe the causes. It does not ask you for solutions. You can give examples of about three situations or problems around the world. Then you can give the cause for each. Although you are not asked for any solutions, you could mention one or two by way of conclusion.

## Unit 5 The future

### Language focus: Ways of looking at the future Page 60

3

- 1 Plan  
2 Plan  
3 Prediction  
4 Prediction  
5 Prediction  
6 Fixed schedule

4

- a 2  
b 1  
c 5  
d 3  
e 4  
f 6

5

- 1 we're flying - a  
shall I arrange - c  
2 going to spend - b  
it'll do - c  
3 we'll have completed - e  
it'll be working - d  
4 are going to be - b  
it won't last - c  
5 she arrives - f  
she'll be carrying - d

6

- 1 will they really enjoy it/be enjoying  
2 I'll be sitting  
3 I'll meet you  
4 is going to happen, will happen  
5 will have improved

7

- 1 The present simple is not possible. It is for a timetable.  
2 Society will not have changed dramatically by 2030.  
*not going to* shows this is a prediction about what is not going to happen based on present information.  
The future perfect shows that it will not have happened before the date mentioned.  
3 The present continuous is not possible.  
4 The world is certainly going to change for the better by then.  
The future perfect shows that it will have happened before the date mentioned.  
*going to* shows this is a prediction about what is going to happen based on present information.  
5 The human race will live in more closely knit communities in the future.  
The future continuous predicts what will be happening in the future.  
The simple future makes a straightforward prediction.  
6 *going to* is not possible. Both are predictions. However, the simple future is a spontaneous reaction and *going to* is used after looking at the present information.

### Vocabulary 1: Adjective/noun collocations

#### Page 61

1

- 1 modern  
2 agricultural  
3 dominant  
4 thriving

5 general  
6 urban  
7 governing  
8 indigenous

- 2  
1 general public  
2 modern civilization  
3 agricultural societies  
4 urban populations  
5 dominant culture  
6 governing elite

### Listening Section 1 Page 62

- 1 booking office: a place where tickets are booked, bought and collected  
2 preview: a chance to see a show, film or play before it opens to the general public  
3 the week after next: two weeks from now  
4 restrictions: limitations  
5 sign up for: register for  
6 come up: appear  
7 register: enrol/join  
8 range: variety/scope

#### Questions 1–6

- 1 day passes/tickets  
2 Thursday  
3 Tuesday, Friday  
4 SF6733  
5 3/three  
6 special promotions

#### Questions 7–10

- 7 60  
8 45 minutes  
9 70  
10 17

### Word building: forming adjectives from nouns Page 64

1

#### Adjectives ending *-al*

- usual  
technological  
agricultural  
traditional  
national  
industrial

#### Adjectives ending *-ous*

- luxurious  
populous  
spacious  
dangerous  
industrious

#### Adjectives ending *-ful*

- useful  
successful  
beautiful

2

- 1 spacious  
2 technological  
3 beautiful  
4 traditional  
5 national  
6 Luxurious  
7 populous  
8 successful

### Reading Page 64

#### Possible answers

- robot developments  
types of robots  
examples from two countries  
cost  
different markets  
• students' own answers  
• pragmatics: practical applications

#### Questions 1–7

- 1 receptionist  
2 vacuum  
3 different approaches  
4 human beings  
5 pragmatic  
6 the elderly  
7 technological revolution

#### Questions 8–11

- 8 B 9 A 10 C 11 A

#### Questions 12 and 13

- 12 (undisputed) leader  
13 \$210 million

### Vocabulary 2: Verbs of prediction Page 67

- 1 prophesy, assume, foretell, foresee

- 2 prediction, predicted/predictable; forecast, forecast(ed); projection, projected; estimation, estimated; anticipation, anticipated; expectation, expected

- 3  
1 By the year 2030 it is estimated that the population will have increased to nearly 70 million.  
2 Spectator numbers are forecast to rise dramatically towards the end of the year.  
3 It is projected that sales next month will be lower than this month.  
4 The forecast is for a substantial increase in passenger numbers./The forecast is that passenger numbers will increase substantially.  
5 Sales are predicted to climb at the rate of 20 per cent a year./It is predicted that sales will climb at the rate of 20 per cent a year.  
6 Attendances are anticipated to decline gradually in the next two years.  
7 It is expected that advances in technology will not slow down in the coming years.  
8 Ticket purchases are expected to recover in the third quarter

### Writing Task 1 Page 68

- 1  
1 show  
2 is  
3 is expected  
4 is predicted  
5 will shrink  
6 will see  
7 is anticipated  
8 will fare  
9 represented  
10 is  
11 compares  
12 is expected

- 2  
Then, By contrast, While, but

## Answer key

3

Second paragraph: *It* refers to 'traffic volume from high-speed transport'.

Third paragraph: *This* refers to the whole sentence 'The former represented ...'.

Third paragraph: *The former* refers to 'railways'.

4

- 1 By contrast, By comparison
- 2 By contrast, Meanwhile,
- 3 but, whereas
- 4 Meanwhile, By contrast
- 5 whereas, whilst

5

- 1 High-speed transport accounted for 9% of traffic volume in 1990 while in 2050 it is forecast to represent 41%.
- 2 It is estimated that the proportion of the traffic volume of automobiles will fall to 35% in 2050 in contrast to 53% in 1990.
- 3 In 1990 automobiles made up the bulk of passenger kilometres (53%), but by 2050, this is forecast to drop to 35%.
- 4 In 1990 out of a total traffic volume of 23.4 trillion pkm, automobiles accounted for 53% compared to buses, railways and high-speed transport, 29%, 9% and 9%, respectively. By comparison, by 2020 it is anticipated that high-speed transport will jump to 41% with automobiles, buses, railways making up 35%, 20% and 4% respectively.

6

### Sample answer

The pie chart depicts different proportions of fuel type that generate energy in Florida 2007 compared with the forecast for 2017.

Overall, it is clear that Natural gas is the main energy generator for both years, while Renewables and Oil come at the bottom of the list. For example, the energy generated by Natural gas increased from 38.8 % in 2007 to 54.4 % in 2017. Next comes the energy production by Coal which accounts for 29.3% of the energy market in 2007, followed by a drop of 5.6 % in the forecasted year of 2017. As for Nuclear, although it represents the third energy generator in Florida for both compared years, the trend here is upwards reaching 15.9 % at the estimated period.

In contrast, there is a significant drop in the energy production for both Oil and Other sources in the two separate years from 6.7 % to 1.1% for the former and 11.1 % to 3.4 % for the latter. As for the Renewables, the decrease in fuel generated over the period is less dramatic.

Word count: 178

### Examiner's comment

A generally sound response with the main areas of the prompt covered and the main trends and counter trends identified. A sophisticated range of vocabulary is employed and the rubric is neatly paraphrased, although just occasionally the register and phrasing are slightly uneven. Errors in capitalization throughout.

Possible score: 7.5

## Review 5 Page 70

### Vocabulary

1

- 1 Do you think that modern civilization will change much over the next century?
- 2 Should we try to protect the remaining agricultural societies?
- 3 Are urban populations under threat from increasing violence?
- 4 Will the dominant cultures always be in control?
- 5 Are indigenous peoples under threat?
- 6 Do the governing elites have any idea what the lives of ordinary people are like?
- 7 Do thriving communities in inner cities have a beneficial impact on society in general?
- 8 Does the opinion of the general public influence governments?

### Word building

- 1 Electronic dictionaries are useless/not really very useful, because ...
- 2 Certain south-east Asian countries are much more technological, because ...
- 3 This country has many beautiful buildings, because ...
- 4 Bangladesh is populous, because ...
- 5 Agricultural jobs are very demanding, because ...
- 6 A luxurious life is not open to all of us, because ...
- 7 It is dangerous when astronauts go out into space, because ...
- 8 Traditional skills are going out of fashion, because ...

### Ways of looking at the future

1

- 1 leaves, I'll be sitting
- 2 will have landed
- 3 will lead
- 4 will rise, will certainly disappear
- 5 will be, will live/will be living, will be done, will be

2

2,3,4,5

Extract 1 is personal, the others are all more abstract.

### Proof reading

- 1 will have increased/will increase
- 2 ... , whereas ...
- 3 shows
- 4 passenger numbers
- 5 Traffic
- 6 dramatically
- 7 made up
- 8 The most striking feature
- 9 ... . By contrast, ...
- 10 predicted

## Unit 6 Fruits and seeds

### Reading Page 72

2

a 4 b 1 c 3 d 2

Text e relates to the making of a juice drink.

3

- a flowered, fruit, produced, seeds, fall, ground, carried, birds, animals, wind, drop, wait, spring, germinate, grow, process, repeats
- b blooms, crop, picked, taken, factory, oil, extracted, distilled, essence, perfumes, toiletries
- c lays, egg, leaves, plants, eggs, hatch, caterpillars, eat, leaves, form, cocoon, insect, emerges

d plants, produce, flowers, open, attract insects, pollinate, plant

4 fruit, ripens, collected, taken, factory, crushed, extract, juice, packaged, sent, shops, sold

**Questions 1–4**

- 1 C The phrase relates to the whole paragraph.
- 2 G The phrase relates to part of the paragraph: ... *but certain types are grown in home dooryards ...*
- 3 B The phrase relates to the whole paragraph.
- 4 D The phrase relates to part of the paragraph: *The pomegranate tree is native from Iran to the Himalayas in northern India ...*

**Questions 5–8**

- 5 FALSE. Paragraph B: ... *and extremely long-lived, some specimens at Versailles known to have survived two centuries.*
- 6 NOT GIVEN. The flowers are mentioned in paragraph B, but there is no mention of whether they are particularly enticing to bees and birds or not.
- 7 FALSE. Paragraph C: *The seeds represent about 52% of the weight of the whole fruit.* Note how the answer to number 1 helps you locate the answer for number 7.
- 8 TRUE. Paragraph G: *The plant favors a semi-arid climate and is extremely drought-tolerant.*

**Questions 9–13**

- 9 pits
- 10 stem
- 11 tips
- 12 development
- 13 suckers

**Vocabulary 1: Conservation** Page 76

1

- 1 e, c
- 2 c, a
- 3 e, b
- 4 b, d
- 5 e, a
- 6 b, a
- 7 d, b
- 8 c, a

2

- 1 views
- 2 lungs
- 3 stretches, area, spoilt
- 4 sights
- 5 safeguarded
- 6 Conservation, areas

**Language focus: Transitive and intransitive verbs** Page 77

1

- a Transitive
- b Intransitive

2

Intransitive: flowered, becomes, fall, drop, wait, germinate, grow

Transitive: produced, carried, repeats

NB *become* can be both transitive and intransitive in some circumstances

3

Transitive	Intransitive	Both
make	look	grow
produce	happen	decrease
collect	rise	smell
sow	flow	roast
harvest	emerge	increase
lay	occur	weave
pick	disappear	become
crush		

4

- 1 the sun
- 2 cereals
- 3 tea
- 4 cotton
- 5 a butterfly
- 6 flowers

5

**Possible answers**

- 1 The sun rises and goes down every day.
- 2 Cereals are reaped/gathered to make bread.
- 3 Tea leaves are harvested to produce a hot drink from China.
- 4 Cotton is white and is utilized to create a very light cloth.
- 5 A butterfly comes out of a cocoon to become a flying insect.
- 6 Flowers are colourful, bloom in gardens and look and smell very nice.

6

become bigger, grow tall, blossom, appear, come out, fall

7

seeds: sprout, eat, disperse, sow, plant, transplant, fall  
 saplings: become bigger, grow tall, sprout, appear  
 branches: become bigger, grow, prune, sprout, bear  
 tree: become bigger, grow tall, blossom, appear, bear, grow, transplant, prune, cultivate, plant, sprout  
 buds: appear, open up

flowers: become bigger, grow tall, blossom, appear, open up, pollinate, grow, cultivate

fruit: become bigger, appear, bear, grow, ripen, fall, harvest, eat, cultivate

9

- 1 seeds
- 2 are planted
- 3 transplanted
- 4 pruned
- 5 trees
- 6 become bigger
- 7 leaves
- 8 pollinate
- 9 fruit
- 10 ripen
- 11 harvested

**Listening Section 2** Page 78

**Questions 11–13**

11 B 12 A 13 C

**Questions 14–17**

14 G 15 B 16 J 17 A

## Answer key

### Questions 18–20

- 18 views  
19 landscape  
20 seeds, flowers

## Vocabulary 2: Describing sequences Page 79

1

at last

2

1 If

2 and, then

3 Once

4 then

5 First

6 After that

7 At the same time

The lifecycle of a mobile phone is being described.

5 First, the various internal components like the chip are manufactured in one place.

7 At the same time, the case and the Sim card are produced.

4 These are then shipped to a different factory for assembly.

6 After that they are dispatched to a central warehouse for distribution

3 Once a device is broken, it is either thrown away or sent for recycling.

1 If it is the latter, the broken components are mended

2 and the phone is then sent for sale.

3

The manufacturing process

4

1 d 2 a 3 c 4 f 5 e 6 b

5

3 c storage

4 f delivery

6 b pasteurization

1 d harvesting

4 f assembly

5 e packaging

6

storage: store

delivery: deliver

pasteurization: pasteurize

harvesting: harvest

assembly: assemble

packaging: package/pack

## Writing Task 1 Page 80

2

1 Once/When/As soon as, After

2 Then/Next/After that

3 where

4 then/next/after that

5 then

6 where

3

phase/stage

4

### Possible answer

Introduction: The pictures show how glass is recycled/the recycling process for glass.

Overview: It is clear that during recycling glass goes through a number of stages

5

### Sample answer

The picture shows how pencils are produced from logs and leads.

On the whole, the process is not only efficient, because all parts of the tree are used but also ecofriendly. First, the seeds are cultivated in nurseries before being planted four months later. After three years the plantation is thinned facilitating the growth and improving the quality of the wood. Once the trees are fourteen years old, they are now ready to be used for the manufacturing of pencils and so are cut down to make logs.

The wood obtained is cut into thin pieces, treated to become dry, and then left sixty days before being used for the production of pencils. At this stage, a groove is cut into the slat and a special glue is injected. After that, a black lead is put into the slat followed by the placement of an empty slat on top to form a sandwich, which is heated and hard-pressed. By this action the two slats are converted into one piece which is then cut to produce individual pencils which in turn are finally printed, sharpened and stamped before reaching the consumers.

Word count: 190

### Examiner's comment

This is an extremely fluent and well-realized response. The process is clearly presented. Occasional punctuation choices and overuse of markers slightly diminish clarity, but without impeding communication. A sophisticated range of vocabulary and grammatical structures are both in evidence, demonstrating near-first-language speaker competence.

Possible score 9.0

## Review 6 Page 82

### Vocabulary

- 1 unspoilt
- 2 conservation
- 3 dominate
- 4 scenery
- 5 panoramic
- 6 sights
- 7 spaces
- 8 protected
- 9 disappear

### Transitive and intransitive verbs

1

Transitive: absorbed, extracted, reducing, carry, collected, provide, needed, sent, treated, purified  
Intransitive: falls, runs off, is, rises, occurs

2

### Possible answers

- 1 The sun shines.
- 2 Rice is harvested and then cleaned, after which it is stored and then sold.
- 3 Cotton is grown to make cloth. When it is picked, it is woven and made into clothes.
- 4 Once the fruit is picked and squeezed, it is either diluted or concentrated and then bottled.
- 5 When a mobile is sold it is used. As soon as it becomes worn out, it is thrown away.
- 6 The butterfly lays its egg. The caterpillar eats the leaves and makes a cocoon. The butterfly emerges from the cocoon, lays eggs and the cycle repeats itself.

**Following directions**

- 1 We start off here at the bottom of Theed Street.
- 2 The tour takes us past Wren House on the left.
- 3 We then turn left into Chatham Street.
- 4 We go past Brompton Palace which is on the north side of the street on our right.
- 5 Just after the palace we immediately turn right into Manor Way, where we stop and look at the building of the College of Music, which is on our left.
- 6 We then turn **right** into Weston Avenue to look at the old City Hall, which is on the north side of the street.
- 7 We continue to the end of Weston Street where we go **north**.
- 8 We then turn left and finish our tour on the north side of the Old City Hall.

**Proof reading**

- 1 germinates
- 2 atmosphere
- 3 shows
- 4 lungs
- 5 seeds
- 6 countryside
- 7 Pomegranates
- 8 part
- 9 steps

## Ready for Reading

### Understanding 'True/False/Not Given' statements Page 86

- 1 more than (i)
  - 2 more for weapons than (i)
  - 3 only (b)
  - 4 is said to (h)
  - 5 ten (f)
  - 6 destroyed (g)
  - 7 simpler (d, i)
  - 8 all (c)
  - 9 are connected (j)
  - 10 had an impact on (a)
- 
- 1 TRUE. ... between about 2000 and 771 B.C.
  - 2 NOT GIVEN. There is no comparison of weapons and ritual objects.
  - 3 FALSE. ... speak of a series of ancient rulers who invented agriculture, writing, and the arts of government.
  - 4 TRUE. ... founding the Xia dynasty.
  - 5 FALSE. ... Yu also cast nine sacred bronze vessels.
  - 6 FALSE. ... these were passed on to subsequent dynasties.
  - 7 FALSE. ... the archaeological record reveals a more complicated picture of Bronze Age China.
  - 8 FALSE. Archaeological investigation has confirmed much of the legendary history of ... – the Shang.
  - 9 TRUE Chinese scholars generally identify Xia with the Erlitou culture, ...
  - 10 TRUE ... that greatly influenced material culture in the Shang and subsequent Zhou dynasties.

### Understanding 'Yes/No/Not Given' statements Page 86

- 1 Comparison
- 2 Comparison
- 3 Recommendation

- 4 Generalization
- 5 Tentative proposal/possibility
- 6 Possibility
- 7 Qualifying adjective
- 8 Qualifying word
- 9 Comparison

- 2 1 YES. Some adults are clearly intimidated by the environment of libraries and bookshops in a way that children are not.
- 2 NOT GIVEN. The writer does not pass judgement about which way is the best.
- 3 NOT GIVEN. The writer does not give any opinion about this.
- 4 NOT GIVEN. The writer does not pass judgement about any building.
- 5 YES. So maybe there is a place for teaching library managers marketing skills.
- 6 YES. This however may be a step too far for some people.
- 7 YES. The writer states his opinion by saying: *all of which are worthwhile activities for attracting readers*.
- 8 NO. The writer states his opinion by saying: *all of which are worthwhile activities for attracting readers*.
- 9 NOT GIVEN. The writer does not pass judgement.

### Reading Passage Page 88

#### Questions 1–6

- 1 viii
- 2 i
- 3 xi
- 4 iv
- 5 vi
- 6 ix

#### Questions 7–9

- 7 B
- 8 D
- 9 A

#### Questions 10–13

- 10 widespread consultation
- 11 Coastal managers
- 12 traditional constructions
- 13 isolation

### Recognizing and understanding basic text relationships Page 91

- 1 The text is about cause and effect.
- 2 Cause
- 3 viii (methods–solutions); vi (techniques–methods/solutions); ix (integrated approach/solution). Note paragraph A (X factors–causes)
- 4 No. They use other words. See the words in brackets in 3.
- 5 It is the effect. B is the cause.
- 6 It is the cause.
- 7 The word *answers*.
- 8 It is based on cause/effect and problem/solution.
- 9 It is historical.
- 10 Possible answers: classification, argumentative, explanation and process

## Unit 7 The world of work and training

### Speaking Part 3 Page 92

- 1

- 1 learning how to sail
- 2 training at work
- 3 school education
- 4 learning how to play a musical instrument

## Answer key

### Vocabulary 1: Work Page 93

1

- 1 livelihood
- 2 work
- 3 job
- 4 job
- 5 profession
- 6 profession
- 7 job, career
- 8 job

2

It is possible to use *occupation* in sentence 3.

### Reading Page 93

#### Questions 1–5

- 1 B 2 E 3 H 4 D 5 A

#### Questions 6–12

- 6 traditional exams
- 7 team
- 8 teamwork
- 9 practical work
- 10 opinion
- 11 stressful
- 12 verbal presentations

#### Question 13

- 13 A

### Listening Section 3 Page 96

#### Questions 21–25

IN ANY ORDER

B  
D  
E  
F  
H

#### Questions 26–28

- 26 information
- 27 foolish
- 28 nerves

#### Questions 29 and 30

- 29 good
- 30 questionnaires

### Language focus: Conditionals 1 Page 97

1

- (3) If we'd given ourselves more time, it would've flowed better.
- (2) ... but if I had to do it again, I'd change a few things.
- (1) If I do it again, I'll spend more time making the delivery smooth.

2

- 1 are given
- 2 had been devoted
- 3 will find
- 4 had worked
- 5 will turn out to be
- 6 will decline
- 7 would succeed
- 8 had

5

- 1 Unless the educational process ...
- 2 Had there **not** been ...
- 3 ... I **would** have been born ...

4 If people didn't have ...

5 If some adults had ...

6 Had universities been permitted ...

### Vocabulary 2: Collocations Page 98

1

- 1 make
- 2 education
- 3 silver
- 4 large
- 5 get
- 6 enjoy
- 7 achieve
- 8 accrue
- 9 take up
- 10 possess

2

- 1 success, guaranteed
- 2 failure, long-term, prospects, damaged
- 3 deserves, chance
- 4 improvement, scope/ room
- 5 disadvantage, considerable/huge advantage/benefit
- 6 benefits, accrue
- 7 represents, achievement
- 8 once in-a lifetime opportunity, seized

### Writing Task 2 Page 99

1

- 1 Yes.
- 2 You don't have to devote equal space to each side. See 3 below.
- 3 You can have two ideas on each side or two advantages and one disadvantage or vice versa. Try not to write a list of ideas.
- 4 You need to use connecting words, but try not to overuse them. That is just as bad as not having any.

2

achievement, considerable benefit, gained, distinct, obvious, disadvantage, opportunities, enjoy success, seize opportunity

3

assessing/examining: testing/evaluating/checking knowledge  
preferred: most popular  
various means: a range of alternative methods, various forms  
while: although  
methods: approaches  
enormous: vast  
derived: gained  
angle: point of view  
on the other hand: conversely  
be appropriate for: suit  
use: manipulate

4

a result: ... *then* it is easier to check it on a written paper than in a group problem-solving exercise/Switching to written tests could *then* be problematic.

a condition: if factual knowledge is being tested/if they were asked to take a more practical exam.

a contrast: *However*, the obvious disadvantage of written tests is that they do not suit everyone./*Conversely*, students used only to written tests would be at a distinct disadvantage.

an example: *For example*, from an administrative point of view, the former are generally easier to deal with./*Take* students in Italy where oral exams are used as a means of checking knowledge.

5

- 1 ... practical. Moreover, it ...
- 2 ... vogue. However, knowledge ...

- 3 ... acquired. Take texting, for example, ... This ..., but it ...  
 4 ... experience. Furthermore, skills ...  
 5 ... learnt, Then ...

6

**Sample answer**

These days a wide range of courses can be studied at schools and colleges to create skilled workers to feed the economy. Builders and plumbers find courses that suit their individual educational background and their vocational needs and the skills required. However, while this certainly help the economy, there are some disadvantages to just concentrate on skills that fit particular jobs and not providing a more wider education.

The benefit of focusing on skill to fit particular jobs is saving time and then money. A quick glance at the range of careers we realise that many do not require years of studying in classroom. So then there is no reason why training tailored to the exact needs of the trainee and the economy should be provided. It might even seem ludicrous to some to spend huge amounts of money reaching a point which can be hit by far less effort on the job rather than in the classroom. Take for example IT workers specially trained to deal with specific areas of work, so an all round education for them does not appear to be necessary according to this way of thinking. They can learn on the job.

There are a few drawbacks, however. If the emphasis is placed on skills at the expense of more general knowledge that they pick up from books and studying more widely, then pupils or students are missing out on knowledge they need to live and work in society in general. For example, they may not learn about the history or literature or about geography. And how the world works in general. This will lead to other problems for people. Their lives will not be fulfilled. So I think it is important for people to learn skills and more general knowledge.

Word count: 296 words

**Examiner's comment**

This response makes some ambitious lexical and structural choices. The markers employed seem a little limited, resulting occasionally in uneven expression. However, the range of vocabulary and structures attempted give this response an individual voice, despite some imprecise grammar. On balance, communication is not seriously impeded.

Possible score: 7.0

**Review 7 Page 102****Vocabulary**

1

1 e 2 b 3 h 4 c 5 d 6 f 7 g 8 a

2

- 1 What qualifications are needed for the job? (livelihood)  
 2 Work is good for you both mentally and physically. (job)  
 3 He earns his living by making very delicate carvings in wood. (profession)  
 4 Working as a farmer is a very noble profession. (qualification)

- 5 The job I'd like to do the future will have to be connected with social work. (profession)  
 6 Having an occupation like teaching is very demanding, but also rewarding. (career)  
 7 I would like to have a career in engineering if possible. (work)  
 8 I'm interested in a career in finance, especially banking. (occupation)

3

**Possible answers**

- 1 huge  
 2 gained considerable  
 3 (an) enormous  
 4 improved  
 5 squandered/thrown away  
 6 (a) distinct  
 7 room  
 8 impressive

**Conditionals 1**

1

- 1 If, would have succeeded  
 2 If, will need  
 3 If, won't succeed  
 4 If, encouraged  
 5 otherwise, will be  
 6 would be  
 7 If, will cause

2

- 1 Had they followed the guidelines, they would have succeeded.  
 2 New technologies need to be embraced with open arms; otherwise, the country won't progress.  
 3 Unless more effort is put into the scheme, it won't succeed.  
 4 Were the government to encourage more people to take up training, it would benefit us all.  
 5 If more houses aren't built, there will be a crisis.  
 6 I'd be very surprised if we were ever to inhabit the moon./If we were ever to inhabit the moon, I'd be very surprised.  
 7 Written exams should never be removed from the education system, otherwise it will cause enormous upset.

**Proof reading**

1

opportunities, dissatisfied, relaxed, quite, Moreover, environment

2

- 1 Correct  
 2 achievement  
 3 Correct  
 4 improvement  
 5 Correct  
 6 career  
 7 qualifications  
 8 flexibility  
 9 conversely  
 10 Correct  
 11 Correct  
 12 excessive

## Answer key

### Unit 8 The history of geography

#### Vocabulary 1: Nouns related to places

Page 104

1

- 1 Eurocentric map: shows the world from a Eurocentric perspective.
- 2 Ptolemy's map: shows the world as it was at that time.
- 3 satellite aerial map of South America: shows the features of South America from space.

2

- 1 neighbourhood/area, area/neighbourhood
- 2 place, spot
- 3 district, zone
- 4 location, region
- 5 area, space
- 6 vicinity, neighbourhood
- 7 places, regions, spots
- 8 setting, region

3

- 1 b
- 2 a/d
- 3 d
- 4 c
- 5 h
- 6 e
- 7 i
- 8 h/j
- 9 a/g/i
- 10 b/f

4

- 1 overlooking a small garden, neighbourhood with old buildings, disturbed only by the sound of birds and the odd car
- 2 stretching for miles along the seashore, with plenty of opportunity for lots of boating and swimming, built two hundred years ago
- 3 surrounded by beautiful mountains, with its purple flowers
- 4 a waterfall falling from a great height surrounded by trees, covered with trees but with views looking out

#### Speaking Part 2 Page 106

1 I was living in a small flat when I first came here, but  
then I ...

2 We stayed in a nice hotel overlooking the sea, because ...

3 The place is very special to me, because it ...

4 The place I'm going to describe for you is ...

5 I like the area very much, because it's...

#### Listening Section 4 Page 107

2

The migration of humans over time.

3

- 1
- 31 number
- 32 noun
- 33 number
- 34 noun (phrase)
- 35 noun (phrase)

36 number (fraction or percentage)

37 noun

38 noun (place)

39 noun (phrase)

40 noun (phrase)

2 35 and 39 are likely to have plural nouns

3 31 and 33 relate to time

4 37 relates to a reason for something

5 35

6 36

#### Questions 31–40

31 100,000

32 temperature

33 45,000

34 land mass

35 (simple) boats

36 30/thirty percent/per cent/%

37 yam

38 Sudan

39 work fields

40 military advantage

#### Language focus: Referring in a text Page 108

1

- 1 this first group of modern humans, they
- 2 the earth

2

- 1 The neighbourhood
- 2 the region
- 3 The cost of farming has increased dramatically over the period

3

The nouns would need to be in the latter part of the sentence or the whole sentence. They are too far away from *this* to refer to.

4

It is not really possible to work out what *it* refers to: *cost/farming/period/the whole sentence or part of the sentence*. If you keep the word *rise*, the phrase *This rise* refers to the latter part of the sentence from *increased* onwards. If you use *this* on its own, it can refer to the same part of the sentence or the whole sentence.

5

- 1 It
- 2 That, it
- 3 This new development
- 4 it, it
- 5 This
- 6 they, This
- 7 those
- 8 these areas

6

- 1 The price of property in this region is increasing and *this/it* is set to continue.
- 2 The neighbourhood was poor once but *it* is rich now.
- 3 I like visiting the seaside when nobody is around. *It* is very relaxing.
- 4 If people make an effort to clean up after themselves when *they* visit parks, then *these places* will be much more inviting for the public in general.
- 5 He suggested I should go away for a couple of days. *This* is okay, but *it* is an expensive solution.
- 6 The government should pass laws to protect more areas of great natural beauty. *This* would benefit all of us.
- 7 Progress cannot be stopped. *It* is inevitable, even if *it* is very slow, and *it* stops altogether for a while. But *this* is unlikely to happen.

**Reading Page 108**

1

- 1 complex
- 2 abstract
- 3 images
- 4 overtones
- 5 indigenous
- 6 posterity
- 7 secular
- 8 artefacts
- 9 profound
- 10 compile

2

Questions 1–5

1 C 2 E 3 F 4 G 5 D

Questions 6–11

- 6 time, space
- 7 bark
- 8 cosmos
- 9 plan
- 10 expeditions
- 11 clay tablets

Questions 12 and 13

IN ANY ORDER

B  
E

**Vocabulary 2: Verbs relating to changes in maps Page 111**

1

- 1 g
- 2 b/c/d
- 3 a
- 4 b/c/d
- 5 b/c/d
- 6 e
- 7 a/f

2

- 1 was extended
- 2 expanded
- 3 was constructed
- 4 completely changed/was completely changed
- 5 became
- 6 took place, altered
- 7 became
- 8 was developed/developed

3

- ation: alteration
- ition: demolition
- sion: extension, expansion, conversion
- tion: construction
- ment: development

4

- 1 There was an extension of the railway to the centre of town and three new stations were built.
- 2 As the town expansion took place/happened/occurred, all the open spaces were used up for housing.
- 3 The construction of an airport took place/happened/occurred on a greenfield site on the edge of the town.
- 4 There was a complete change in the neighbourhood/A complete change in the neighbourhood occurred/took place/happened with the building of new apartments.
- 5 Not possible
- 6 A number of dramatic developments took place with the complete alteration of the character of the town.

7 Not possible

8 The development of the empty space near the university into a park took place/occurred.

5

The area underwent a complete transformation over the period.

**Writing Task 1 Page 112**

1

- 1 A residential area is located in the north-west of the town.
- 2 To the north-east of the residential area, there are several derelict warehouses.
- 3 South of the warehouses in the north are located some offices./Some offices are located south of the warehouse in the north.
- 4 West of the river and south of the residential area is situated the Arts Centre./The Arts Centre is situated west of the river and south of the residential area.
- 5 The university is sited in the north-east, west of the woodland.

2

- 6 The shopping centre is situated in the south-west of the town.
- 7 There is a residential area in the south-east of the town.
- 8 The industrial complex is located in the centre, east of the river.
- 9 In the north-east (corner) of the town lies a woodland.
- 10 In the middle of the woodland in the north-east of the town there is a pond.
- 11 The school is located east of the river and west of the industrial complex.

3

- 1 Residential area
- 2 Shopping centre
- 3 School
- 4 Lake
- 5 Hotel
- 6 Railway station
- 7 Industrial zone
- 8 Park
- 9 Industrial wasteland
- 10 Entertainment area

4

- 1 True
- 2 False
- 3 True
- 4 True
- 5 False
- 6 True
- 7 True
- 8 True
- 9 True
- 10 True

5

- 1 A hotel was built in place of the hospital in the west of the town./In the west of the town a hotel was built in place of the hospital.
- 2 The university gave way to a park.
- 3 An entertainment area was built on the site of the public gardens in the south-east of the town.
- 4 The school in the west of the town did not change.
- 5 The park was turned into an industrial wasteland.
- 6 The fields on the south-west border of the town were given over to an industrial zone.
- 7 The quarry just south of the centre of the town has become a lake.
- 8 The coach station in the centre of the town was reconstructed to become a railway station.

## Answer key

- 9 A shopping centre replaced part of the residential area/  
was built in the north of the town.  
10 Overall, the town has undergone an urban  
transformation.

6

### Sample Answer

The maps illustrate the changes that took place in Lakeside between 2000 and 2009.

It is clear that there was an almost complete transformation of the town of Lakeside with a significant decrease in the residential area by the end of the period. The residential neighbourhood in the southwest of the town were changed into a shopping centre and the industrial complex expanded to replace the residential area in the south east. While the woodland in the northeast of the town shrank and the lake became a small pond.

The old town and the derelict warehouse in the north were knocked down and a car park and offices were constructed. The arts centre was converted to a multiscreen cinema. In the west of the woodland a new university was built. The school was relocated to the centre of the town.

All in all, the maps show that Lakeside became more organized with less green area.

Word count: 161 words

### Examiner's comment

Some effective lexical choices and language structures are in evidence. The salient points are covered, although better sentence coordination might have helped this read less mechanically. Any grammatical and orthographical errors (e.g. subject-verb agreement in line 7 'are' for 'area' in line 9) do not seriously impede communication.

Possible score: 6.5

## Review 8 Page 114

### Vocabulary

- 1 place
- 2 Correct
- 3 region
- 4 zones
- 5 spaces
- 6 Correct
- 7 vicinity
- 8 district

### Speaking

1

1 d 2 e 3 a 4 b 5 c

2

And why it is this place so special for me? Well, I think it's because it is really peaceful over there. I can sit for hours without seeing anyone, just gazing into the distance space; it is so relaxing. There are no any noisy streets with the car radios and people, only a peaceful riverbank surrounded by trees and flowers with the only sounds be those of the birds and the river flowing down through the wood. I am often wonder how long it will stay like that.

3

- o o o O o
- 1 The place I'd like to describe is a hillside covered ...
- o o o o O
- 2 A place that's special for me is a mountain with ...

- o o o o O o  
3 The place I like the best is a park stretching ...  
o o O o  
4 It has to be a forest teeming ...  
o o o O o  
5 I'd like to tell you about a valley surrounded ...

### Referring in a text

- 1 It
- 2 they
- 3 This
- 4 this/it
- 5 It, this, It, These/This, it
- 6 This, This

### Proof reading

- 1 illustrates (illustrate)
- 2 transformation (transformation)
- 3 substituted (replaced)
- 4 chopped (knocked)
- 5 surrounding (surrounded)
- 6 change (changes)
- 7 (were) erected
- 8 turned (into) offices
- 9 territory (area)
- 10 increase (increased)

## Unit 9 What is beauty?

### Vocabulary: Beauty Page 116

1

- 1 I.M Pei's Louvre Pyramid in Paris, France
- 2 Zaha Hadid's Innsbruck railway station, Austria
- 3 modern skyscraper
- 4 the tombs at Petra in Jordan
- 5 modern social housing

4

- A tall, ancient, spacious, high, stone
- B evocative, overawed, melancholic, thoughtful, dazzling, humbling, beautiful, magnificent, impressive, overwhelmed, emotional, ecstatic, overjoyed, nostalgic, majestic

5

- 1 beautify
- 2 humble
- 3 emotion/awe
- 4 melancholy
- 5 evoke
- 6 think

6

- 1 They tried to make the town centre beautiful by putting flowers ...
- 2 ... the Sphinx was very humbling/filled me with humility.
- 3 The sight of the Himalayas made me feel emotional/The sight of the Himalayas moved me ...
- 4 ... that I love sometimes makes me melancholic ...
- 5 ... my home country, they are evocative of so many memories ...
- 6 ... wandering through the ruins made me thoughtful about life ...

### Listening Section 3: Page 118

1

The project is about the photographs he took of India.

2

- 1 perception: way of looking at things

- 2 collage: arrangement/random collection of items  
 3 take in: understand/absorb  
 4 grandeur: magnificence  
 5 digital stills: digital images  
 6 narrow down: limit  
 7 access: get into  
 8 discipline: control  
 9 fade: weaken, become pale, disappear  
 10 click: select (on a computer)

Questions 21–25  
 21 A 22 C 23 A 24 B 25 C

Questions 26–30

- 26 time limit  
 27 attention span  
 28 department website  
 29 project(s) background  
 30 4/four

### Word building: Prefixes *under-* and *over-*

Page 119

- 1  
 1 underestimated  
 2 overrun  
 3 overrated  
 4 undervalued  
 5 overcome  
 6 overtook  
 7 underfunded  
 8 underrated  
 9 understated  
 10 overawed

### Reading Page 121

- 3  
 1 fused  
 2 familiar  
 3 beloved  
 4 romanticized  
 5 obfuscating  
 6 showed youthful promise  
 7 ingenious

Questions 1–6

- 1 industrial structures  
 2 architectural heritage  
 3 conservative  
 4 (very) advanced  
 5 green  
 6 (popular) success

Questions 7–11

- 7 B 8 C 9 A 10 A 11 B

Questions 12 and 13

IN ANY ORDER

- A  
 D

### Language focus: Modal verbs for evaluating Page 124

- 2  
 1 should  
 2 could have  
 3 might have  
 4 might  
 5 must

- 6 could be  
 7 should be  
 8 ought to  
 9 must  
 3  
 1, 2, 4  
 4  
 a conclusion: 5, 9  
 a criticism: 1, 2, 4  
 a regret: 4  
 an expectation: 7  
 a suggestion: 8  
 a possibility/weak suggestion: 6

### Writing Task 2 Page 124

- 1  
 1 Everything in the physical world around us makes an impression on us directly or indirectly, and so neighbourhoods in many cities where people live are being made more appealing.  
 2 People are able to see and appreciate different cities all around the world thanks to cheap travel and the Internet.  
 3 Some countries are now becoming richer than in the past, leading to pride in their national standing.  
 4 For example, a park was opened and trees were planted, and then suddenly the health of the people in that district of the city improved.  
 5 The lack of space has saved many old buildings with planners turning to renovation rather than erecting new buildings.  
 6 As a result of turning old ruins into gardens, people are happier and are now more productive.

- 2  
 a 1 cause b, effect a  
 2 cause b, effect a  
 3 cause a, effect b  
 4 cause a, effect b  
 5 cause a, effect b  
 6 cause b, effect a  
 b Cause:  
 2 thanks to  
 Effect:  
 1 and so  
 3 leading to  
 4 and then  
 5 with  
 6 As a result of  
 c In sentence 2 the prepositional phrase *thanks to* indicates the cause without any linking device. In sentence 3 the gerund is used to show a result and in sentence 5 the effect is contained in the prepositional clause beginning with the preposition *with*. In 6 the prepositional phrase *as a result of* introduces the cause.  
 d In 4 the word *then* could be left out.

- 3  
 1 shouldn't have relaxed, As a result there are  
 2 should be attractive, thanks to  
 3 Thanks to/With, now lighten up  
 4 has a positive effect, which in turn  
 5 With/Thanks to, are focusing on

5

#### Sample answer

Enormous importance has been laid on making school children aware of the natural environment in recent years. Many people now feel that more time should be given to the part architecture plays in our lives. Children

## Answer key

are sometimes overwhelmed by information about the nature and it is perhaps learning about the built world is a good counterbalance.

I think knowledge of the built environment is important for everyone, but especially school children. For example, if children learn to distinguish different types of buildings like those from before, it will help them learn about its part in the history and it will bring it into the life. Children can go visits to see buildings for themselves rather than learning about them from books. In this way both buildings and history will be brought to life.

The importance of old buildings where the children live or pass through on the way to school will be brought home to them. They are then less likely want to damage them by writing graffiti on the building or damaging them in some way. In this way, they will grow learning to respect the built environment in same way as the natural world.

Learning about the built environment can introduce children to areas of study that they might not otherwise be interested in. Studying buildings also involves the way that they are laid out and gives children the appreciation of the way towns and cities are designed, which may lead to an interest in infrastructure like town-planning or transport or designing open spaces or squares.

So learning about built environment will help in children's general education.

Word count: 270 words

### Examiner's comment

Ideas are logically organized and supported by appropriate examples. Despite some ungrammatical phrasing which impedes communication, overall a sophisticated level of grammatical expression is displayed with good paragraphing and transitions in evidence. The lexical choices are skilful, although the conclusion is somewhat abrupt.

Possible score: 7.5

### Review 9 Page 126

#### Vocabulary

1

1 a, e 2 d 3 c 4 b

2

- 1 Part 3. It is abstract.
- 2 Part 2. It is personal and describing something.
- 3 Part 1. It is personal.
- 4 Part 1. It is personal.

3

- 1 beautiful
- 2 thoughtful
- 3 evocative
- 4 nostalgia
- 5 humbling
- 6 melancholic
- 7 impression
- 8 ecstasy

4

- 2 ...made me think
- 3 ...The old town evoked a bygone age.
- 4 I was very nostalgic when I looked at the photographs.

5 ... Angkor Wat filled me with humility.

6 The building filled me with melancholy at first ...

7 The city of Tokyo was hugely impressive the first time I visited it.

8 ... they have the power to make people feel ecstatic.

#### Word building

1

- 1 The last time I visit I visited the **magnificent** city of Pompeii it left me cold. It was so **overrun** by tourists.
- 2 The photographs of my home town brought back lots of **memories**. I was really overcome by **emotion**.
- 3 The countryside around where I was brought up is very **bleak**, but I am still **overawed** by it each time I go home.
- 4 The vast open spaces of the Steppes are **beautiful**. Their beauty is so **underestimated**, perhaps because it is so difficult to get there.
- 5 The architecture of the railway station is not **understated**; it is just **plain** and subtle. That is why it is appealing.
- 6 The preservation of the architecture of former times reflects the traditions and values of a nation. When such precious national items are **undervalued** by people generally, it unfortunately leads to them being **underfunded** or not supported financially at all.
- 7 If tourist attractions are **overpriced** it puts people off visiting them. So the main way to attract tourists and increase revenue is to make the cost of travel to and from the attractions **cheaper** and reduce the entrance fees.

2

Students' own answers.

#### Modal verbs for evaluating

1

should be  
shouldn't have been demolished  
ought to have been preserved  
could have erected  
should now make  
might have started

2

- 1 A criticism: shouldn't have been demolished; ought to have been preserved; might have started
- 2 An expectation: should now make
- 3 A weak suggestion: could have erected
- 4 A recommendation: should be (sensitive)

### Ready for Writing

#### Task 1

### Describing a graph Page 128

1

All except 5 and 18.

2

generally speaking  
a gradual fall  
the dramatic decrease  
contrasted with the steady recovery  
latter part of the period  
an upward trend  
peak at  
proportion

3

- 1 A better overview would be:

*Generally speaking, there was a variation in the trends for the four groups (downwards for children of 0–4 and 15–19*

years; and upwards for those aged 5–9 and 10–14) with the decline in the birth rate, which was evident in the 0–4 group, being the most striking feature.

The structure with *despite* does not work, as there is no real contrast between the decline in the birth rate and the contrasting trends.

2 Yes. In the youngest age group, there was an increase during the first two years from just below 26% in 1990 to about 26.6% in 1992 followed by a gradual fall to nearly 23.5%, the lowest percentage in 2001. Looking at the former group, the percentage peaked at approximately 26.4% in 1997 but the final proportion (about 25.4%) remained greater than the initial (nearly 24.6%).

3 The student summarizes the information. See the overview and the second sentence in 2 as examples.

4 Yes: Regarding the 15–19 age group, By contrast, Looking at the former group, As regards the latter

5 11: despite the two contrasting trends, the most striking point, In the youngest age group, the lowest percentage, can be contrasted with, the latter part, By contrast, the former group, greater than, the latter, the greatest

6 There are more nouns: an increase, a gradual fall, the dramatic decrease, the steady recovery. It makes it easier to summarize and to compare and contrast.

7 peaked at, increased

8 children of 0–4 and 15–19 years, those aged 5–9 and 10–14, the youngest age group, the 15–19 age group, children aged 5–9 and 10–14, the former group, the latter, the children in this category

## Describing a bar chart Page 130

1

The chart provides a breakdown by gender and occupation of employment in the United Kingdom ranging from managerial to basic posts in 2007.

2

Overview 2, because it contrasts both males and females and the types of jobs.

3

Managerial and senior officials: 2, 3, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 13  
 Professional: 2, 5, 6, 7, 8, 13  
 Associate professional and technical: 2, 6, 7, 8, 13  
 Administrative and secretarial: 2, 3, 4, 6, 7, 8, 13  
 Skilled trades: 2, 3, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11, 13  
 Personal service: 2, 3, 6, 7, 8, 13  
 Sales and customer service: 2, 3, 6, 7, 8, 13  
 Process, plant and machine operatives: 2, 3, 4, 6, 7, 8, 10, 13  
 Elementary: 1, 2, 5, 6, 7, 8, 13

4

### Sample answer

The bar chart gives approximate percentages of a Labour Force Survey in the United Kingdom by gender and occupation (9 different categories) in 2007. The research reveals striking variations between both sexes according to the post.

The most obvious differential was in administrative and secretarial posts in which the proportion of women was four times higher than men, just above 20% (by far the highest figure in the table) and just under 5% respectively. By contrast, the proportion of men (nearly 19%) was 9 folds bigger than women (approximately 2%) in skilled trades.

Managers and senior officials showed more men

with 19% than women at 11%. There was only a 2% difference between men and women in professional employment where men accounted for 19% of the workforce compared to women at 17%. Meanwhile, women (21%) occupied more associate professional and technical jobs than men (13%).

In conclusion, all employment varied according to sex and occupation with men being employed in professional jobs with women being in more clerical posts.

Word count: 167 words

### Examiner's comment

Not all the data from the table is mentioned and the analytical focus is skewed towards male employment, but overall the answer is reasonably effective and coherent. Language structures are confidently handled. Markers are employed appositely. The range of vocabulary is flexible and, on the whole, accurate.

Possible score: 7.0

## Describing a table Page 131

1

Asia, Africa, Population density

2

compares, features (not figures), show, life expectancy, as regards, Turning to North America, stood

3

- 1 standing at
- 2 among those studied
- 3 despite having
- 4 turning to
- 5 was second
- 6 exceeded
- 7 with a higher total fertility rate of

## Describing a process Page 132

1

1 At either point.

2 The sun's rays.

3 It is pumped around. See the Controller on the diagram.

4 It warms up. The colour changes.

5 It controls the flow of water around the system.

6 It flows down the pipes into the tank.

7 Yes

8 They are two separate systems.

9 No

10 Yes

2

heat up, warm (up), cool, pump, push, flow (down/through/out of), rise (up), come out of, repeat, go round

3

first(ly), first of all, second(ly), then, next, after that, afterwards, subsequently, following that, when, where, and so, as a result, consequently, finally,

4

The diagram shows how hot water is produced in the home using solar energy.

5

The process involves a series of steps from feeding cold water into the tank to producing hot water for domestic use, including heating.

## Answer key

6

### Sample answer

The diagram shows how the solar energy can be used to heat water in the domestic field.

To heat the water, two separate immersion loops are fitted in the tank; the top one is connected to the boiler while the one at the bottom is a part of the 'Solar Heating System' (SHS). Both are heated up by the flowing hot water inside them which in turn heats the tank water indirectly.

The pump circulates the water in the SHS with the flow rate according to the received signals from the controller. As the cold water is piped up to the solar collector, thermal energy is captured from sun's rays and transferred to the pipe. Subsequently, the heated water is directed down to the bottom immersion loop for heating the tank water to provide hot water through the taps and for heating. The cooled water then returns to the pump and the cycle repeats itself.

The incoming cold feed fills the tank up as the hot water is taken out via hot water taps. This way the steady flow of hot water to the taps is assured.

Word count: 187 words

Play is crucial because it develops children's coordination, communication and social interaction skills. For example, if children are throwing a ball to each other the physical and mental skills required are sophisticated as eye to hand coordination is involved. Furthermore, children develop a sense of communication and socialize with each other. The mental and physical development brought about by these games must also be taken into account. And what is more, while playing children compete with each other and learn to lose, which is as essential as learning to succeed in life. Children fully engaged in play activities from an early age under their parents' supervision gain various skills that they will need in their adulthood.

5

### Essay question 1

6

1 The writer's opinion: *For this reason I think that children should be sent to school early but during the first years priority should be given to play rather than to formal study.*

2 Reasons: ... because it develops children's coordination, communication and social interaction skills. Furthermore, children develop a sense of communication and socialize with each other.

3 A complex sentence with a condition and example: *For example, if children are throwing a ball to each other the physical and mental skills required are sophisticated as eye to hand coordination is involved.*

4 Additional information: ... which is as essential as leaning to succeed in life ... /Furthermore, children develop a sense of communication and socialize with each other./And what is more, while playing children compete with each other and learn to lose ...

5 A contrast: *However, in modern society both parents need to work ...*

6 A purpose: ... in order to afford the increasing cost of living and to ensure a bright future for their families.

7 Recommendations: ... schools should focus more on play to compensate for the lack of play experience they may miss at home. Teachers in nursery and reception classes and even in the first years of primary school should take ...

7

### Sample answer

Health is very important for people. In some countries there are two main types of health care systems, the state and the independent. Some people have argued about the private health care sectors, but both providers have one great purpose, which is to keep public healthy. In my opinion, the state and the private health care systems have many benefits and some disadvantages.

Firstly, it is essential that all children have free health care, because all countries have to have healthy next generation. Secondly, there are some dangerous transmitted infectious diseases like VD, which have to treat by the state. Thirdly, in the modern world many patients are suffering by blood cancer for instance, this is worldwide problem. In this case no doubt about, free treatment.

The private health care is paid for separately, usually through the insurance. This sector is expensive and do not easy accessible to everybody, but provides faster and better quality services than state system. For example, in England patients are waiting for their operations a few months, while in the private hospital the same treatments waiting time is about 4–5 days.

## Task 2 Page 136

2

**Local:** can see the results, charity begins at home, help needed in own country, poverty relative, money often badly spent, want to help specific areas/'pet projects', see value  
**(Inter)national:** people more needy elsewhere, international administration costs

**(Inter)national and local:** difficulty tracking expenditure, people weary of appeals, depends on the charity, people's aims, makes them feel good

4

Nowadays there are demands on both parents to work and look after their children at the same time. For this reason I think that children should be sent to school early, but during the first years priority should be given to play rather than to formal study.

Moreover, in some cases people are purchasing one-off treatments because of the government financial deficits. In addition, a fast diagnostic system and relatively treatment at the early stage of some diseases could be much more effective. These services always do not offer the free clinics, because they are crowded.

To sum up, people always worry about their health problems. To address this public concern, patients should have high standard the state or private health care services, which provide the effective treatments for all their patients.

Word count: 272 words

#### Examiner's comment

Ideas are presented quite coherently and logically with some flexibility and precision of vocabulary in evidence. The question focus is on *private* care, but this response *compares and contrasts* the two systems, concluding rather unconvincingly. Good use of markers, but ungrammatical phrasing in paragraphs three and four cause strain on the reader.

Possible score: 6.0

## Unit 10 Is it art?

### Speaking Part 3 Page 140

1

- 1 painting
- 2 architecture
- 3 cinema
- 4 dance
- 5 theatre

### Listening: Section 2 Page 141

#### Question 11

11 a sensation

#### Questions 12–14

IN ANY ORDER

A

D

F

#### Questions 15–17

15 A

16 A

17 B

#### Questions 18–20

18 reporters

19 test

20 department store

### Vocabulary: Art Page 142

1

#### Possible answers

- 1 play: actor, actress, lead (role), playwright, director, producer, costume designer, set designer
- 2 orchestra: conductor, musician, pianist, violinist, percussionist,
- 3 novel: novelist, writer, author, reader, editor
- 4 book: novelist, writer, author, reader, editor
- 5 newspaper: journalist, columnist, editor, printer, contributor, reader
- 6 sculpture: sculptor, artist

- 7 song: singer, songwriter
- 8 symphony: composer, musician, conductor
- 9 ballet: dancer, choreographer, composer, musician
- 10 film: actor, actress, director, star, starlet, producer, distributor, scriptwriter

2

- 1 draw, illustrate, artist, sketch
- 2 stories, fiction, novels
- 3 musician, symphony, compose, conduct

3

- 1 drama, scenery, produced, play, highbrow
- 2 work, drew, Abstract, classical, allusions
- 3 modern, appreciate, critical
- 4 novels, masterpieces, tales, tell, popular, soap operas

4

- 1 exhibition
- 2 sculptures
- 3 criticism
- 4 collection
- 5 critics
- 6 scenery
- 7 visual

### Language focus: Defining and non-defining clauses Page 144

1

- 1 a a play about which additional information is being given regarding age
- b defining clause needed to identify a particular play
- 2 a additional information not necessary for identification
- b defining clause needed to identify which anthem
- 3 a defining clause is needed to distinguish the man/woman from others
- b there is only one and he/she has just left
- 4 a defining clause is needed to distinguish between exhibitions
- b extra information given which is not needed
- 5 a defining clause to point out which architect it was
- b additional information
- 6 a defining clause to point out which singer it is
- b the singer is not being identified

2

- 1 –, that/which are also possible
- 2 whose
- 3 which
- 4 which
- 5 –, that/which are also possible
- 6 who
- 7 –, that/which are also possible
- 8 –, that/whom/who are also possible

3

- 1 c My uncle's flat, which overlooks the opera house, is empty for the next two weeks, so I'm staying there.
- 2 d The friend whose father is the film director got me into the film preview.
- 3 b One of my sculptures, which I made when I started the art course, has just won an art prize.
- 4 f The film, which has some breathtaking locations, starts in a few minutes.
- 5 g I like literature that is not dumbed down or simplified in any way.
- 6 a Is that the folk concert that you were praising last night because of the quality of the singer?
- 7 e The culture tour, which was incredibly expensive for the length of the trip, was dazzling.

## Answer key

### Writing Task 2 Page 145

2

- 1 arts
- 2 artistic
- 3 galleries
- 4 participating
- 5 Take
- 6 physical
- 7 coordination
- 8 Likewise
- 9 exhibition
- 10 gallery

3

- 1 but it does not mean that we should not be involved in some kind of artistic activity even if it only means visiting art galleries or attending lectures on the arts.
- 2 ... , which benefit the individual and the nation as a whole, ... ; Dance, which requires a lot of movement, ... ; ... coordination, which is a skill that is missing in a lot of education today as children focus on learning through computers.
- 3 There are no defining clauses. However, you could remove the commas from the following and make it into a defining clause: *Dance which requires a lot of movement is ...* This would mean only dance that requires a lot of movement not dance that requires gentle movement.
- 4 to gain more knowledge
- 5 Take dancing, for example.

### Reading Page 146

2

- 1 Correct
- 2 Correct
- 3 Correct
- 4 Correct
- 5 Incorrect: means 'group'
- 6 Incorrect: means 'go/run quickly to'
- 7 Incorrect: means 'backward-looking'
- 8 Correct
- 9 Incorrect: means 'honest'
- 10 Correct

#### Questions 1–9

- 1 D
- 2 G
- 3 L
- 4 P
- 5 I
- 6 H
- 7 J
- 8 F
- 9 Q

#### Questions 10–13

- 10 F
- 11 E
- 12 A
- 13 B

### Speaking Part 2 Page 149

2

- 1 I'm going to describe a piece of art, which I think is a work of great craftsmanship and the most beautiful object in the world for me. It is David by Michelangelo, who is a great Italian sculptor.
- 2 The first time I saw it was when I went from Rome to Florence to see my aunt ... . One day she took me there to visit the statue of David. I didn't want to go as I hated art

galleries and museums. ... I thought they were boring and old-fashioned ... But I was completely overawed, because it is such a breathtaking sculpture ...

- 3 As for its appearance, it is very tall and it is made of marble. The statue is looking off into the distance as if he is looking into the future ...
- 4 Because Michaelangelo's David changed the way I looked at art galleries, I shall always be very fond of it.

3

David, Florence, aunt, hated galleries, boring, overawed, tall, changed (view)

4

Sample phrases:

, who was working there at the time.  
And up until then I had always avoided visiting them.  
, because I did not think they offered anything for young people.  
, and I had never seen anything like it before.  
, and you want to see where he is looking.

### Review 10 Page 150

#### Vocabulary

1

- 1 (soap) operas
- 2 composed (the symphony)
- 3 (great) novelist
- 4 (many) plays
- 5 (an) artist
- 6 (great) sculptor
- 7 (actors and) actresses
- 8 (some of the) dancers

2

- 1 drama, stages, scenery, Drama, produce, plays, highbrow
- 2 abstract, classical, allusions, art
- 3 appreciate, favourable

3

- a 3
- b 2
- c 1

#### Defining and non-defining clauses

1

- 1 I saw the film which/that – you recommended to me last week.
- 2 That is the house which/that – I bought last year.
- 3 Literature, which is compulsory in the school curriculum, is popular in my country.
- 4 The gallery, which is at the end of the street, had its main piece of art stolen.  
The gallery that/which is at the end of the street had its main piece of art stolen.  
The gallery that/which had its main piece of art stolen is at the end of the street.
- 5 Some children, whose parents take them to museums, are very advanced at school.

- 6 The film, which was four hours long, was attacked by the critics.

The film that/which was four hours long was attacked by the critics.

- 7 Many books that/which do not sell many copies are published each year in the UK.

8 My favourite work of art, which is not a huge tourist attraction, is a building in Ireland.

9 Some types of music that/which are very popular in my country are not well known elsewhere.

- 10 The man that/who is wearing a red hat is the director of the film.

2

- 1 who
- 2 which
- 3 that/-
- 4 which
- 5 whose
- 6 which
- 7 that/-
- 8 that/which

#### Proof reading

- 1 exhibitions
- 2 sculptures
- 3 relaxing, than
- 4 environment
- 5 Literature which is more than 100 years old is not really relevant to the modern world.
- 6 boundaries
- 7 visual

## Unit 11 Psychology and sociology

### Vocabulary: The family Page 152

1

- 1 village community
- 2 nuclear family
- 3 large extended family
- 4 grandparent and grandchild

2

- 1 parents
- 2 grandparents
- 3 siblings
- 4 family tree
- 5 someone whose husband has died
- 6 someone whose wife has died

7 someone who guarantees to support and give religious education to a child at the time of baptism; male – godfather; female – godmother

- 8 relatives
- 9 ancestor
- 10 niece/nephew
- 11 family
- 12 household
- 13 offspring
- 14 orphan

3

1 b 2 e 3 f 4 a 5 c 6 d 7 g

### Word building: Suffixes *-hood* and *-ship*

#### Page 153

1

- 1 He faced a period of great **hardship** in his early life, so it is inspiring to see him being so successful now.
- 2 When the former colony finally achieved **nationhood**, there was widespread celebration.
- 3 He had **leadership** qualities, and therefore he received enormous backing from the public.
- 4 The **relationship** problems between the two countries were quickly overcome.
- 5 I have such happy memories of my **childhood** in New Zealand.
- 6 **Parenthood** does not suit some people at all.
- 7 Various businesses set up a **sponsorship** scheme to enable young people to visit other countries.
- 8 **Motherhood** demands a lot of skill and hard work from women.

9 The aim of the organization is to encourage **friendship** between nations.

2

- 1 cultivated, friendship
- 2 withdrew, sponsorship
- 3 facing, hardship
- 4 spent, childhood
- 5 Nationhood, reached
- 6 showed, leadership
- 7 maintain(ed), relationship

3

- 1 special
- 2 professional
- 3 lasting
- 4 close
- 5 Family
- 6 parent-child
- 7 build
- 8 fragile
- 9 problems
- 10 network

### Reading Page 154

2

#### Possible answers

Paragraph A: socialize, child, community, relatives, kinship, familial and kinship relations, network of relatives, upbringing

Paragraph B: adolescence, society, initiation ceremonies, mark the transition from childhood, adulthood, conduct and behaviour, duties and responsibilities, interests of the entire community.

Paragraph C: Kinship and family, individual interests, Young people, process, initiation from childhood to adulthood, the society, good and bad times, bond, members, same age-grade, taught the historical information, cultural group, rituals, marry

Paragraph D: Seniority, age, respected and admired, wisdom, respect, counsel, crisis, certain responsibilities, elder, unemotional, arbiter, above partisan differences, synonymous with honour (etc.), ability, manifest these qualities in old age, elevated status in society.

Paragraph E: good care of senior citizens, good example, respect, good treatment in old age, procreation, somebody, old age, Children brought up well, asset, children see that their grandparents are treated well, learn by example

Paragraph F: elder is the pillar, nuclear, extended family, link between the living and ancestors, unite the family, reinforces kinship ideology, helps to socialize, provide guidance, pass the baton, all members of the society take socialization seriously

#### Questions 1–6

1 C 2 A 3 E 4 E 5 B 6 F

#### Questions 7–10

- 7 Western society
- 8 interests
- 9 responsibilities
- 10 (elevated) status

#### Questions 11–13

IN ANY ORDER

- C
- E
- G

## Answer key

### Speaking Part 2 Page 157

4

#### Topic Card A:

who the friendship was with: *It was with my best friend at that time,*  
when you first met your friend: *whom I met when I first went to secondary school.*  
what you did together: ... and we would sit next to each other, play the same games together...  
and explain why this friendship was important to you: *Firstly, because we gave each other support at a time when we were both nervous about being in a new place. And secondly, where I grew up we didn't face any hardship, but I didn't have any siblings, so it was nice to have the companionship of someone at school ... And I suppose I felt that I was leaving childhood behind, and it was the first friendship of my adolescence.*

5

Two possible additions to the gaps:

We used to go for long walks together or go swimming in the local river and of course chat a lot. When we could, we would go with both our families on holiday as our parents were also close, but sometimes these were only day trips.

We helped each other with our work in class and homework and would always try to be in the same teams if we played sport. Sometimes, however, we would be on opposing teams, which we didn't like.

6

friendship, teens, secondary, same class/games, support, first friendship, adolescence

### Listening Section 1 Page 158

1

#### Possible answers

cost, time, deposit, accommodation, numbers, teachers, registration, clothes

#### Questions 1–10

- 1 Peru
- 2 in pairs
- 3 15
- 4 spending money
- 5 holidays
- 6 29th September
- 7 interview
- 8 20/twenty
- 9 2/two
- 10 100/one hundred

### Language focus: Conditionals 2 Page 159

1

Example 1: Second conditional *were not, would*

Example 2: Present simple

In the second example, the following is also possible with no change of meaning: *That will not be a problem, ...*

2

- 1 Paraphrase
- 2 ... if there aren't any free places. Remove *even* and the comma before it.
- 3 There's a possibility there will be a change in society if the government addresses social issues like crime and poverty.
- 4 If future generations are even more highly trained than they are now, will their lives be better?
- 5 Unless/(If) people are psychologically well adapted to ...
- 6 Paraphrase

### 7 Paraphrase

8 I didn't study psychotherapy and I now regret it.

3

- 1 Unless
- 2 If only
- 3 Even if
- 4 Provided
- 5 If
- 6 Supposing

4

2,5

5

- 1 Families can play a part in making society a better place, provided the government gives them support.
- 2 If the government funded more community centres, this would provide a place for people to meet.
- 3 If globalization hadn't occurred, there would now be fewer social and cultural problems around the world.
- 4 If it were not for volunteer workers helping people deal with the psychological aspect of change, the situation would have been worse.
- 5 Even though social interaction between different cultures is increasing, still more contact is necessary.
- 6 Supposing social intelligence were taught in schools, would it be beneficial?

### Writing Task 2 Page 160

#### Possible ideas

1

First view:  
world smaller  
some countries richer than others  
one humanity  
have responsibility  
unethical not to help

Second view:

charity begins at home  
why go abroad when problems closer to home?  
responsibility for own people first  
can't help everybody

2

For:  
gives people: passport/independence/freedom/chance for development

Against:

not the only way  
social help  
financial help  
basic necessities  
depends on situation and individual

3

For:  
parents' responsibility  
their children  
early years with parents

Against:

children spend time at school  
parents at work need help  
financial/social support needed  
parenting skills  
opinion: share the responsibility – 'three parties'

2

Extract 1: 1  
Extract 2: 2

3

Extract 1: *It is a natural human instinct for people to help*

each other, so this characteristic should be harnessed for the betterment of mankind.

Extract 2: Let's say someone can be well educated but has not made even one or two friends in their life. Their life would be affected.

4

Extract 1: Shopping is a good example here of people helping the elderly.

Extract 2: Learning a skill like pottery can help make people's lives relevant and help them relax.

5

#### Sample answer

From the beginning of the last century women fight hardly to take a position in work place either in private sector or in government offices. Since that time they have always proved their ability to perform just like any male colleague. For a woman to take any leading position she need to work harder than a men because of the fact that most of the people in management and leading positions are men. Until now the salary for women is less than the salary of a men having the same job in a developed country like U.K. Therefore it is not easy for a women to have a leading position.

The reasons why many people opposing women's rights in work that they think the natural place for women is the home and their responsibility in leading the family is much more import than any other job. Others say women have so much to do in their home and if they take managerial jobs at work, they will not be able to perform efficiently.

In spite of all these obstacles women through the history proved their ability in taking responsibility of leadership and we have many examples of women who have led their countries and their people in a successful way and achieve a lot in developing their country like queen Victoria in the UK. Her reign as a queen lasted 63 years, and the Victorian era was a time of industrial, political, scientific and military progress within the UK.

I think women have all the elements of successes as a leader and as a manager and home responsibility should be shard between men and women. Women all over the world should have the same rights as men and they should have the same opportunity in leading position.

Words: 298 words

#### Examiner's comment

Although the argumentation in this response is quite well structured, it is replete with grammatical errors which impose some strain on the reader (eg. the conclusion) and so diminish its overall impact. Paragraphing is quite well handled with some varied sentence patterns in evidence. Possible score: 6.0

#### Review 11 Page 162

##### Vocabulary

- 1 family tree
- 2 ancestors
- 3 widow
- 4 relative/descendant
- 5 siblings
- 6 relatives
- 7 generation

#### Word building: Suffixes *-hood* and *-ship*

1

- 1 c ii
- 2 d iii
- 3 a viii
- 4 b i / h vii
- 5 h vii / b i
- 6 g vi
- 7 f v
- 8 e iv

2

- 1 relationships
- 2 households
- 3 relationships
- 4 generational
- 5 hardship
- 6 leadership
- 7 friendship
- 8 childhood

#### Speaking

A I have maintained a number of strong D relationships with people who were my childhood friends, but the friendship I E would like to describe is one that began only early last year with a friend from the C restaurant where I work H part-time. We first met when we were working on an evening shift. It was very busy, G but we still managed to help each other out. Since that day we have developed B a very deep friendship. I think I the main reason why we get on is because F we have very similar interests. So I think what really makes the friendship work K is that both of us like reading and J doing the same sports and we rarely disagree on anything.

Question: Describe a friendship that is important to you.

#### Conditionals 2

- 1 Even if it costs a lot, I shall try to keep the whole family together.
- 2 Unless the seminar on culture and the family has spaces, I'll attend the seminar on kinship.
- 3 Families depend on the community centre to meet up, otherwise they would have nowhere else to go.
- 4 They kept the family together and so they are in such a strong position now.

#### Proof reading

others think, raising children, the parents, social skills, schools as agencies, teach children to form, warm relationships with, peers, knowledge and information, adults, skills

## Unit 12 Travelling around the world

#### Listening Section 2 Page 164

1

- 1 a secluded beach
- 2 a city
- 3 ancient ruins

2

##### Possible answers

Very hot: sun cream, light clothing, hat, umbrella, appropriate footwear

Very cold: clothes (gloves, coat, hat, etc.), appropriate footwear, sun cream

#### Questions 11-15

- 11 C
- 12 B
- 13 B

## Answer key

14 A

15 C

### Questions 16–20

16 anxiety

17 resources

18 plasters

19 wipes

20 cameras

## Vocabulary: Adjectives with multiple meanings Page 166

1

It means 'original/new/different'. It can also mean a 'work of fiction'.

2

1 relevant

2 apathetic

3 film

4 treasured

5 different

6 new

7 odd

8 extra

9 similar

10 uncomfortable

3

1 novel, novelty

2 different, difference

3 strange, strangeness

4 unique, uniqueness

5 curious, curiosity

6 foreign, foreignness

7 odd, oddity/oddness

8 new, newness

9 fresh, freshness

10 alien, alienation

## Reading Page 167

1

1 True

2 True

3 False – Australia

4 False – Central America

5 False – Athens in Greece

6 False – East Africa

7 True

8 True

9 False – St Petersburg

10 False – Iran

3

1 shelf: ledge

2 maturity: fully-developed

3 system: organism

4 range: variety

5 list: catalogue

6 vulnerable: in danger

7 breed: reproduce

8 colony: collection

9 historic: ancient

10 sanctuary: place of safety

### Questions 1–6

1 continental shelf

2 protected areas

3 diversity

4 ecosystem

5 coral(-)reef

6 biological

### Questions 7–10

7 FALSE. Paragraph 4: *Contrary to popular belief, the Great Barrier Reef is not a continuous barrier, ...*

8 NOT GIVEN. Paragraph 6: *More than 4,000 mollusc species and over 1,500 species of sponges have been identified.* The molluscs and species are mentioned, but there is no information given about a comparison with other sites in the world.

9 TRUE. Paragraph 9: *The reef contains nesting grounds of world significance for the endangered loggerhead turtle.*

10 NOT GIVEN. Paragraph 11: *There are over 30 historic shipwrecks in the area, ...* The shipwrecks are mentioned, but no mention is made of whether there are plans to raise them or not.

### Questions 11–13

11 no-take zones. Paragraph 14: *The proportion of the Marine Park protected by no-take zones was increased from less than five per cent to over 33 per cent, and now ... the entire Marine Park.*

12 (the) regulatory framework. Paragraph 15: *the regulatory framework significantly enhances the resilience of the Great Barrier Reef.*

13 overall management. Paragraph 16: *... is the Australian Government agency responsible for overall management, and the Queensland Government, ...*

## Word building: Words relating to memory

### Page 170

1

souvenir or memento

Words with the root *mem-*: memento, memo/memorandum, memoir, memoirs, memorable, memorial, memorabilia, memorize, memory,

2

1 memories  
2 remember  
3 memoirs  
4 memorabilia  
5 memorize  
6 memorable  
7 memorials  
8 memo/memorandum  
9 memento  
10 memory

3

1 memories  
2 memorabilia  
3 memento  
4 memoirs  
5 memorial  
6 memorable  
7 remember  
8 memorize

## Speaking Part 1 Page 171

1

More and more people use ...

Most travellers ...

## Speaking Part 2 Page 171

### Possible answers

1 tour, excursion, expedition, outing, trip, voyage, travel

2 luggage, suitcase, plane, train, car, tickets, hotel, boat

3 pleasant, exciting, long, tiring, excruciating, memorable, fantastic, comfortable, uncomfortable

4 travel, fly, stay, stop, stop over, journey, sail

5 hotel, seaside, mountains, beaches, city centre, ski resort

6 for a holiday, for work, to visit friends, to study

**Language focus: Articles** Page 172

1

- 1 the definite article: *the Great Barrier Reef, the mainland  
2 the zero article: *popular belief, 2,900 individual reefs,  
fringing reefs, islands  
3 the indefinite article: *a continuous barrier, a broken maze***

2

- 1 The sun  
2 Stars, the moon, the Milky Way  
3 A star  
4 We can call it a star when we look at it in the galaxy or when we look at it as an astronomical object.  
5 Yes  
6 Mount Everest  
7 The Himalayas  
8 Tokyo  
9 The capital. There is only one capital not several.  
10 Yes. The Atlantic Ocean, the Pacific Ocean, the Indian Ocean, the Arctic Ocean, the Southern Ocean.

3

- 1 b The. The phrase 'I visited were old' makes the monuments specific, not just any or all 'old monuments'.  
2 b the. The Himalayas are a particular group of mountains, not just mountains in general.  
3 a the. The sun in the sky/our solar system  
4 b the. The Nile is a specific river.  
5 a The. The phrase 'of Mexico' makes the word capital specific. Mexico City does not need an article as there is only one Mexico City.  
6 a The. The United Kingdom is used to distinguish the kingdom from other kingdoms.  
7 a The. The definite article can be used if it refers to a particular country. Sentence b is about prime ministers in general.  
8 a The. There is only one heart in the body, not various hearts.

4

- the Brazil  
the sisters  
the Rio de Janeiro  
the beaches  
the fun  
a sightseeing  
the living  
the holidays

**Writing Task 2** Page 173

1

7

**Other possible ideas**

View 1:

- gives people new ideas and experiences, languages
- helps develop international relations
- provides education
- removes prejudice
- helps people appreciate other cultures

View 2:

- makes people more prejudiced/less tolerant
- confirms prejudices
- makes people more insular

2

- 2 Trains go in and out of fashion in all countries, as they often depend on the support of politicians. At the moment, for example, more people are travelling by coach rather than by railway.  
3 Tourism can have a negative impact on the local culture, so tourists should be careful about how they behave

when they visit other cultures.

- 5 Older people find it more difficult to rough it while on holiday compared to the younger generation. This is surely because they need to have more comfortable surroundings because of their age.

3

**Sample answer**

Although it might appear so obvious that roving around the world is probably the best and most direct way of learning about life in other places, there are some who claim that it would only reinforces the biased ideas some people have about outsiders.

Fortunately the various modes of transport have developed hugely over recent years so that almost everybody can afford the time and cost of travelling and at least glance around and if interested in observing and studying other cultures more closely there are various means of transport to fit individual's needs and plans. What makes it more convenient is not only the speed but budget price tickets offered by airlines such as 'easyjet' which provides an excellent opportunity for people from different walks of life to travel and experience a new set of life.

What could be more real and true than those immediate impressions that people get directly through seeing directly and personally and not relying on the narratives which at times could be biased and reflect only few views, especially if they are broadcasted on TV and funded by a particular group. Why not experience it first-hand.

I do not tend to think that travelling would provoke misunderstandings, quite conversely it will dispel any prejudices, albeit assuming "the observer" needs to be fair and reasonable. The worst that could happen is realising all those horrid rumours about that particular part of the world have been true, which is still an achievement. At least those so-called hatred or disapprobations will find a firm base in reality.

Personally I do believe that travelling can only clarify our judgments, helping us to unify and integrate more and more. This unification seems one the best approaches to address our global concerns; a vital step to achieve peace on earth.

Words: 302 words

**Examiner's comment**

There are some relevant ideas supported by valid examples here. However, the response demonstrates uneven grammar and sharp shifts in style which impose some strain on the reader. Surprising lexical choices indicate a potentially accomplished writer, although these are somewhat undercut by inaccuracies in sentence structure throughout the answer.

Possible score: 6.5

**Review 12** Page 174**Vocabulary**

- 1 foreign
- 2 fresh
- 3 novel
- 4 new
- 5 curious
- 6 differences

## Answer key

7 different  
8 strange

### Word building

1

#### Possible answers

remember, memoirs, memorabilia, memorize, memorable, memorial, memo/memorandum, memento

2

- 1 d
- 2 f
- 3 a
- 4 g
- 5 b
- 6 e
- 7 c

3

- 1 memorable
- 2 memorabilia
- 3 memorize
- 4 Memoirs
- 5 remember
- 6 memory

### Articles

1

- 1 the monument, a temple, the north
- 3 the trip
- 4 the mind, the education some people ..., the opposite
- 6 The information on the website
- 7 The quality of hotels

2

the human activities  
The Significant regional differences  
The reefs of the Southeast Asia  
including the approximately 60,000 square kilometres  
where the reefs cover  
the higher risk is greater in the former

3

Yes. The first sentence is an overview and the text is a few words short of 150 words.

Possible introduction:

The chart provides information about the area of coral reef endangered by human beings.

4

Information about the Indian Ocean is missing.

## Ready for Speaking

### Part 1 Page 176

2

1 The question asks the candidate to state a preference about doing something, e.g. I prefer going out with a (large/ small) group of people/friends/people I know.

3

Stressed words in sentence 4: many reasons, perhaps, most important

4

Stressed words in set A:

prefer, go out, one friend, group, friends, Why

do you go out

think, important, keep, contact, friends, make, work, courses, Why/Why not

people, stay friends, long time

Stressed words in set B:

favourite form, art (painting, sculpture, music, drama)  
think art, important, our lives, Why

Tell, traditional, form, art, your country  
think art, popular, future, Why/Why not

5

Possible beginnings for set B:

I like/love/sculpture/ painting best ... /My favourite form of art is sculpture/painting ...

Yes, I think it's crucial/essential/very important, because ...

A very common art form where I come from is ...

Oh yes. I think it will be much more central to our lives than now, because ...

Words to stress:

like, sculpture best/favourite form, art, sculpture

Yes, think, crucial/essential/ very important, (because)

very common art form, come, is ...

Oh yes, think, much more central, lives now (because)

### Part 2 Page 178

1

- 1 d
- 2 f
- 3 e
- 4 c
- 5 b
- 6 a

2

The words match the following parts of the topics:

#### Topic 1

café:

where this place is: near college

when you first visited this place: month ago

what this place is like: cheerful, relaxing, friendly  
and explain why you enjoy studying there: great view

#### Topic 2

Oxfam:

how you first became aware of this organization: television appeals

what this organization does: relieves poverty, sickness, famine

where this organization operates: everywhere  
and explain why you admire the work of this charitable organization: saves lives

3

soon: in the coming year

annoying: irritating

private: one-to-one tuition

relaxing: soothing

healthy: good for your health

helps concentration/work: improves their ability to focus

### Part 3 Page 180

4

Differences:

in the near future ~ in the coming year

annoying – irritating

individual – one-to-one

Why – The reason

mad about – keen on

healthy – good for your health

benefit me – help me

Additional information:

They've played both classical and pop music to me, and they've found it thrilling to play for someone. And to me it is a very peaceful experience just sitting there and listening.

One of my friends, who plays the guitar and the piano, says that he plays for about ... half an hour before he does

any homework, and it helps him to focus on his work and concentrate more.

5  
1 2 21 36 43 54 65

## Unit 13 The importance of infrastructure

### Vocabulary: Nouns related to systems

Page 182

Possible answers

- 1  
1 road/motorway network with flyovers  
2 tunnel for a train or even water supply  
3 train station as part of a railway network  
4 motorways/highways

- 2  
1 buses  
2 a roundabout  
3 water from the tap  
4 for shaving/toothbrush  
5 the Internet  
6 mobile use  
7 BBC World Service  
8 TV  
9 email  
10 cars

- 5  
1 oil  
2 railway  
3 telephone  
4 satellite  
5 Internet  
6 water  
7 electricity  
8 gas

- 7  
1 Electricity, grid  
2 gas, pipelines, fields  
3 water supply, purification  
4 oil, wells, refineries  
5 satellite, weather  
6 infrastructure, lines  
7 access, web, connection

### Reading Page 184

2  
highways, Interstate, lanes, Interstate, artery, thoroughfare

#### Questions 1–5

- 1 F  
2 B  
3 J  
4 C  
5 I

#### Questions 6–9

- 6 YES. Paragraph A: *Electronic toll collection is increasingly the obvious answer.*  
7 NOT GIVEN. Paragraph C: *Cash transactions are costly, though, because highway agencies must pay toll-takers, maintain plazas and safely transfer the cash to banks.*  
There is no mention of the cost of cash tolls being expensive to administer because of the expense of security guards at toll plazas.  
8 NO. Paragraph D: *... tolling agencies are introducing a variety of technologies to streamline the process and increase profits.*

9 NOT GIVEN. Paragraph F: *businessmen do not need to save fistfuls of receipts for their expense reports.* However, there is no comparison between business people and other users.

#### Questions 10–13

- 10 D. Paragraph G: *And because they are part of the car, they will be harder to steal.*  
11 A. Paragraph H: *A study by an economist at M.I.T. Amy Finkelstein, found that drivers who pay their tolls electronically are less aware of the rates they pay.*  
12 A. Paragraph J: *... more than 71 percent of transactions at the Port Authority's tunnels and bridges include an E-ZPass – up from 52 percent in 2000 ...*  
13 C. Paragraph J: *Mr. Lamba said that drivers are increasingly comfortable with electronic tolling.*

### Word building: Modal verbs to adjectives

Page 186

- 1  
1 possible  
2 unwilling  
3 unnecessary  
4 expected  
5 probable  
6 able  
7 compulsory  
8 certain  
9 essential

2  
**Examiner:** Is it possible for communications systems like broadband to have an impact on people's lives?  
**Candidate:** I think it is possible for the development of faster communication systems than we have now to have an impact on local as well as national economies, as the expected outcome is that it will enable people to do business faster. Obviously, it is not possible for them/aren't able to solve every problem, but it is at least possible for them to help. For a while governments were unwilling to invest in fibre optics, but now the cables are being installed everywhere. For example, in my home country they provide jobs for local people ...

### Listening Section 3 Page 187

1  
1, 3, 4, 5 and 7 are directly related. 2 and 6 may be indirectly related

- 1 aims and objectives: what the research intends to do/show, etc.  
3 research question: the question the researcher is seeking to answer  
4 research findings: the results/conclusions of the research  
5 data analysis: the examination of the data/information collected  
7 literature review: a review or analysis of the books/journals/articles related to the research

#### Question 21–23

- 21 B  
22 A  
23 B

#### Questions 24–28

- 24 B  
25 G  
26 F  
27 A  
28 E

## Answer key

### Questions 29 and 30

IN ANY ORDER

A

E

### Language focus: Concession Page 188

1

California, Pennsylvania, Texas and Virginia **may** be quite different in many ways when it comes to the presidential primaries, but they do have one thing in common ...  
Although California, Pennsylvania, Texas and Virginia may be quite different in many ways when it comes to the presidential primaries, they do have one thing in common ...

2

- 1 Although increasing the capacity of the network may be a good solution to the problem, it is not the only one.
- 2 This may be a sound argument, but I think I'd want to see more funds made available for new carriages as well.
- 3 While inner city conditions may be cramped, the facilities available are endless.
- 4 I don't like the idea of computers controlling systems like transport. Nevertheless, they perform a vital function.
- 5 Much as I agree with the creation of high-speed communication systems, I can't help thinking that they will lead to more demands on workers and hence more stress.
- 6 Extensive metro systems may exist in many major cities, but they are expensive to maintain and upgrade.
- 7 I partly agree with the opinion expressed here, but I think it is naive to suggest that increasing the fares will in the end lead to a better transport service.
- 8 It's clear the quality of public services is improving. Nonetheless, more needs to be done.

3

- a 7 b 2 c 4 d 1 e 5

### Speaking Part 2 Page 189

1

- What I would like to describe is a journey that I made to see a friend in France last winter.
- The trip was a short five-day break to a small village in the Loire valley, which is full of the most wonderful castles.
- I took the train to Paris and then to Tours, which is the largest city near the village I was visiting.
- The journey was exciting because it was my first visit to France.
- I was able to catch the train which goes through the Channel Tunnel to Paris and take another train to Tours.
- The journey was very smooth, because the train network in France runs exceptionally well and the Eurostar train is well integrated with the French system.
- What made the journey special for me was the fact the trip marked my first journey to France, and my first time in the tunnel under the English Channel.
- But what made it magical, not just special or thrilling, was the snow.
- As we passed through the countryside the snow fell on the fairytale castles along the Loire. It was a truly enchanting time.

2

Topic 1

### Writing Task 1 Page 190

1

- 1 four
- 2 upward but mixed

3 it reflects the last two years

4 All visits

5 upward

6 2003 and 2005

2

1 and 3

3

- 1 There was a rise in expenditure on holidays over the period with spending increasing from £1,053 million to £1,230 million.
- 2 The general trend for miscellaneous expenditure was clearly upward, rising from £318 million to £557 million, a near 60% increase.
- 3 Spending on business trips also went up with a climb from £859 million to £1,108 million.
- 4 Climbing from £539 million in 2002, expenditure on visiting friends or relatives rose only slightly to £585 million, with most of the growth taking place between 2005 and 2006.
- 5 The overall money spent went up from £2,780 million in 2002 to £3,390 million ...in 2006 (20.1% increase), miscellaneous expenditure accounted for the bulk of the rise.

4

#### Sample answer

The table depicts the reasons why people from Europe came to UK and the money they spent from 2002 to 2006.

Overall, it is clear that the money Europeans spend for different reasons in the UK increased over the period. For example, the most significant expenditure was on Holidays which rose from £1640 million to £2655 million over the period. Business and Visiting friends or relatives had almost the same level of increase from 2002 to 2006 from £1833 million to £2614 million and £1061 million to £1830 million respectively. As for the miscellaneous, although the expenditure on this category was the lowest, there was also a steady rise from £1001 million to £1454 million over the period.

In contrast, the expenditure on all visits showed a different picture. Here the increase at the beginning of the period was much lower than the latter period, from £5549 million to £5888 million in 2002-2003 compared to almost 1million pound increase every year till the end of the period.

Word count: 167

#### Examiner's comment

The response is well introduced. Generally, skilful lexical choices and language structures are displayed and the main points are covered. However, some content in the last paragraph is actually inaccurate and therefore slightly confusing. On the whole, however, this is an effective answer.

Possible score: 7.5

### Review 13 Page 192

#### Vocabulary

1

1 bridges

2 cables

3 the Internet

4 a satellite

5 oil and gas

- 6 electricity
- 7 gas
- 8 water
- 9 national grid
- 10 road network

2

### Possible answers

- 2 Cables can be laid underground to carry optic fibres.
- 3 The internet can be accessed from a computer to get information.
- 4 Information is beamed to earth from space by satellites.
- 5 Oil and gas can be found in fields.
- 6 Electricity is carried on tall towers or on cables under the ground.
- 7 Gas is sometimes burned as fuel to cook food in an oven.
- 8 Water is filtered, treated and purified before being supplied to houses.
- 9 Each house is connected to the national grid that supplies electricity.
- 10 A series of interconnecting roads is called a road network.

3

crucial, infrastructure, network, different services, electricity, granted, appreciate, service industries, supply, national grid, reconnect

The candidate was answering question 2.

### Reading

grappling, cash lanes, streamline, arteries, upkeep, cash transactions, manned (booths), windshield, licence/plate

### Word building

- 1
- 1 g 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 d 6 e 7 f

2

- 1 necessary/essential
- 2 necessary/essential
- 3 unwilling
- 4 possible
- 5 essential
- 6 certain

### Concession

- 1 ... but unfortunately there are places in the world where it is rare.
- 2 ... to every home looks impossible, it is a worthy aim.
- 3 ... the rail network is as chaotic as it used to be.
- 4 ... I don't feel safe while doing so.
- 5 He may say he's an expert ...
- 6 ... as people say, I will not go near it.

## Unit 14 Money and happiness

### Vocabulary: Money matters Page 194

1

- 1 bank notes and coins
- 2 bartering
- 3 cowry shell money

Coin are thought to have been first used in China and the Lydian Kingdom in modern day Turkey in the eighth and seventh centuries BC.

2

### Possible answers

coins, banks, currency, spend, notes, dollars, dinars, pesos

3

No in both cases.

- 1 money management

- 2 money market
- 3 taxpayers' money
- 4 money laundering
- 5 paper money
- 6 sponsorship money
- 7 counterfeit money
- 8 public money

4

- 1 finance director/minister/department
- 2 company/government/state/family/household finances
- 3 cash reserves/flow/payment/settlement/limit/crisis/crop
- 4 currency conversion/markets/speculation/fluctuation/reserves/crisis
- 5 credit agreement/arrangement/facilities/terms/limit/transfer
- 6 debt collection/collector/burden/mountain
- 7 savings account/plan/bank
- 8 consumer/government/public/welfare/education spending
- 9 spending programme/target/cut/limit/money/power/spree
- 10 consumer/government/public/welfare/education expenditure
- 11 price war/range/increase/cut/tag
- 12 capital/investment/household/family income

5

- 1 cash crop, cash flow, cash crisis
- 2 Paper money
- 3 Education expenditure, expenditure level
- 4 Family finances, finance minister
- 5 Money management
- 6 currency reserves, currency crisis
- 7 debt burden
- 8 spending money, spending spree

### Listening Section 4 Page 196

- 1 a company training scheme

#### Questions 31–34

- 31 B
- 32 A
- 33 B
- 34 B

#### Questions 35–40

- 35 fulfilment/fulfillment
- 36 2/two hours
- 37 give training
- 38 (Staff) absences
- 39 15/fifteen %/percent/per cent
- 40 recruitment costs

### Word building: Values and beliefs Page 197

1

*Moral code* is possible, but codes for organizations are generally related to *ethics*. *Ethics* relates to the principles or the philosophy on which people's *moral*s are based.

2

- 1 f 2 e 3 g 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 d

3

invaluable, value, valuable, valuation, valuer, valueless

4

Values, value, Valuables, invaluable, valueless

5

principles, principled, unprincipled, principles

6

idealistic, ideals, morals, ethical

## Answer key

### Language focus: Substitution and ellipsis

Page 198

1

- 1 The word *so* replaces *about bringing people together and making links and contributing to the economy of the country*.
- 2 Repeating the words means that there is no real connection between the sentences.
- 3 Overuse of substitution can make writing or speaking difficult to understand.
- 4 I think so.

2

1 h 2 a 3 g 4 f 5 e 6 b 7 c 8 d

3

- 1 ... by putting back some of the profits they have made from the local people./Such philanthropic behaviour
- 2 ... told us how to behave ... / ... to do so ...
- 3 ... the traditions and ways of the society they belong to ... / ... such customs ...
- 4 ... introduce philosophy into the school curriculum./ ... doing so ...
- 5 I left home when I was 18 to go to university./I did so ...
- 6 Detailed analysis ... on what makes people happy,/ ... such research ...
- 7 ... adhered to the traditions of the community we came from ... / ... do so ...
- 8 moral standards on television ... should therefore be raised/ ... in doing so ...

4

- 1 Although the government wanted to stop funding the railway venture, they weren't able to.
- 2 The banks didn't want the policy on extending loans to small businesses to change, but the government did.
- 3 Some people don't believe that there is a clear link between happiness and money, while others do.
- 4 The fact that health, wealth and happiness are often linked together when people talk must mean they are.
- 5 The college was praised for student behaviour and success as it hoped it would be.
- 6 The university didn't invest as much in delivering subjects like philosophy as it could have.
- 7 My father laid down the law with us when we were children, but my mother didn't.

### Possible answer Speaking Part 3 Page 199

1

- Do you think people associate money with happiness?  
Why?: technological gadgets, reduces anxiety  
Do you think it's possible to lead a happy life without money? How?: life can be difficult without  
What advantages does money bring to people's lives?: brings freedom, reduces anxiety, allows people to do things they want, indulge in buying consumer goods, having more time  
What other factors do you think are necessary to lead a happy life?: money not everything other factors, health/work/friends, having more time  
Do people attach too much importance to money nowadays? Why?: overemphasize/overrate money  
How can money sometimes control people's lives?: it controls, restricts, governs every aspect of people's lives  
In what ways can money be used for the good of humanity?: redistribution of wealth, richer nations helping poor nations/people

### Reading Page 199

1

- 1 tackle (paragraph A)
- 2 contentment (paragraph A)/well-being (paragraph D/E/F/G)
- 3 abject (paragraph B/E)
- 4 endless (paragraph D)
- 5 penury (paragraph E)
- 6 rung (paragraph E)
- 7 budge (paragraph F)
- 8 civic (paragraph G)

#### Questions 1–5

- 1 Paragraph G: *If a nation wants to increase its population's sense of well-being, says Veenhoven, it should make less investment in economic growth and more in policies that promote good governance, liberties, democracy, trust and public safety.'*
- 2 Paragraph E: *But before you assume that money does buy happiness after all ... one economic rung above the homeless – rate themselves at 4.6.*
- 3 Paragraph G: *...and are more frequently due to factors such as social relationships and enjoyment at work.' Other researchers add fulfilment, a sense that life has meaning, belonging to civic and other groups, and living in a democracy that respects individual rights and the rule of law.*
- 4 Paragraph A: See the whole paragraph.
- 5 Paragraph F: See the whole paragraph.

#### Questions 6–9

- 6 TRUE. Paragraph B: *... and they have generally concluded that wealth increases human happiness when it lifts people out of abject poverty and into the middle class but that it does little to increase happiness thereafter.*
- 7 FALSE. Paragraph D: *Studies show that people like selecting from among maybe half a dozen kinds of pasta at the grocery store but find 27 choices overwhelming, leaving them chronically on edge that they could have chosen a better one than they did.*
- 8 NOT GIVEN. See paragraph E where multimillionaires are mentioned, but there is no mention of expectations about their numbers.
- 9 NOT GIVEN. See paragraph F. There is no mention of money's influence on people's happiness before the Second World War.

#### Questions 10–12

- 10 shortcomings (paragraph F)
- 11 life satisfaction (paragraph F)
- 12 social relationships (paragraph G)

#### Question 13

B

### Writing Task 1 Page 202

2

- 1 Regarding the dissatisfaction (not 'As regarding')
- 2 age group were slightly less content (not 'content less slightly')
- 3 dissatisfaction (not 'disatisfaction')
- 4 with the pie chart indicating (not 'with pie chart')
- 5 with 83 per cent being happy (not 'be very happy')

3

- 1 shows how happy various age groups were about  
b
- 2 indicated they were very content with  
a
- 3 For example, the positive rating for those 60 and over  
a

4 the greater part

b

5 fewer people

a

4

#### Sample answer

The bar chart provides the outcome of a survey carried out about the Daily Happiness-Stress Index in the USA during 3 months from Jan 1<sup>st</sup> to May 25<sup>th</sup> in 2008.

On the whole, the proportion of happiness and stress changed significantly over the weekends with happiness increasing and stress decreasing. It is seen that the DHSI remained almost flat the weekdays especially from Monday to Thursday standing at about 43% of 'With a lot of enjoyment' and around 10% of 'With a lot of stress'. During these days there was over four times as many happiness as worry.

By contrast, on Fridays minor changes occurred with the percentage of enjoyment climbing slightly at approximately 46% while that of worry went down to just below 10%. The most variation was experienced over the weekends when the proportion of happiness reached about 57% compared to the fall of stress which fell to about 7%.

Overall, the percentage of happiness was greater than that of stress over all the period and the gap between them widened from Fridays to Sundays.

Word count: 177 words

#### Word building

1

beliefs, principles, moralistic, ethics, standards

2

realistic, idealistic, ideals, moral

Examiner's question: Do you think young people today are too idealistic?

#### Substitution and ellipsis

1

1 The television presenter claimed that work was a very important factor in making people happy, *but the audience didn't*.

2 Some people don't believe in the need to save money for the future, *while others do*.

3 Many people don't want to do volunteer work to help others, *but fortunately there are many who do*.

4 Politicians often think the opinions of ordinary people are not important when they are in power, *but clearly they are*.

5 Just as I have had the chance to have a free education, *I think everyone else should*.

2

1 they want to

2 Such

3 do so

4 hasn't

#### Examiner's comment

The key points are presented logically with cohesive devices being used throughout. However, the effectiveness of the response is somewhat reduced by occasional errors in grammar and editing, although these do not seriously impede communication. Sentence coordination might have been improved in places by more judicious punctuation.

Possible score: 7

#### Review 14 Page 204

##### Vocabulary

1

1 i

2 g

3 c

4 e/j

5 b

6 f

7 g/h

8 d

9 j/e

10 a

2

1 family income

2 debt mountain

3 cash crop

4 savings bank

5 currency reserves

6 paper money

7 Consumer spending

8 price war

9 credit limit

10 State finance